

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE
HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY. NOT FOR REPRODUCTION

Grammatica Burlesca :
OR A
NEW ENGLISH
GRAMMAR
*Made Plain and Ease for
TEACHER & SCHOLAR,
and profitable to Gentlemen
for the recovery of what they
have lost by discontinuance
from their studies.*

C O M P O S E D.
By EDW. BURLES A. M.
and School-master at *East-Acton*
in *MIDDLESEX.*

Printed for the benefit of the *Grammar-Schools* in the Counties of *Middlesex* and *HARTFORD.*

Tὸν δὲ διδίκων τὸ μέτωπον ἀκριβῶς, ὡς οἵτινες
διελθεῖν, ωσε παντεύ τὸ διδάκτων παραγλίπειν,
&c. Isocr. Orat. contra Sophistas.

London, Printed by T. N for Humphrey Moseley, at the
sign of the Prince's Arms in S. Paul's Church-yard. 1652.



Spectatissimæ Libe-
ralitatis fulcro, &
recondite virtutis Ga-
zaphylacio M^{ro} Joha~~ni~~
Clarkio Armigero, & He-
roico Igniculo Guilielmo filio
suo, insignis spiei pu^ro,
&c.

E D. BURLES, *Gratiam pluri-*
mam & Pacem i^mpe~~g~~χεσσαν πάντα
rev à Domino in Domin.



O S erat apud Venetos
(exultissime selectissi-
meque Domine) singulis
annis festo Ascensionis
Christi, maris dominium sibi de-
spondere, annulo in mare dejecto, ita
ut nequando sit aquarum irruptio

Hæc consuetudo (ni fallor) est
vividum tuæ liberalitatis emblema,
qui vgilantissimè incimbis quasi ag-
geribus & fossis ejusmodi exunda-

A 2 tiones

Epistola Dedicatoria.

tiones avertere quæ pergunter violenter undis, ire dejectum monumenta Regis.

Nec eo minus, tām gratuito, tām inexhausto benignitatis Oceano me Ludi-magistri officio fungentem prosecutus es ut arctissimo gratitudinis vinculo me tibi ferruminavisses & astrinxisses.

Ante oculos manet & manebit, quām lautissimè domi tuæ, quām humanissimè Londini, me & amicum meum (qui tuam mensam subdolâ oratoriâ, ovino emunxerat collo) tractaveras. Sed de his satis, nè prolixia verborum series tedium inducat. De alienâ purpurâ & dapi- bus superbivimus.

Benignitatem laudo tuam. Libera- lis es, & teste Philosopho, Viti li- beralis est magna libenter dare, Par- va libenter accipere. Meum equidem est (mi Domine) præter annum redditum quem (propter habitacu- lum in quo artes exerceo meas) tibi debeo, meum est (inquam) preces effundere, ut prospere & fœliciter succedant omnia, & tibi, & dulcissi- mæ

Epistola Dedicatoria.

mæ tuæ conjugi, Dominæ meæ, unæ cum vestrīs omnibus. Etiam hoc amplius, meum est labori non parcere, quo ne unguem quidem latum, à grato animo, discederem.

Proculdubio, stupescit mihi ani- mus, quod ipse, cui erat in animo abdicare Ludi-literarii Magisterium, multò magis mihi laboriosum quam unquam quæstuosum, quod ipse (quis temperet risu) jam ingrato pulvere scholastico folidus, in re tam ingratâ nihilominus consenesce- rem. Consenesco equidem, & onus suspicio, quod ut facilius possem sub- ire, annotatiunculas meorum inge- niolis ad aquatas typis committere curavi.

Tractet hunc libellum tenerrimus *Gulielmus*. Si non sit dignus quem manibus terendo discat, dignus est quem manibus tenendo divellar. Quid obest (vir peritissime) quo mi- nos hoc minimum, accrescenti meo Domino sit usui maximo.

Non es eo animo (generofissime) atq; Ludovicus undecimus Galliarum Rex, ipse quidem doctus, qui fili-

Epistola Dedicatoria.

um suum *Carolum* plane rudem esse voluit, ne scilicet (ut dicebat) pertinax esset in consiliis, sed quid alii consulerent audiret.

Non es eo animo; audivi enim te aliter judicantem, & regulas Grammaticas cum aliis accurate refrican-
tem. Tu perinde acsi essem alter *Carolus quartus* ille autor bullæ au-
ræ, qui *Pragæ* per integrum diem
interfuit lectionibus publicis, & cum
à *Consiliariis* moneretur ut ad cœ-
nam iret, respondit; Hæc cœna mea
est. Tu inquam (nota enim loqueror)
elegisti dœcè differentes in culinâ,
potius quam lautè cœnantes in cœna-
culo. Et ibi (ô quam pulchrum
spectaculum!) ibi te patrem vidi
Josepho similem, filium super genua
educantem: & quid auditum est?
sane quod auditu jucundissimum.
Audivi te etiam intimos inhibentem,
ne quis (filio tuo præsente) quid ma-
li improvidè effutiret. *Vera pietas*
decorat possidentem. Absit superbia
inquietorum hominum qui sub spe-
cie pietatis dissimulatâ, seculi vitia
tacito ambitu prosequuntur. Macte
pietate

Epistola Dedicatoria.

pietate esto (integerrime vir) agnosce
Christum etiam in præsepi jacentem.
Surge in modum *Samsonis*, & ex-
cuso te ipso disrumpe denlos impio-
rum fines. Dic cum *Davide* sponsi
amico, *Recedete à me omnes qui da-* Psal.6.9.
tis oreram iniquitati. Pugnemus
(fortissime *Armiger*) validissime
pugnemus; Peccato nihil est
inimicius; est hostium inimicissi-
mus; huic resistamus pœxerātū
— περὶ ἀμφίλαντον αὐτὸν οὐκέτι βούτησεν.
(Absit enim talis patientia quæ in-
dulget sceleribus non nisi cum Rei-
publicæ interitu tolerandis) Et qui
vincentes coronat det tibi τὸν ἀμ-
εργάτιον τὸ δόξας σέρανον.

E Schola meâ
Hillingdonensi
Oktavo Iduum
Junii 1648.

Servus tuus humili-
mus tuique obser-
vantissimus

ED: BURLE S.

A 4

To



T O

My worthy MECŒNASSES,
the Patrons of all good Lear-
ning in the Parish of Bushy,
in the County of Hartford:
M. Nichol, and M. Hobson,

Grace and peace be multiplied.

SIRS,

I am as much straitned to express
your worth in a little room, as to
write Homer's Iliads in a nut-shel.
The short time I have had with
you, maketh mee insighted into an a-
bundance of worth in you, which shew-
eth you to bee Pauls among those that
are accounted Pillars. It is Melan-
Ethonis vaticinium, that there shall bee
Wanting to the world three things, lig-
na, bona moneta, boni amici; but that
scholar which hath you two joynd to
himself in friendship, hath mony, and
that which is better; so true is the Pro-
verb, ἀγαγγιστεποτέ πνεψ οὐδείς οὐ φίλος.

You

Epistle Dedicatory.

You are the Lillies among the thorns
in Bushy. I confesse there are there
excellent spirits besides your selves,
the gales of whose pious examples may
drive one on in a strait course to Hea-
ven; but none do adventure to handle
the thorns but your selves.

Noble Sirs, to this work in these
parts you have given life. And al-
though it was begotten in another, yet
by your friendly Midwifery, it hath
its birth in this place; it is a Bird
hatcht in Bushy: and if any sharp
thorns aduenture to penetrate the
tender sides, interpose your selves,
and snap them off for Festues to point
out the Rules which may shew them
their errors, who labour to get to
themselves honour by disparaging
others.

Sirs, If your children hereby re-
ceive j r̄fit, I am honoured in being

Yours and their
humble servant

E D VV. B U R L E S.

A 5.

TO:



TO
My very truly beloved and
never to be forgotten
friends, Mr Watson, Mr Ailee,
and Mr Freswallan, and
the rest of the Mastership
of *Hillingdon* in the
County of *Midss.*

Peace with piety.

SIRS,

AS I lived long, so I suffered much with you, especially in that great Plague, to which God singled us out, that we might be a peculiar people to bear some of the Lashes of his chastising Rod. The Bell told us that death was daily at our doors; yet the Lord suffered it not to enter into our houses; God then preserved both you and your little ones. The Plague was violent; our prayers fervent; the redemption was miraculously merciful; and what days

Epistle Dedicatory.

days we set apart in publick thanksgiving for so healing a mercy, *Judicet Iudex ille summus & tremendus qui justè judicat & judicabit omnia.*

Sirs, the thing that I drove at among you, was to drive out an Ale-hous out of the Church & Chu-chouse; and also to take away those lime-twigs of disorder which might easily intangle spine-featherd youth, whose waxen nature byasseth both by the eye and the ear unto that which is evil.

Sirs, I may adventure to say, that some prized an Ale-hous above that Schoo!-hous, for which this *Grammar* was prepared. And take it not ill, if I play this after-game with you, and bet somewhat by the by that I shall hit the block. Joyn together for the good of your children males and females, and put out the strength of your parts and purses, and that will be effected in my absence, which when I was present with you, you could not be won unto. The Lord reform thee, *Hillingdon*, the Lord reform thee, that there may be in thee spiritua-

Epistle Dedicatory.

spiritual hospitality kept without grudging; that thy Pulpit may be possessed without repining; that thy Parochial Society may be knit together in the band of Christian love, and thy youth flourish in holiness like a green bay-tree; that in all things the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified, and at length the souls that are in thee saved. So prayeth,

Your Masterships

bumble servant,

EDW. BURLES.

TO

T O T H E R E A D E R.

When I behold that Atlas of Grammar-Learning, M. Farnaby, impudently contending with others about usurped Articles in the Latin tongue, and read in the Hebrew institutions of Alanus Restaldus Calignius, printed 1541. speaking of the Hebrew Articles, Quam habeant significationē Articuli, Latinē non potest propriè exprimi; nam Latini carent Articulis; why should I think any thing in this Grammar to be my own? forasmuch as it might be another's Observation before mine, unknown to me. I intended this Work for my own school, and gave it the name Pedissequa Farnabiana; at which some pugnaciter oblatrabant, nomine ejus offensi. I know not for what cause; yet this I know, that those Books only with Book-sellers are best, that

To the READER.

that sell best. I have new named it,
notwithstanding Pars est sua laudis in
ille.

To this Grammar there is little
need of a Construing Book; and if any Aristarchus carp at my Translation
of Rules, judging me to be an Accius
Labeo, who was accounted an unsavory
and irregular Poet, for ill Translating
of Homer's Iliads, (verbum verbo
reddens fœdissimè transtulit) Let
such a one know that I doe not auctu-
pate praise, but have studied plain-
ness; and as I would not be found
fœdus, so I would be found fidus in-
terpres.

What would it profit the Scholar to
read Latin words, and yet being asked
for the English should be altogether to
seek for an answer? as in the Pro-
verb, Durum telum necessitas, need
makes the old wife trot: What is La-
tin for the old wife, Boy? indeed it
is not with Poets as with Grammari-
ans: Nec verbum verbo curabis red-
dere, &c. Hor. de Art. Poët.

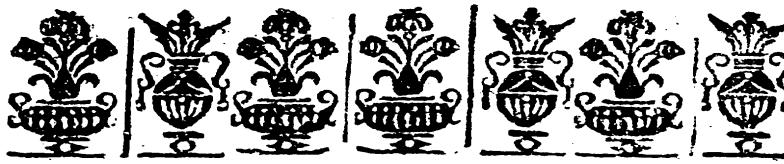
To conclude, Let every Bird chal-
lenge his own Feather, and leave mee
ridicu-

To the READER.

ridiculously naked if they can. I shall
not regard the frumps and mockage
of men, if God in the least measure
be glorified by my labours. Yet as
Phocion said of his children, if they
be like me, that which served me, will
likewise serve them; so say I of those
whose sails I have used to felicitate
my passage to the desired Port, if they
be like me, Gods glory will serve
them, though their works be service-
able to others and to mee. Parvus
sum, nullus sum, alta nec spiro nec
spero, jam vale; perpendat Lector, &
re pensitatâ judicet.

Consuevere jocos vestri quoque ferre
triumphi;
Materiam dictis nec pudet esse Du-
cens.

*Ex.



'Ex diōs αχώμεδα.

PRAYERS SCHOLASTICAL.

Morning Prayer.

MOST Powerful *LORD GOD*, in whom wee live, move, and have our beeing. Salvation, and Honour, and Power bee ascribed to thee, O *LORD GOD*, for that thou hast mercifully saved, and graciously preserved us thy poor creatures, through the darknesse of this night unto the beginning of this day. O *LORD*, wee will sing aloud of thy mercies this morning; for thou hast been our defence, and our refuge; thou hast drawn the Curtains of thy protection about us; thou hast refreshed us with pleasing sleep, and awakened us with health and strength to meet together in this place

in

Prayers Scholastical:

in peace to praise thee. Now wee beseech thee (*O LORD*) let our souls awake to righteousness, and not to sin; wee indeed are but an handfull of thy creatures, yet are we full of sin: not only by nature, but in our lives; wee have not only loved sin, and lived in it, but have been unwilling to be separated from it. Sin still naturally floweth from us, as impure streams from a corrupt Fountain; and wee finde in our selves oftentimes to this hower, an awked aversenesse and stubbornnesse of nature unto that which is good: untoward wee are to imbrace good instructions, and untoward unto all good actions.

Good *LORD*, wee intreat thee to alter our rebellious natures; and with the light of this day, shew us the light of thy countenance. O let the light of thy grace and gracious favour, shine upon our dark souls.

Though for our sins, thou mightest bundle us up unto everlasting damnation; yet this is our comfort, that wee have not so sinned, as to out-strip the infinite mercies of Thee a reconciled *GOD*, in *JESUS CHRIST*; O for his sake remit unto us all our sins.

There is sin enough in the least of us, to condemn us unto everlasting misery, and to make the very Earth on which we tread, the Aire wherein wee breath, and the house wherein we live, to be a perpetual curse unto us.

Save

Prayers Scholaſtical.

Save us therefore from the greatest to the least from fin , and the punishment that may attend the greatest and least fin.

So discover thy loving kindnesse unto our souls , that we may love thee unfeignedly ; and pacifie our accusing conſcences at all times, upon the conſideration, that thou requireſt not ſatisfaction for our ſins at our own hands , but haſt already received it at the hands of Jeſus Christ our Saviour.

And fit us for all heart-searching and heart-breaking times , when wee can ſee nothing in the world that can ſupport us ; let thy invisible hand from Heaven hold us up that we may hold out.

So guide us this day , that in all our actions and imployments , we may have thee in our eyes. Goe on to perfect holinesſe where it is begun , both in our thoughts , words and works ; begin it in every heart that hath not yet tasted and found how ſweet the *LORD* is.

Teach us this day to behave our ſelves uprightly in all things, as we ought; make us to conſider for what cauſe wee come to this place ; and O *LORD*, doe thou take ſpeciall notice of these little ones for their good. They come to this School, but they muſt be taught by thee; thou only canſt give them understanding, and teach them good behaviour.

O *LORD*, ſo instruct them, that their Parents may have comfort in them , the Church and Commonwealth have good ſer-

Prayers Scholaſtical:

service by them, and thy name have the glory of all.

O Lord, we apprehend thee a merciful God , we apprehend thee the fountain of wiſdome, wee apprehend thee a powerful God, able to do whatſoever thou wilt.

From Thee the Fountain of Wiſdome, let rivelets of knowledge ſtream upon us; according to thy power for our good do for us ; work for Thine, Thy Church, Thy People, this Nation, the Parish, our friends, and benefactors; according to all their neceſſities and wants , in all their exiſtents and conditions , above all that we can ask or think , even for *JESUS CHRIST* his ſake, who hath wrought ſalvation for us ; for whom we praise Thee, and in whose name and words wee further pray unto Thee, ſaying, Our Father, &c.

Post-

Prayers Scholastical.

Post-Noons Prayer.

O M O S T Glorious, Almighty and most merciful Lord God, we thy unprofitable servants, in fear of thy Majesty, in reverence of thy glorious name, in sense of our woful miseries, and in hope of thy free mercies, do here once again humble our souls in thy sight and presence.

O Lord, wee confess we are sinners every way; for wee have sinned in the loins of our fore-parents, and by corrupted nature are deprived of thy glorious image; so that as concerning heavenly things, the understanding is filled with blindnesse, the memory with dulnesse and forgetfulness, the will with frowardnesse and perversenesse; too much good we have omitted, too much evil we have committed. Satan, and the violence of our own lusts, have oftentimes haled us out of the safe way which leadeth unto life, and set us in a way leading to destruction; this is our misery, (O Lord) we pray thee make us truly sensible of it; for where misery is not felt, there mercy is not regarded.

Thou hast graciously pleased so to provide for the relief of our weaknesse, and restauration of our strength, as to allow us

Prayers Scholastical.

us lawful recreations in their measure, place and seasons; and because in these there is a propension and readinesse in our natures to step out of, and run over the bounds prescribed: we beseech thee as for the pardon of all our sins in general, so for the Lord *Jesus Christ* his sake, pardon all our sins in our recreations in particular.

O Lord, if there hath dropt from any of our mouths, any unseemly or idle word, if there hath been amongst us any quarrels or contentions, if but an angry look, or polluted thought, lay them all aside, let them not be drawn up in a Bill of Indictment against us, but cast all our sins into the bottomlesse sea of thy mercy, and say unto each of our souls, I have put away thy transgressions as a cloud, and thy sins as a mist. O make all our sins so displeasing to us, that no sin may hurt us.

It is Thy great mercy that Thou hast so moderated the frame of our spirits, that wee are not returned with bloody noses, scratcht faces, broken legs and limbs, and that we are enabled to come to a second meeting. Now we pray and beseech Thee take from us all dulnesse of spirit, all wandering and vain cogitations, that wee may set to the work in hand in earnest, every one striving who shall excel others in learning, that we may so get wisdome and get understanding, that we in no wise forget wee are Thy servants depending upon Thee, who art the God of our mercies, able to give us all things conducing to Thy glory, and our own and others good; and

Prayers Scholaſtical.

and all this for Jesus Christ his ſake our Lord and onely Saviour. To whom with Thee, and Thy blessed Spirit, be all Glory and Honour, now and for evermore.

Amen.

Evening Prayer.

MOST holy Lord God, and our most merciful Father in the Lord Jesus Christ, we have great cause to magnifie thy glorious name, for great hath been thy love & tender mercy to us in things spiritual and things temporal ; we blesse Thy name for all the good Thou haſt done for us this day, and for defending us against any evil. O Lord, as riches and honour come of Thee, and Thou reignest over all, and in Thine hand is power and might , and in Thine hand it is to make great, and give strength unto all, so Thou art the Fountain of Wifdome ; Thou teachest men knowledge, which is pleasant unto the soul. Wee beſeech Thee to blesſe our labours this day, that it may not be a day lost unto us. O let the Spirit of knowledg and fear of the Lord, rest upon us. Let our Earth bee full of the knowledge of Thee O Lord, as the waters cover the Sea, and delight Thy ſelf in the praises of Thy little ones.

Thine

Prayers Scholaſtical.

Thine, O Lord, is the power to do for us, and Thine be the honour and glory of all the good Thou haſt wrought for us and in us.

Glance Thy favour upon us, even for Jesus Christ his ſake, pardoning our ſins and miscarriages in our places this day, that when we betake our ſelves to our places of reſt, we may be able to look up to Heaven, and there ſee Thee a God reconciled to us in Jesus Christ.

In our ſleep, work our thoughts & hearts up to a pure love of Thee, and make us ſo to hate sin, that we may grudge it to have a beeing in us.

Blesſe us to meet again, that wee may praise Thee, and proceed in our labours for learning, till wee have gotten ſo much as thou in Thy wiſdom knowest fit, for the diſcharge of the ſeveral places unto which Thou in Thy All-ruling, and All diſpoſing Providence haſt appointed us. These and all other mercies working for our good, we beg in the name of Jesus Christ our Intercessor, Mediator, and Redemeer. Now to Thee the only wise God, Father, Son, and holy Ghost, who crownest us with mercies and compassiones, wee ascribe as due is, all power and praise, dominion and thanksgiving, this evening, and for evermore.

Amen.

Thursday

Prayers Scholaſtical.

Thursdays Prayer at Threec.

O Lord God, most high, and most holy, who in the strength of Thy power, and sweetnesse of Thy mercy, hast carried us in the arms of Thy love, to enjoy this good hour, and peaceable opportunity to praise Thee, and pray unto Thee: If we say, that we have not sinned against Thee this day, we deceive our selvs, and the truth is not in us. O Lord, make us therfore truly insighted in, and truly sensible of all our sins: make us truly and heartily sorrowful for them, and truly desirous of Thy pardoning mercies in the *Lord Jesus Christ*. For his sake we beseech Thee to pardon all our sins, sins against Thy mercies, the Messengers of Thy love; sinnes against Thy judgements, the Messengers of Thy wrath; sins of our days past, and the sins of this present day.

And grant that for the remaining part thereof, and for the time that is yet to come of our lives, we may not walk, talk, or sport, as those that live after the flesh; but so live, that it may appear to the world, the Spirit of *Christ* to be in us.

Lord, work in us will and deed, purpose and power, to bee such as Thou wouldest have us to be; that wee even to the least amongst us, may adorne and beautifie our

most

Prayers Scholaſtical.

most holy profession of Christianity, by walking in a Christian course, and in all the sound fruits and practice of Godlines, and true Religion.

Lord, master our master-sins, and daily weaken the strength of our corruptions, so conforming all our steps to Thy Word, that no iniquity may have dominion over us.

And that wee faint not in our voyage Heaven-ward; quicken us by Thy Spirit that wee die not; uphold us by Thy hand, that we fall not; direct us by Thy Word, that wee erre not, and at last crown us with glory, that we lose not the hope of our inheritance.

Think thoughts of peace unto Thy people, and always look upon Thy sanctified ones in deep compassion. O Lord, be intreated for, and be good unto Thy poor children in this English Nation; hear the cries of Thine Elect, hear the mourning of them that mourn in Sion. Send Thy Gospel to those places where it is not, and blesse it where it is. Continue it unto us with an abundance of peace and freedom, together with greater successse.

And moreover, O Lord, we cannot but acknowledge that Thou hast been very good unto us. Thou hast created us when wee were nothing: Thou hast preserved us being created: thou hast redeemed us when we were worse then nothing, and called us to the knowledge of Thy Son: Thou hast sanctified us by Thy Spirit of life in *Christ Jesus*, and given us hope of an inheritance uncorruptible, and

(a)

Prayers Scholaſtical:

and undefiled , that fadeth not away.

O Lord , that measure of Learning , which we have attained unto , we register and inroll to have descended from Thee the Father of mercies , and Fountain of wiſdome, which we beseech Thee to bless unto us with a daily increase to Thy glory.

Be with us the remaining part of this day, to blesse us in every thing , blesse us both in the choice and lawful use of our recreations ; keep us and the several families to which we belong, in assured safety, when the night comming on depriveth us of the eye of the day ; and when we yeild our bodies to our beds , grant that sleeping, or waking, living, or dying , wee may be found Thine. Into Thy hands,O Lord, we commit and commend our selves , our souls and bodies, beseeching Thee to take care and charge of us, to keep us from all evil, to watch over us for our good , and to let Thine Angels incamp about us.

Grant these things, O Heavenly Father, to us here present, and to all Thine absent, even for Jesus Christ his sake Thine onely Son, our Lord and only Saviour, who hath taught us to pray ; saying,

Our Father, &c.

Saturday

Prayers Scholaſtical.

Saturday at Eleven.

Let us humble our souls before the dreadfull Majesty of Almighty God our Maker, and in the name of his Sonne our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ , through the assistance of the Spirit of grace, call upon him:

O Lord, our strength, our defence, the God of our mercies, the God of our salvation, who art the confidence of all the ends of the Earth , who stilleſt the noise of the seas , and the tumults of the people , and hast preserved us the living Monuments of Thy mercy through this week, unto this hour.

O God , when we bethink our selves, and search out the filthinesse of our own souls, by the clear light of Thy most holy Word, we must needs confesse our selves unworthy of this or any other mercy, insomuch , that if wee are not, we may bee ashamed and afraid to come before Thee, and pray unto Thee.

For, as if the sin of our nature had not been enough to cause Thee to hate us even to a loathing of our persons and services; we have rushed into sins thick and threefold ,
(a 2) and

Prayers Scholastical.

and dowsed our selves over head and ears in hainous impieties. Wee are depraved and poisoned in all the faculties and powers of our souls, and members of our bodies. We are defiled in all our best actions, and were it not for Thy restraining and renewing grace we should still every day more and more break forth into innumerable transgressions; and the greatest rebellions against Thee, that ever were committed by the vilest of the sons of men.

O LORD, wee confesse, because wee have sinned against Thee, that wee are most worthy of Thy fiercest wrath, and of all the curses of Thy Law, and heaviest judgements, which Thou hast inflicted upon the most rebellious sinners that have been, or yet are in the world.

Thou mightest debarre us of all comforts of Heaven and Earth; Thou mightest make all Thy creatures to become our enemies, and drowning us in a deluge of mournful miserie, mightest plague us with all sorts of spiritual and temporal judgements in this life, and then bind us up like so many fire-brands of Hell, and cast us into utter darknesse, into that Lake that burneth with fire and brimstone, where there is weeping and gnashing of teeth for evermore.

But, O Lord, we fly from our selves and the severity of Thy Justice, and draw neer to the Throne of Grace; wee have no ability to avoid or bear Thy heavy wrath; wee humbly therefore, and earnest-

Prayers Scholastical.

earnestly supplicate Thy mercy, and beseech Thee for the bitter sufferings sake, and precious merits of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, freely and fully to remit all our sins. Although our selvs have played the wantons, and prodigals, and lavisht out a rich stock of Graces, yet let them not perish for hunger, since in Thy house there is enough for us, and to spare.

There are riches of mercies purchased by our Lord Jesus, there is an All-sufficiency to sanctifie and to save. O Lord, as he is able to save all those to the uttermost, who come unto Thee by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them. Save us we beseech Thee amongst the rest, that wee also may partake of the exceeding great and pecious promises, of mercy and grace in the new Covenant. Comfort we pray Thee all that mourn in Sion, speak peace to the wounded and troubled spirit, and binde up the broken hearted, with remission of sins by the bloud of Christ; wee pray Thee to sanctifie Thine by the Spirit of Christ, and make a slaughter of all our sinnes that yet dwell in us, and many times tyrannize over us.

Mercifully blesse, and prosper unto us Thy poor servants, the labours of this week, that they become not as the labors of the foolish, who labor in vain, and in things which profit not. Write therefore all the good things in our memories, wherein wee have been instructed

Prayers Scholastical.

this week, or at any other time heretofore with a pen of iron, that they may not bee blotted out by our negligence or forgetfulness ; so that evil things should take place of good.

Fit us and prepare us for the day following, which is set apart unto Thy service ; prepare our hearts for more publick prayer, and when Thou shalt drop Thy Word amongst us , give us an hearing ear, which may take heed what it heareth, and how it heareth, that Thy Word may work gloriously to save us, which may work to Thy glory, though it condemn us. It is Thy good working power, O Lord, that fitteth us for good things, and it is Thy free mercy that giveth us that which is good ; make therefore our hearts holy ground fit to receive and bring forth abundance of holy seed.

Be with us this night coming on, O Lord, blesse us, O Lord, keep us , and the places where we live in safety ; make Thy face to shine upon us, and be gracious unto us, our friends and benefactors , lift up the light of thy countenance upon us, and give us peace, that we may lie down in peace and sleep, for Thou, Lord, only makest us to dwel in safety.

Hear us, O Lord our God, and answer us in much mercy, and that for the *Lord Christ Jesus* sake, who hath purchased mercy for us , for whom wee thank Thee , and in whose name and words wee further pray unto Thee ; saying, *Our Father, &c.*

Grace

Graces.

Grace before Meat.

Most holpe Creator, through whose blessing it is, that thy creatures haue strength and vertue, to preserve the life of man. Blesse us, we beseech thee in the free pardon and forgiuenesse of all our sinnes, put strength into these creatures to nourish us, wisoome into us to receive them, and thankfullnesse to thee for them ; in the name of Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.

Grace after Meat.

Or Father of mercies, from whom every good and perfect gift descendeth, our souls ascend up in thankfullnesse to thee, for thy blessings which daily descend to us ; we give humble and hearty thanks unto thee our God, for feeding us at this time, and for thy unspeakable gifts at all times, through Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour. Amen.

(a 4) The



THE METHOD OF THE FIRST BOOK.

Of a Noun	I
Of a Pronoun	30
Of a Verb	40
Of a Participle	113
Of an Adverb	117
Of a Conjunction	126
Of a Preposition	132
Of an Interjection.	136

The Method of the second B O O K.

The definition of Grammar, and order of Construction	138
Points	

The HEADS.

Points by which sentences are distin- guished	141
The Gender of Nouns from their sig- nification	142
The Gender of Nouns from their Termination	147
The Gender of Nouns from their Declension, of the first and fifth Fœminines	148
Of the second & fourth Mas.	149
Three special Rules to know the Gen- der of Nouns of the Third De- clension, whereof the first not en- creasing, and the second increasing long Fœminines.	152, &c.
The third increasing short, Masculi- nes	157

The Method of the third B O O K.

Irregular Nouns of the first De- clension	162
Irregular Nouns of the second De- clension	164
Irregular Nouns of the third De- clension	170
Irregular Nouns of the fourth De- clension	174
Irregular	

The HEADS.

Irregular Nouns of the first Declension	ib.
A mixture of Irregular Nouns	175
Substantives Redundant	179
Irregular Adjectives	181
Some Adjectives Irregular in comparison	183

The Method of the fourth B O O K.

A general Rule concerning the Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs compounded	185
Concerning the Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the first Conjugation	ibid.
The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the second Conjugation	189
The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the third Conjugation	196
The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the fourth Conjugation	218
Verbs Defective	221

The

The HEADS.

The Method of the fifth B O O K.

Concord Plain	226
Concord Figurative	233
Construction of the Nominative	241
Construction of the Genitive with the Pronoun	245
Construction of the Dative case	271
Construction of the Accusative	295
Construction of the Vocative	299
Construction of the Ablative	ib.
Verbs that have a diverse construction	315
Construction of Verbs Passives	320
Construction of Participles	322
Construction of the Infinitive Mood	323
Construction of Gerunds	327
Construction of Supines	332
Construction of Time	334
Construction of Places	336
Construction of Prepositions	340
Construction of Conjunctions	342
Construction of Moods	343
Figures	351
The	

The HEADS.

The Method of the sixt BOOK.

O F Letters	p. 353
Feet and kinds of Verses	355
Poetical Figures	360
General rules of the quantity of syllables	362
Special Rules of first syllables	367
Of middle syllables	369
Of last syllables	371
Of Composition.	379
M. Horns Rules	383
A Synopsis of M. Lillies Rules	385

Rudi-



Rudiments of GRAMMAR.

L I B. I.

There are eight parts of Latine Speech, so called, because every word in the Latine tongue is one of them.

The Eight parts of Latin Speech are:

I. Noun	2	V. Adverb	2
II. Pronoun	2	VI. Conjunction	2
III. Verb	2	VII. Preposition	2
IV. Participle	2	VIII. Interjection	2

There belongeth to the four parts of Speech declined,

1 Number.
2 Person.

The singular number speaketh but of one, as *fructus fruit*.

The plural number speaketh of more than one, as *musæ Songs*.

There are three Persons.

The first person speaketh of himself:

as	Ego I.	{ the } first person sing.
Nos Wee.	{ the }	first person plur.

W The

Of Nouns.

The second person is spoken to :
 as { tu Thou. } the { second person sing.
 vos Ye. } the { second person plur.

All Vocative cases are of the second person, by reason of the Pronoun tu understood, with which it agreeth by apposition in the same case.

The third person is spoken of :
 as { ille hee. } the { third singular.
 illi they } the { third plural.

Of a Noun.

A Noun is a word by which a person or thing is signified and known : as autor an author; liber a book; bonus good.

There are two sorts of Nouns.

- 1 a noun substantive.
- 2 a noun adjective.

1 All noun substantive is that standeth by it self.

That is, it requireth not another word to be joyned with him to shew his signification; as homo a man.

2 A noun substantive hath usually before it in the English a, or the, if a consonant follow; and an if a vowel follow : as

{ a book.	{ an artist.
{ the master.	{ an angel.
{ the author.	{ an idle man.

A substantive is to be considered four ways :

First, as it is proper to the person or thing that it betokeneth ; as Carolus, Charls; Anglia, England.

Of Nouns.

Secondly, as it is common to all of the same kind ; as homo a man; terra a land, &c earth.

Thirdly, as it is a substantive signifying things material : as gold, silver, iron, wood, grass, earth, &c.

Lastily, as it is a substantive signifying things not material ; as, time, opportunity, occasion, &c.

A Noun Adjective is that cannot stand by it self in signification, (that is) it requireth to be joyned with a substantive ; as, bonus good; foelix happy.

Such nouns are adjectives, to which this word man, or thing, may be joyned ; as happy man; good thing.

Cases.

Nouns are declined with six cases ; singularly and plurally.

{ 1 Nominative.	{ 4 Accusative.
{ 2 Genitive.	{ 5 Vocative.
{ 3 Dative.	{ 6 Ablative.

A Case is the special ending of a word; be it Noun, Pronoun, or Participle.

Genders of Nouns:

There be three Genders :

- 1 Masculine.
- 2 Feminine.
- 3 Neuter.

Declensions of Nouns.

Here exercise your scholar by Common of two: *as*, parens, a father or mother.

If a substantive be of the masculine & difference feminine; Grammarians call it the Doubtful; a bee from *as*, cortex, a rinde or bark. a shee; *as*, a dog ^{is} a fied; Grammarians call it the Epicene; *as*, shee? *Ans.* passer, a sparrow, the cock and hen: aquila, an a hee. Q. Eagle, male and female. Give the ~~shee~~ all gender is the difference of a noun, according to the sex. *Ans.* a bitch, &c.

Declensions of Nouns.

Declension is varying of a word into divers endings, called cases.

There are five declensions of nouns.

A noun is known of what declension it is, by the ending of the genitive case singular.

There are some letters in every noun, which may be called desetted, or reserved letters; which are to be put to the terminations of that declension, of which the Latin noun is.

The desetted, or reserved letters of the first declension are found by cutting off (a) from the nominative case singular: *as*, *mus-a*. Lance-*a*.

The

The first Declension.

The first Declension.

Musa, a song.

Singuliter	Nominativo	mus-	a, a song.
	Genitivo		æ, of a song.
	Dativo		æ, to a song.
	Accusativo		am, the song.
	Vocativo		a, ô song.
	Ablativo		â, frô or by a song.

Pluraliter	Nominativo	mus-	æ, songs.
	Genitivo		arum, of songs.
	Dativo		is, to songs.
	Accusativo		as, the songs.
	Vocativo		æ, ô songs.
	Ablativo		is, from or by songs.

Sing. the

nom.	a
gen.	æ
dat.	æ
accu.	in am
Voc.	a
abl.	â

Plural. the

nom.	æ
gen.	am n
dat.	is
accu.	as
voc.	æ
abl.	is

3 cases in (a) the { Nominative
Vocative & Ablative } singular.

4 cases in (æ) the { Genitive
Dative } singular.

1 case in (am) the accusative case singular.
1 case in (arum) the genitive case plural.

B 3. 2 cases.

The first Declension:

2 cases in (*is*) the { ^{Dative-}
and ^{Ablative}} plural.
1 case in (*as*) the accusative case plural.

Observations.

The obser- 1 That old Authors dissolved the dis-
vations let theng of the genitive case æ, into aï: as,
children aulæi pictæi, for aulæ pictæ.
learn to 2 In imitation of the Greeks, the Latines
read per- fectly, and sometimes use as, in the genitive case singu-
they will lar: as, Pater familias; vias, terras, auræ:
them upon easily find for, familiæ, viæ, terraæ, auræ.
occasion. 3 The genitive case plural is sometimes
syncopated: and that chiefly in the com-
pounds of colo and gigno: as, coelico-
lum for coelicularum: Grajugenum for Gra-
jugenarum.

4 Filia, a daughter; nata, a daughter; dea,
a goddess; liberta, a late bond-servant; equa,
a mare; mula, a mule; for distinction of sex do
make the dative and ablative in abus, and
sometimes also in is.

The variation of Greek Nouns.

no.	gen.	dat.	icc.	voc.	abl.
masc. as.	æ	æ	{ am an}	a â	{ Ane elas}
fem. a.	æ	æ	an	a â	-Electra
masc. es.	æ	æ	en	{ e â}	{ e â} anchises
fem. e	es	e	en	e	e - Penelope

The

The second Declension:

The second Declension.

The deseeted or reserved letters of nouns
of the second declension ending in us or in
um, are found by cutting off us or um, from
the nominative case singular: as,
domin/us, regn/um.

Secondly, of nouns ending in er, if a half vowel come before er: as, puer, or a half vowel: as, tener; then the letters of the noun it self in the nominative case singular, are the reserved letters: as, nom. puer, gen. pueri, a childe: nom. tener, gen. teneri, tender, young: the like is to be observed in vir, a man: and satur, full: gen. viri: gen. saturi.

Thirdly, if a mute come before (er) in Mutes are,
the nominative case: as, liber, a book: can- b.c. a j g h-
cer, a crevise, or crab: magister, a master: p q r-
then (e) is cast away from er in the last
syllable, and the remaining letters are to
be put to the terminations of the severall
cases: as, in liber, the reserved letters are
libr. in cancer, the reserved letters are
cancr.

From this except,

- 1 Liber, for Bacchus: gen. Liberi.
- 2 Liber, free: Libera, liberum.
- 3 Asper, rough: aspera,asperum.
- 4 Gibber, gibbera, gibberum: one that hath
a crooked back.
- 5 Celiber: gen. Celibéri: one dwelling
near the river Iberus.
- 6 Exter, extera, exterum: strange, for-
rain.
- 7 Lacer,

The second Declension.

7 Lacer, lacera, lacerum : rent, or mangled in pieces.

8 Presbiter, presbiteri : an elder or ancient.

9 Prosper, prospera, prosperum : happy, prosperous.

10 Socer, gen. Soceri, a wife's father, a father in law.

11 **M**ouns compounded of gero and fero : as, armiger, armigera, armigerum. Lucifer, lucifera, luciferum.

The variation of the second Declension.

Dominus, a Lord.

Singulariter	Nominativo	domin	us, a Lord.
	Genitivo		i, of a Lord.
	Dative		o, to a Lord.
	Accusativo		um, the Lord.
	Vocativo		e, ô Lord.
	Ablativo		o, from or by a Lord.

Pluraliter	Nominativo	domin	i, lords.
	Genitivo		orum, of lords.
	Dative		is, to lords.
	Accusativo		os, the lords.
	Vocativo		i, ô lords.
	Ablativo		is, from or by lords.

Mouns of the Neuter gender in this Declension, also in the third and fourth, have the nominative, the accusative, and vocative alike; which three cases in the plural end always in a.

Singu-

The second Declension.

Regnum, a kingdom.

Singul- ariter	Nom.	regn	um, a kingdom.
	Gen.		i, of a kingdom.
	Dat.		o, to a kingdom.
	Acc.		um, the kingdom.
	Voc.		um, ô kingdom.
	Abl.		o, from or by a kingdom.

Plura- liter	Nom.	regn	a, kingdoms.
	Gen.		orum, of kingdoms.
	Dat.		is, to kingdoms.
	Acc.		a, the kingdoms.
	Voc.		a, ô kingdoms.
	Abl.		is, from or by kingdoms.

Sing. the	nom.	us,r	Plur. the
	gen.		nom.
	dat.		gen.
	acc.		dat.
	voc.		acc.
	abl.		voc.

gen. singular.

3 cases in i the nom. & plural.

2 cases in o, the nom. & singular.

1 case in um, the accusative case singular.

1 case in orum, the genitive case plural.

2 cases in is, the dat. & plural.

B. S.
I case

The second Declension:

1 case in os, the accusative case plural.
 2 cases diversly, the { nom. & { singular.
 voc.

Observations.

1 That nominatives in us, make their vocative in e, except Deus, which maketh d Deus, and filius, a son, which maketh voc. d fili.

2 Proper names of men ending in ius, cast away us from the nominative case, and make the voc. in i: as, nom. Virgilius, voc. Virgili.

3 Adjectives in ius make their voc. case in e: as, nom. Cynthius, voc. Cynthie: nom. Delius, voc. Delie: nom. Philius, voc. Philie, and some Greek nouns: as, nom. Evius, voc. Evie: nom. Sperchius, voc. Sperchie.

4 Agnus, a lamb: Iucus, a wood: fluvius, a river: chorus, a company of singers, or dancers; populus, a nation: sometimes make the vocative case in us.

5 The genitive case plural of this Declension, is sometimes syncopated, or in part cut away: as, Deum for Deorum: Virum for Virorum.

And the genitive case singular of nouns ending in the nominative in ius, and ium: as, Antonius: gen. Antoni for Antonii: tigurium, a lodge, or cottage: gen. tiguri.

6 Deus in the nom. dat. voc. and ablative plural, barteth: as,

Plur.

The second Declension.

Plura- liter } nom. Dei, or Dii.
 } dat. Deis, or Diis.
 } voc. Dei, or Dii.
 } abl. Deis, or Diis.

The Variation of Greek Nouns of this Declension.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
in eus.	{ ei.	{ eo	{ eeu		eo
	eos	ei	ea		
mas. & os					
fem.	i	o	on	{ e	
neut.	on			{ on	o
in eos	eo	eo	eon	eos	eo
No.	Ulysses,	Ulyseī	Ulyseī	Ulli	
	Achilleus,	gen.	Achilleī	os	Achil-
			Achilleī	li.	li.

The third Declension:

The desisted letter s of nouns of the third Declension, are found by cutting off is from the genitive case singular of the nouns: as, from vestis, take away is, and the desisted or reserved letters are vest, tristis, corporis, trist. corpor.

The nominative case of the third Declension endeth diversly: as, in a,c,e,i,l,n,o,r,s,t,x.

The

The third Declension.

The variation.

Vestis, a Garment.

Singulariter	Nominativo	vest	is, a garment.
	Genitivo		is, of a garment.
	Dativo	vest	i, to a garment.
	Accusativo	em	em, the garment.
	Vocativo		is, ô garment.
	Ablativo	e	e, from or by a garment.
Pluraliter	Nom.	es	garments.
	Gen.	ium	of garments.
	Dat.	ibus	to garments.
	Acc.	est	the garments.
	Voc.	es	es, ô garments.
	Abl.	ibus	ibus, from or by garments.

Tempus, Time.

Singulariter	Nominativo		tempus, time.
	Genitivo		is, of time.
	Dativo	tempor	i, to time.
	Accusativo		tempus, the time.
	Vocativo		tempus, ô time.
	Ablativo	e	e, from or by time.
Pluraliter	Nom.	a	a, times.
	Gen.	um	um, of times.
	Dat.	ibus	ibus, to times.
	Acc.	a	a, the times.
	Voc.	a	a, ô times.
	Abl.	ibus	ibus, from or by times.

Rete, a Net.

Singulariter	Nom.	rete	rete, a net.
	Gen.		is, of a net.
	Dat.	ret	i, to a net.
	Acc.		rete, the net.
	Voc.		rete, ô net.
	Abl.	i	i, from or by a net.

Plur.

The third Declension.

Pluraliter	Nominativo	ia	, nets.
	Genitivo	ium	, of nets.
	Dativo	ibus	, to nets.
	Accusativo	ret	ia, the nets.
	Vocativo	ia	, ô nets.
	Ablativo	ibus	, from or by nets.

Sing.	Sing. the	Plur. the
	nom.	nom.
	gen.	is
	dat.	i
	acc.	in
	voc.	---
Plur.	---	---
	gen.	um
	dat.	ibus
	acc.	es
	voc.	es
	abl.	ibus

2 cases various, and singular.

1 case in *is*, the genitive singular.

1 case in *i*, the dative singular.

1 case in *em*, the accusative singular.

1 case in *e*, the ablative singular.

1 case in *um*, the genitive case plural.

3 cases in *es* nom. accu. plur. voc.

2 cases in *ibus*, dative ablative plural.

Observations.

Accusative sing.

1 Some nouns make their accus. sing. only in *im*: as,

Nom.

The third Declension.

Nom. vis, force: accus. vim.
Nom. rayis, hoarsness: acc. ravim.
Nom. tussis, a cough: acc. tuſſim.
Nom. sitis, thirst: acc. ſitim.
Nom. amulis, a Carpenters rule: acc. amuſim.
Nom. Charybdis, a gulf: acc. Charybdim.
Nom. Magudaris, the herb Laserpitium: accus. Magudarim.
Nom. cannabis, hemp: acc. cannabim.
Nom. pelvis, a basin: acc. pelvim.
Nom. buris, a plow handle: acc. burim.
Nom. memphitis, a stone fatty, and of divers colours: acc. memphitim.

Nom. securis, an axe: acc. ſecurim, so Si-
napim, Præſepim, Syrtim, Opim, Leucaspim,
Cucumim, and names of Rivers: as,

Ararim, Ligerim, Tigrim, Abim, &c. All
such Nouns as make the accusative case
in im, only make the ablative in i: as,

ablat. vi, ravi, tussi, &c.

2 Other Nouns make their accusative
case in em, and in im: as, bipennis, a tri-
bill: acc. bipennem, and bipennim: ſemem-
tis, ſeed ſown: acc. ſementem and ſementim:
ſtrigilis, a horse-comb: accus. ſtrigilem and
ſtrigilim: cutis, the skin of mans body: acc.
cutem and cutim.

1 clavis, a key; *make the accusa-*
2 febris, a fever; *tive case usually*
3 navis, a ship; *in em.*
4 aqualis, an ewer;

1 puppis, the hinddeck *make the ac-*
of a ship. *cusative case*
2 turris, a tower. *usually in*
3 restis, a halter. *im.*

Nouns

The third Declension.

1 Nouns that make the accusative case
in em and im, make the ablative case in-
gular in e, and i.

The abla-
tive case
singular.

Ignis, fire.

Anguis, a snake.

Supellex, household-

ſtrife.

Unguis, a nail.

Vectis, a bar of

wood.

2 Nouns ending in trix, derived of verbs,
make their ablative in e or i.

3 Adjectives declined like tristis, and also
ſodalis, amalis, and ſuch others, as are for-
med like Adjectives; for the most part
make their ablative in i.

4 Names of Months ending in i or r,
make the ablative case in i: as, September,
abt. Septembri.

5 Nouns ending in al, ar, and e, for the
most part make their abl. case in i.

Except,

1 Far, meal.

2 Hepar, the liver.

3 Jubar, a sun-beam.

4 Nectar, a pleasant liquor. With,
Præſepc, ſoracē, reate, care, hibra-
cte, prænēſtē.

The Nominative Plural.

1 Sometimes the nom. case plural end-
eth in eis: as, partis, for partes: and som-
times also eis is contracted into i: as,
Sardeis, Sardis: and the same is to be no-
ted in the accusative also.

2 Neuters which make the neuter gen-
der

The third Declension.

der in i, oain e, and i, make the nominative case plural in ia : as, abl. mari, plural. nom. maria.

Except ubera, vetera, amplustre : plur. amplustra and amplustria, a flag, or banner.

The Genitive case Plural.

1 Nouns of this Declension which lack the singular number, make the genitive case plural in ium : as, penates, penatum, household goods : moenia, moenium, walls of a tower.

Except coelites, lemures, opes, primores, proceres, &c. which make the gen. in um.

2 Nouns making the ablative case in onely, or in e and i, make the genitive case plural in ium,

3 Nouns which have the nominative case singular, ending with two consonants: as, ars, pars, &c. make the genitive plural in ium : as, partium, artium.

Except,

Hyenum, of hyems. Participum, of particeps.

Municipum, of municeps.

Inopum, of inops.

Forcipum, of forceps.

Mancipum, of manceps.

Also the compounds of facio : as, artificum of artifex : opificum, of opifex : carnifcum, of carnifex, and Nouns of the Comparative

Chalybum, of Chalibis.

Arabum, of Arabs.

Cyclopum, of Cyclops.

Coelibum, of coelebs.

Cientum, of cliens.

Supplicum, of supplex.

The third Declension.

comparative degree : all which, make the gen. case plural in um, except plus, plurium.

4 The genitive case plural endeth in ium, of nouns, which make the nominative case singular in is, es, er, not increasing in the genitive case : also carnium, of caro : vitium, of vitis, a vine.

Except,

Canum, of canis.

Vatum, of vatis.

Volucrum, of volucris.

Apum & apium, of apes.

Uberum, of uber.

Celerum, of celer.

Quadrupedum, of quadrupes.

Strigilum, of strigilis.

Panum, of panis.

Juvenum, of juvenis.

Opum, of opes.

Degenerum, of degener.

Congenerum, of congener.

Divitum, of dives.

Mugilum, of mugilis, a mullet.

5 Words of one syllable in the nominative case singular, make the genitive case plural in ium : as, mas, marium : nox, noctum, night.

Except,

Ren, renum : mos, morum : flos, florum : far, pus, crus, grus, laus, frus, lex, rex, vox, dux, pes, præs, fus : gen. frugis, frugum : with a few others.

6 Names of feasts, which want the singular number, make the gen. case plural in orum, and in ium : as, Agonaliorum, & Agonaliuum.

7 Alitum is the Genitive case plural

The Fourth Declension.

ral of ales, and cœlitum, of cœlites.

8 Some genitives plural, are syncopated: as, coelestūm, for coelestium.

Greek Nouns of the Third Declension.

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accu.	Voc.	Abl.
an	anos	ani	ana	an	ane
as	antos	anti	anta	as	ante
as	ados	adi	ada	as	ade
is	idos	idi	ida	i	ide
			in		
is	eos	i	in	i	i
us	untis	unti	unta	u	unte
ys	yos	yi	yn	y	y
o	us	o	o	o	o

The Fourth Declension.

The deseted, or reserved Letters of Nouns of the fourth Declension, are found by cutting off us from the nominative case singular: as, from fructus, cut off us, the reserved Letters are fruct.

Fru-

The Fourth Declension.

Fructus, fruit.

Singulariter	nom.	fruct	us, fruit.
	gen.		us, of fruit.
	dat.	fructi	ni, to fruit.
	acc.		um, the fruit.
	voc.		us, & fruit.
	abl.		u, from or by fruit.
Pluraliter	nom.		us, fruits.
	gen.		uum, of fruits.
	dat.	fructi	ibus, to fruits.
	acc.		us, the fruits.
	voc.		us, & fruits.
	abl.		ibus, from or by fruits.

Genu, a knee: invariable in the sing.

Singulariter

Nom. genu, a knee.	Gen. genu, of a knee.	Dat. genu, to a knee.	Acc. genu, the knee.	Voc. genu, & knee.	Abl. genu, from or by a knee.	New. genua, knees.
						Gen. genuum, of knees.
						Dat. genibus, to knees.
						Acc. genua, the knees.
						Voc. genua, & knees.
						Abl. genibus, from or by knees.

Pluraliter

Nouns of the Second and Fourth Declension.

Singulariter

Nom. domus, a house.
Gen. domi, at home.
Dat. domui, to a house.
Acc. domum, home, or the house.
Voc. domus, & house.
Abl. domo, from a house.

Plur:

The Fourth Declension.

Pluraliter	<i>Nom.</i>	domus, houses.
	<i>Gen.</i>	domorum, of houses.
		domuum,
	<i>Dat.</i>	domibus, to houses.
	<i>Acc.</i>	domos, & domus, the houses.
	<i>Voc.</i>	domus, ô houses.
	<i>Abl.</i>	domibus, from houses.

	Laurus, a bay-tree.
Sing.	Plur.
Nom. laurus.	{ Nom. lauri & laurus.
Gen. lauri & laurus.	Gen. laurorum.
Dat. lauro.	{ Dat. lauris.
Acc. laurum.	Acc. lauros & laurus.
Voc. laure.	{ Voc. lauri.
Abl. lauro & lauru.	Abl. lauris.

Quercus, an Oke.	
Singul.	Plural.
no. quercus.	nom. quercus.
gen. querçi & quer- cus.	gen. querçorum, & querçuum.
dat. querçui.	dat. querçubus.
acc. querçum.	acc. querçus.
voc. querçus.	voc. querçus.
abl. querçu.	abl. querçubus.

Sing.	Colus, a distaff.	Plur.
nom. colus.		nom. colii.
gen. coli & colus.		gen. colorum.
dat. colo.		dat. colis.
acc. colum.		acc. colos.
voc. cole.		voc. colli.
abl. colo, colu.		abl. colis.

The Fourth Declension.

Ficus, a fig, and fig-tree.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>no.</i> <i>ficus.</i>	<i>nom.</i> <i>fici, ficus.</i>
<i>gen.</i> <i>fici, & ficus.</i>	<i>gen.</i> <i>ficorum, ficuum.</i>
<i>dat.</i> <i>fico, & ficui.</i>	<i>dat.</i> <i>ficis, ficubus.</i>
<i>acc.</i> <i>ficum.</i>	<i>acc.</i> <i>ficos, & ficus.</i>
<i>voc.</i> <i>fice, ficus.</i>	<i>voc.</i> <i>fici, & ficus.</i>
<i>abl.</i> <i>fico, ficu.</i>	<i>abl.</i> <i>ficis, ficubus.</i>

Ficus, for a disease, is the masculine gender, and second Declension only.

Singulariter u, through all cases.	Pluraliter	ua	Neuters of this de- clension.
		uum bus ua ua bus	

Sing. the		Plur.
nom.	us	nom.
gen.	us	gen.
dat.	ui	dat.
acc.	um	acc.
voc.	us	voc.
abl.	u	abl.

Six cases in *us*, { nom.
gen.
voc. } singular.
the { nom.
acc.
voc. } plural.

- 1 case in *ui*, the dative singular.
- 1 case in *um*, the accusative singular.
- 1 case in *u*, the ablative singular.
- 1 case in *uum*, the genitive plural.

Ficus

The Fifth Declension.

2 cases in *ibus*, the {
dat.
&
abl.} Plural.

Observations:

1 That sometimes the genitive case plural is syncopated: *as*, *currum*, *for curuum*, of *currus*, a cart: and the gen. sing. in *is*, and in *i*: *as*, *fructuis*, and *fructi*.

2 *Arcus*, a bow: *artus*, the joints: *Iacus*, a pool: *specus*, a den: *tribus*, a band, ward, or stock: *partus*, birth of children; a child, or infant: *portus*, a Port or Haven: *veru*, a spit: *genu*, a knee, *genibus*, and *genubus*: the rest make the dative and ablative plural in *ibus*.

3 Some Nouns make the dative singular in *u*: *as*, *metu* for *metui*.

4 *Iesus* hath the accusative case *Iesum*, and in the rest of the cases *Iesu*.

The Fifth Declension.

The desecuted or reserved letters of Nouns of the Fifth Declension, are found by cutting off *es* from the nominative case singular: *as*, from *dies*, take away *es*, and the reserved Letters are *di*.

<i>Singul-</i> <i>lariter</i>	<i>Dies, a day.</i> <i>Nom.</i> { <i>es</i> , a day. <i>Gen.</i> { <i>ei</i> , of a day. <i>Dat.</i> { <i>di</i> <i>ei</i> , to a day. <i>Acc.</i> { <i>em</i> , the day. <i>Voc.</i> { <i>es</i> , ô day. <i>Abl.</i> { <i>e</i> , from or by a day.
----------------------------------	---

Plural.

The Fifth Declension.

Plura-	liter	<i>di</i>	{	{	{	{	{	{	{
			nom.	es, days.					
			gen.	erum, of days.					
			dat.	ebus, to days.					
			acc.	es, the days.					
			voc.	es, ô days.					
abl.	ebus, from or by days.								

Sing. the	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{
	nom.	es	nom.	es					
	gen.	ei	gen.	erum					
	dat.	ei	dat.	ebus					
	acc.	in	acc.	es					
	voc.	em	voc.	es					
abl.	e	abl.	ebus						

Plur. the	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{
	nom.	es	nom.	es					
	gen.	erum	gen.	erum					
	dat.	ebus	dat.	ebus					
	acc.	es	acc.	es					
	voc.	es	voc.	es					
abl.	ebus	abl.	ebus						

Five cases in <i>es</i> , the	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{
	voc.	nom.							
	nom.	es							
	acc.	es							
	voc.	es							
	gen.	es							

2 cases in <i>ei</i> , the	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{	{
	dat.	es							

1 case in *em*, the accusative case singular.
 1 case in *e*, the ablative case singular.
 1 case in *erum*, the genitive case plural.
 2 cases in *ebus*, the dative and abl. plural.

Observations.

1 Ancient Writers made the genitive case singular in *ii*, *es*, and *e*.

2 They made the dative case singul. in *e*.
Of

Of Nouns Adjectives.

Of Nouns Adjectives.

Adjectives of the first and second Declension, are declined in the Masculine gender like dominus, in the feminine like misa, and in the Neuter gender like regnum.

Bonus, Good.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>Singulariter</i>	<i>nom.</i> bonus	bona	bonum
	<i>gen.</i> boni	bonæ	boni
	<i>dat.</i> bono	bonæ	bono
	<i>acc.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum
	<i>voc.</i> bone	bona	bonum
	<i>abl.</i> bono	bona	bono
<i>Mas.</i>			
<i>Pluraliter</i>	<i>nom.</i> boni	bonæ	bona
	<i>gen.</i> honorum	bonarum	bonorum
	<i>dat.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis
	<i>acc.</i> bonos	bonas	bona
	<i>voc.</i> boni	bonæ	bona
	<i>abl.</i> bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Terminations.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>bon-</i>	us	a	uni i
	i	æ	i orum
	o	æ	o is
	um	am	um os
	e	a	um i
	o	a	o is

These eight Adjectives make their genitive singular in ius, and the dative in i, with their Compounds.

i Solus

Of Nouns Adjectives.

- 1 Solus, alone.
- 2 Unus, one.
- 3 Totus, all the whole.
- 4 Ullus, any.
- 5 Utter, whether of the two.
- 6 Neuter, neither the one, nor the other,
- 7 Alter, another.
- 8 Alius, another.

Alius, alia, aliud.
Ullus, alias, alter, uter, neuter, lack the vocative case.

<i>Sol</i>	us, a, um.	<i>Pluraliter</i>	i, æ, a
	ius		orum, arum, orum
<i>i</i>	i		is, is, is
<i>um, am, um</i>	um, am, um		os, as, a
<i>e, a, um</i>	e, a, um		i, æ, a
<i>o, a, o</i>	o, a, o		is, is, is

Duo, two, and ambo, both together, lack the singular number, and are thus declined:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	duo,	duo
Gen.	duorum, duarum, duorum	duorum
Dat.	duobus, duabus, duobus	duobus
Acc.	duos, duas,	duo
Voc.	duo,	duo
Abl.	duobus, duabus, duobus	duobus

Adjectives of the third Declension.

Fœlix, happy.

<i>Singulariter</i>	nom.	fœlix, mas.	fœm.	neut.
	gen.	fœlicis, mas.	fœm.	neut.
	dat.	fœlici, mas.	fœm.	neut.
	acc.	fœlicem, mas.	fœm.	fœlix, neut.
	voc.	fœlix, mas.	fœm.	neut.
	abl.	felice, mas.	fœm.	neut.
	dœ	felici, mas.	fœm.	neut.
			C	Plur.

Of Nouns Adjectives:

Pluraliter	nom.	fœlices, mas. fœm. fœlicia, neut.
	gen.	fœlicium, mas. fœm. neut.
	dat.	fœlicibus, mas. fœm. neut.
	acc.	fœlices, mas. fœm. fœlicia, neut.
	voc.	fœlices, mas. fœm. fœlicia, neut.
	abl.	fœlicibus, mas. fœm. neu.

Tristis, sad, or heavy.

Singulariter	nom.	tristis, mas. fœm. triste, neut.
	gen.	tristis, mas. fœm. neut.
	dat.	tristi, mas. fœm. neut.
	acc.	tristem, mas. fœm. triste, neut.
	voc.	tristis, mas. fœm. triste, neut.
	abl.	tristi, mas. fœm. neut.

Pluraliter	nom.	tristis, mas. fœm. tristia, neut.
	gen.	tristium, mas. fœm. neut.
	dat.	tristibus, mas. fœm. neut.
	acc.	tristes, mas. fœm. tristia, neut.
	voc.	tristes, mas. fœm. tristia, neut.
	abl.	tristibus, mas. fœm. neut.

Nouns of the Comparative degree.

Singulariter	nom.	durior, mas. fœm. durius, neut.
	gen.	durioris, mas. fœm. neut.
	dat.	duriori, mas. fœm. neut.
	acc.	duriorem, mas. fœm. durius, neut.
	voc.	durior, mas. fœm. durius, neut.
	abl.	{ duriore, mas. fœm. neut. or duriori, mas. fœm. neut.

Pluraliter	nom.	duriores, mas. fœm. duriora, neut.
	gen.	duriorum, mas. fœm. neut.
	dat.	durioribus, mas. fœm. neut.
	acc.	duriores, mas. fœm. duriora, neut.
	voc.	duriores, mas. fœm. duriora, neut.
	abl.	durioribus, mas. fœm. neut.

Of Nouns Adjectives.

The Terminations are the same with the Third Declension, and the desisted, or reserved letters of Adjectives are found as of Substantives, of the same Declension.

Adjectives declined Substantively:

Singul- lariter	nom.	bonnm	for	bona res
	gen.	boni		bonæ rei
	dat.	bono		bonæ rei
	acc.	bonum		bonam rem
	voc.	bonum		bona res
	abl.	bono		bona re

Plura- liter	nom.	bona	for	bonæ res
	gen.	bonorum		bonarum rerū
	dat.	bonis		bonis rebus
	acc.	bona		bonas res
	voc.	bona		bonæ res
	abl.	bonis		bonis rebus

Singul- lariter	nom.	fœlix	for	fœlix res
	gen.	fœlicis		fœlicis rei
	dat.	fœlici		fœlici rei
	acc.	fœlix		fœlicem rem
	voc.	fœlix		fœlix res
	abl.	{ fœlice fœlici		fœlice re

Pluraliter	nom.	fœlicia	for	fœlices res
	gen.	fœlicium		fœlicium rerum
	dat.	fœlicibus		fœlicibus rebus
	acc.	fœlicia		fœlices res
	voc.	fœlicia		fœlices res
	abl.	fœlicibus		fœlicibus rebus

Comparison of Adjectives.

The ending of the cases in every Declension.

	<i>no.</i>	<i>ge.</i>	<i>da.</i>	<i>acc.</i>	<i>vō.</i>	<i>ab.</i>	<i>no.</i>	<i>gen.</i>	<i>dat.</i>	<i>acc.</i>	<i>voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
1	<i>a</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>am</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>â</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>arum</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>is</i>
2	<i>i</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>um</i>		<i>o</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>orūm</i>	<i>is</i>		<i>os</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>
3	<i>is</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>em</i>		<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>ibus</i>		<i>es</i>	<i>ibus</i>	
4	<i>us</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ui</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>uum</i>	<i>ibus</i>		<i>us</i>	<i>ibus</i>	
5	<i>es</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ci</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>erum</i>	<i>ebus</i>		<i>es</i>	<i>ebus</i>	

Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives whose signification may increase, or be diminished, may forme Comparison.

The Positive setteth down the quality absolutely : *as*, *durus*, *hard*.

The Comparative raiseth the signification of his Positive, in respect of some other : *as*, *durior*, *harder*, *durius*, *over hard*, *aversior*, *too coy*.

In pluribus locis, in ver-
ry many places.

The English of the Comparative degree hath commonly this word *more* before it, or this particle, in the end of it : *as*, *mollior*, *softer*, or *more soft*.

When it hath this word *somewhat*, before it, or *ish* in the end of it, it signifieth *lesse* then the Positive : *as*, *pallidior*, *palish*, or *somewhat pale*.

The Superlative exceedeth the Positive in the highest degree : *as*, *durissimus*, *hardest*.

The

Comparison of Adjectives.

The Superlative hath before it in the English, the sign *most*, or *very*, or *est* in the end of it : *as*,

mollissimus, { *softest*.

very soft.

Summa autoritas, *very high authority*.
Be he never so great a friend of mine,
Sit intimus à corde, or consiliis.

The Comparative, and Superlative degrees are formed from the first case of the Positive that endeth in *i*, by putting thereto *or* and *us*, to make the Comparative : *as*, *of duri*, *durior*, *masculine and feminine*, and *durius*, *neuter* : and by putting thereto *s* and *simus*, to make the Superlative : *as*, *of duri*, *durissimus*.

Positives in *r*, make their Superlative by putting *terimus* : *as*, *pulcher*, *fair* : *pulchrior*, *fairer* : *pulcherrimus*, *fairest*.

These Adjectives in *lis*, make their Superlative by changing *is*, into *limus* : *as*, *facilis*, *easie* . *facilius*, *more easie* : *facillimus*, *most easie*.

Humilis, *humble* : *humilius*, *more humble*: *humillimus*, *most humble*.

Similis, *like* : *similior*, *more like* : *simillimus*, *most like*.

Imbecillus, *weak* : *imbecillior*, *more weak*: *imbecillimus*, or *imbecillissimus*, *most weak*.

If a vowel come before us, the degrees are made by *magis*, *more*, and *maxime*, *most*: *as*, *pius*, *godly*, *magis pius*, *more godly*, *maxime pius*, *most godly*.

Of a Pronoun.

A Pronoun.

A Pronoun is a word which supplieth and serveth the place of a Noun.

First, a Pronoun pointeth out some new person not mentioned afore: as, *Ego, I*: *Tu, Thou*.

Secondly, it respecteth, and rehearseth some person, or thing afore mentioned: as, *ille, hee, ipse, hee, iste, hee, is, hee, hic, he, sui, of himself, or themselves, qui, who, and these are called Relatives.*

Thirdly, it denoteth propriety: as, *meus, mine, tuus, thine, suis, his, noster, ours, vester, yours: cujus, cuja, cujum, whose, which they call Possessives.*

Fourthly, it signifieth Nation, *Seft*, or Party: as, *nostras, of our own Countrey, or household: vestras, of your Countrey, lineage, or seft: cujas, of what seft, or Countrey, which they term Gentiles, and are declin-ed like foelix.*

There are three Pronoun Substantives, *Ego, Tu, Sui*: to which add quid, with his Compounds, and all the rest are Adjectives.

The

Of a Pronoun.

The Substantives have a peculiар declining.

Singul.

Nom. *Ego, I*

Gen. *Mei, of me*

Dat. *Mihi, to me*

Acc. *Me, me*

Voc. —

Abl. *à, me, from or by me*

Plur.

Nom. *Nos, We*

Gen. *Nostrum, of us:*

Nostrī, of us

Dat. *Nobis, to us*

Acc. *Nos, us.*

Voc. —

Abl. *à, nobis, from or by us.*

Singulariter

Nom. { *Ego ipse, or Egomet ipse* } *I, my self*

Gen. *Mei ipsius, of me my self*

Dat. *Mihi ipsi, to me my self*

Acc. *Me ipsum, me my self*

Voc. —

Abl. *à me ipso, from or by me my self*

Nom. *nos ipsi, we our selves*

Gen. *nostrum ipsorum, of us our selves.*

Dat. *nobis ipsis, to or for us our selves*

Acc. *nos ipsos, us our selves.*

Pluraliter

Voc. —
Abl. *à nobis ipsis, from or by us our selves.*

Sing.

Nom. *Tu, thou*

Gen. *Tui, of thee*

Dat. *Tibi, to thee*

Acc. *Te, thee*

Voc. *Tu, O thou*

Abl. *à te, from or by thee*

Plur.

Nom. *vos, ye, you.*

Gen. *vestrum, of you, or vestri, of you.*

Dat. *vobis, to you.*

Acc. *vos, ye, you.*

Voc. *ò vos, ò yee.*

Abl. *à vobis, from or by you.*

Sing.

C 4

Of a Pronoun.

Singulariter	nom. <i>tute ipse, thou thy self.</i>
	gen. <i>tui ipsius, of thee thy self.</i>
	dat. <i>tibi ipsi, to thee thy self.</i>
	acc. <i>te ipsum, thee thy self.</i>
Pluraliter	voc. _____
	abl. <i>à te ipso, from or by thee thy self.</i>
	nom. <i>vos ipsi, ye your selves.</i>
	gen. <i>vestrum ipsorum, of you your selves.</i>
	dat. <i>vobis ipsis, to you your selves.</i>
	acc. <i>vos ipsos, ye your selves.</i>
	voc. _____
	abl. <i>à vobis ipsis, from or by you your selves.</i>

Notes.

Nostri and vestri, the genitive cases plural of ego, and tu, are not joined with an Adjective plural, but the genitives nostrum and vestrum: as, contemptor nostrum duorum, a despiser of us two; not contemptor nostri duorum.

Singulariter and Pluraliter.

Gen.	sui, of himself, or of themselves, of her self, of itself.
Dat.	sibi, to himself, or themselves, to herself, to it self.
Acc.	se, himself, or themselves, her self, it self.
Abl.	à se, from himself, or themselves, from her self, from it self.

Singulariter

Nom.	suis, his own, sua, her own, suum, its own.
Gen.	sui, of his own, sua, of her own, sui, of its own.
Dat.	suo, to his own, sua, to her own, suo, to its own.

Acc.

Of a Pronoun.

Acc. suum, his own, suam, her own, suum, its own.

Voc. _____

Abl. à suo, from his own, suâ from her own, suo, from its own.

Pluraliter

Nom. sui, his own, suæ, her own, sua, its own.
Gen. suorum, of his own, suarum, of her own, suorum, of its own.

Dat. suis, to his own, to her own, to its own.

Acc. suos, his own, suas, her own, sua, its own.

Voc. _____

Abl. à suis, from or by his own, her own, its own.

Singulariter

No. ille, { he, that man, { illa { she, that woman, { illud, { that man, { thing.
that same, { that man, { illa { that woman, { illud, { that man, { thing.

Gen. illius, of him, of her, of that thing.

Dat. illi, to him, to her, to that thing.

Acc. illum, him, illam, her, illud, that thing.

Voc. _____

Abl. illo, from him, illâ, from her, illo, from that thing.

Pluraliter

Nom. illi, they, or those, illæ, those, illa, those things.

Gen. illorum, of those, illarum, of those, illorum, of those things.

Dat. illis, to those, them or those things.

Of a Pronoun.

Acc. illos { them } illas { them } illa, those
 { those } { those } things.

Voc. —

Abl. ab illis, { them.
 from or by } { those. }

*Sing. mas. fœm. neu.**Nom.* ille, illa, illud*Gen.* illius, illius, il-
 lius*Dat.* illi, illi, illi*Acc.* illum, illam, il-
 lum*Voc.* —*Abl.* illo, illâ, illo*Plur. mas. fœm. neut.**Nom.* illi, illæ, illa*Gen.* illorum, illa-
 rum, illorum*Dat.* illis, illis, illis*Acc.* illos, illas, illa-
 lum*Voc.* —*Abl.* illis, illis, illis*Singulariter**Nom.* iste, this, ista, this, istud, that thing.*Gen.* istius, of this.*Dat.* isti, to this.*Acc.* istum, this, istam, this, istud, that thing.*Voc.* —*Abl.* ab isto, from this, istâ, from this, isto
 from this thing.*Pluraliter**Nom.* isti, these, istæ, these, ista, these things.*Gen.* istorum, of these, istarum, of these,
 istorum, of these things.*Dat.* istis, to these.*Acc.* istos, these, istas, these, ista, these things.*Voc.* —*Abl.* ab ipsis, from or by these.*Sing.*

Of a Pronoun.

Sing. mas. fœm. neut. *Plur. mas. fœm. neut.*

Nom. iste, ista, istud *Nom.* isti, istæ, ista

Gen. istius, istius, isti- *Gen.* istorum, ista-
 rum, istorum

Dat. isti, isti, isti *Dat.* istis, istis, istis

Acc. istum, istam, istū *Acc.* istos, istas, ista

Voc. — *Voc.* —

Abl. isto, istâ, isto *Abl.* istis, istis, istis

Singulariter

Nom. ipse, { he himself
 or,

{ he his own self

ipsa, { she her self

{ she her own self

ipsum, that same, or it self

Gen. ipsius, of his, of himself, of her self, of librum dico,
 it self, of that same.

Dat. ipsi, to himself, to her self, to it self, to
 that same.

Acc. ipsum, himself, ipsam, her self, ipsum, it
 self, that same.

Voc. —

Abl. ipso, from himself, ipsâ, from her self,
 from its self, ipso, from its self.

Pluraliter

Nom. ipsi, they themselves, or their own selves,
 ipsæ, themselves, ipsa, themselves.

Gen. ipsorum, of themselves, ipsarum, of
 themselves, ipso, of themselves.

Dat. ipsi, to themselves.

Acc. ipsos, themselves, ipsas, themselves, ipsa,
 themselves.

Voc. —

Abl. ab ipsis, from or by themselves.

Iustum ipsū
librum dico,
I mean the
very same
book.

Ipsum an-
nulum, that
same thing.

In ipsâ e-
nim dubita-
tione, for in
the very
doubting.

Re ipsâ mi-
hi dolet, in
very deed
it grieveth
me.

His ipsi,
quibus, eve
for them,
for whom,
Eo ipso die,
the self

Sing. same day.

Of a Pronoun.

Sing. mas. fœm. neut.	Plur. mas. fœm. neut.
Nom. ipſæ, ipſa, ipſum	Nom. ipſi, ipſæ, ipſa
Gen. ipſius, ipſius,	Gen. ipſorum, ipſa rum, ipſorum
Dat. ipſi, ipſi, ipſi	Dat. ipſis, ipſis, ipſis
Acc. ipſum, ipſam, ipſum	Acc. ipſos, ipſas, ipſa

Voc.—

Abl. ipſo, ipſâ, ipſo

Voc.—

Abl. ipſis, ipſis, ipſis

Singulariter

Nom. hic, this : hæc, this : hoc, this
Gen. hujus, of this, &c.In his, in
these, or a-
mong thē.

Pluraliter

Nom. hi, these : hæ, these : hæc, these
Gen. horum, of these, &c.

Sing. mas. fœm. neut.	Plur. mas. fœm. neut.
Nom. hic, hæc, hoc	Nom. hi, hæ, hæc
Gen. hujus, hujus,	Gen. horum, harum, horum
Dat. huic, huic, huic	Dat. his, his, his
Acc. hunc, hanc, hoc	Acc. hos, has, hæc

Voc.—

Abl. hoc, hac, hoc

Voc.—

Abl. his, his, his

Singulariter

Nom. is, he, or that same : ea, she : id, that
thing.Idem hoc
ipsum, the
very same

Gen. ejus, of him, of her, of that thing.

Dat. ei, to him, to her, to that thing.

Acc. eum, him : eam, her : id, that thing.

Eo ipso die,

the self
same day.Abl. ab eo, from or by him : eâ, from or by her,
or it : eo, from or by that thing.

Plura-

Of a Pronoun:

Pluraliter

Nom. ii, they or those : eæ, those : ea, those
things.Gen. eorum, of them or those : earum, of them
or those : eorum, of those.

Dat. eis, or iis, to those.

Acc. eos { those
them } eas { those
them } ea, those things.

Voc.—

Abl. ab iis, { those
by them or { these. } de iis, of those.
ex iis, of these.Eos nullos
videret, he
saw none
of them.

Sing. Mas. fœm. neut. Plur. mas. fœm. neut.

Nom. is, ea, id Nom. ii, eæ, ea
Gen. ejus, ejus, ejus, Gen. eorum, earum,
eorum

Dat. ei, ei, ei

Acc. eum, eam, id

Voc.

Abl. eo, eâ, eo

Abl. { iis, { iis, { iis
{ eis, { eis, { eis

Singulariter

Nom. { quis, who. } quæ, who or which.
{ qui, who. } quod, which thing: or quid
or which. what.

Gen. cuius, of which, or whose.

Dat. cui, to which, or to whom.

Acc. quæ, { whom. } quam, { whom } quod,
which. { which. } which { which } thing.

Voc.—

Abl. quo, from { which. } quâ, from { which.
{ whom. } quo, from whom:
which thing.

Plura-

Of a Pronoun.

Pluraliter

No. qui	<i>who</i>	<i>quiæ</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>quiæ</i>	<i>which</i>
	<i>which</i>		<i>which</i>		<i>things.</i>
Gen. quo-	<i>of which</i>	<i>rum</i>	<i>of whom</i>	<i>rum</i>	<i>of which</i>
	<i>of whom</i>		<i>whereof</i>		<i>of whom</i>
Dat.	<i>quibus</i>		<i>quarum</i>		<i>of what</i>
	<i>queis</i>				<i>things.</i>
acc. il-	<i>them,</i>	<i>illas</i>	<i>them,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>those</i>
los,	<i>those,</i>		<i>those,</i>		<i>things.</i>
Voc.					
Abl.	<i>quibus</i>				<i>from whom, what, which.</i>
	<i>queis</i>				
Sing. mas. fœm. neut.			Plur. mas. fem. neut.		
Nom. qui, quiæ, quod			Nom. qui, quiæ, quiæ		
Gen. cuius, cuius, cu-			Gen. quorum, qua-		
jus			rum		
Dat. cui, cui, cui			Dat. quibus, quibus,		
			quibus or queis		
Acc. quem, quam,			Acc. quos, quas, quiæ		
quod					
Voc.			Voc.		
Abl.	<i>quo, quâ, quo</i>		Abl. <i>quibus, quibus</i>		
	<i>qui, qui</i>		<i>or quibus</i>		
	<i>no. quisquis, whatsoever: quicquid,</i>				
	<i>whatsoever.</i>				
Sing.	<i>acc. quicquid, whatsoever.</i>				
	<i>Masc. Fœm. Neut.</i>				
	<i>abl. quoquo quoquâ quoquo</i>				
			Ob.		

Of a Pronoun.

Observations.

1 The Pronoun Substantives, Ego, Tu, Sui; are of the same gender with the noun whereof they are spoken: as, ego, spoken of a man, is the masculine gender; but, ego, spoken of a woman, is the feminine gender.

2 These five, meus, tuus, suis, noster and vester, are declined like Young Adjectives of three Terminations, saving that meus in the voc. case singular, maketh mi, mea, meum.

Nostras, gen. nostratis; vestras, gen. vestratis; cujus, gen. cujatis, are declined like felix.

M.

F.

N.

3 Equisnam, ecquænam, ecquodnam, or ecquidnam; is there any man, woman, or thing; cæteris caret.

4 Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque, Neuter only: gen. cuiuscunque, &c. whatsoever.

5 Quidam, quædam, quoddam, or quidam: gen. cuiusdam, some certain person: quivis, quævis, quodvis, or quidvis: gen. cuiusvis, &c. any man.

Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, or quidlibet: gen. cuiuslibet, &c. who that will.

6 The Compounds of quis, make the feminine gender in the singular number, and neuter in the plural qua not quæ: as,

Nequis, nequa, nequid, lest any man: aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, or aliquid, some body.

Ecquis, hath ecquæ, and ecqua, in singular and plural.

7 Quis

Of a Verb.

7 Quis in old Authors is used in the feminine gender: Quis hæc est, Plaut. in Sticho. ac. 2. sce. 2.

Hiccine! is this he here?

Singulariter	Nom. hiccine, hæccine, heccine.	Pluraliter	no. &c ac.	hæc cine
	Acc. hunccline, hancci- ne.			
	Abl. hoccine, haccine, hoccine.			

Istic, the self same.

Singulariter	no. istic, istæc, i- stoc, or istuc.	Pluraliter	Nom. &c Acc.	istæc.
	ac. istunc, istanc, istoc, or istuc.			
	abl. istoc, istac, istoc.			

In like manner illic, illæc, illoc, is de-
clined.

Eccum, of ecce, and is.

Sin. { Acc. eccum, lo he or shee is here.
eccam,

Plu. { Acc. eccos, lo, these men, or these
eccas, women be here.

So ellum, of ecce and ille, see where
hee is.

A Verb.

A Verb is a word declined with Mood
and Tense, and betokeneth, 1 doing:
2 suffering: 3 being.

Others

Of a Verb.

There are four kinds of Verbs:

1. **A** Verb Active endeth in o, and be-

tokeneth to do: as, amo, I love: and by
putting to r, it may be a Passive: ag, a-
mor.

2. **A** Verb Passive endeth in or, and be-
tokeneth to suffer: as, amor, I am loved: and
by putting away r, it may be an Active:
as, amo.

3. **A** Verb Neuter endeth in o, or m, and
cannot take r, to make it a Passive: It
signifieth

{ 1 doing: as, curro, I run.
sometimes, { 2 suffering: as, ægrotto, I am
sick.

3 being: as, sum, I am.

4. **A** Verb Deponent endeth in or, like a Verbs Com-
Passive, but signifies actively: as, loquor, mon are
I speak: or, absolutely: as, orior, I arise.

now out of
use and re-
duced to
Verbs De-
ponents.

Observations.

1. **A** Verb Passive is discerned by som sign
of the Tenses Passive joyned therewith:
as, am, art, is, are, was, were, be, been.

2. **A** Verb Deponent endeth in or, and hath
no passive sign joyned therewith: as, sci-
tor, I demand; scrutor, I search. Where
the Verb in English is spoken passively, and in
Latine it is found a Deponent, the English
must be changed actively: as, Then is coun-
sel good, when it is best followed; i. e. when
we best follow it.

3. **A** Verb Active like a Noun Adjective,
leaverth the mind unsatisfied, without the
help

Of a Verb.

help of another word: as, amo, *I love*, and the English is turned passive in good sense: as, *I am loved*.

A word ending in *ing*, coming after any English of sum, *am*, *is*, *are*, *art*, *be*, is commonly a Verb active: as, *I am teaching*, *doceo*.

4. A Verb Neuter like a Poun Substantive satisfieth the understanding without the help of another word: as, *pugno*, *I fight*; and is not turned passive in good sense: as, *I am fought*.

2 Verbs ending in *sco*, are Verbs Neuters of Verbs in *eo*, as, *floresco* of *floreo*, to blossom, and those that are derived of Verbs or Nouns.

3 Verbs * ending in *o*, Englished passively, are Verbs Neuters.

* Verbs Neuter passive, so called, because of their passive preterit tense answer to the question, what? it hath an accusative case after it of its own signification: as, *I run a race*, it usually answereth to a question made by some Adverb, Conjunction, or Preposition: as, *curro*, *I run*; where, or whither doe you run? *pugno*, *I fight*; how, or with whom doe you fight? *audeo*, *you fight*?

5. All word ending in *ing*, coming after a Noun Adjective, is commonly made in Latin by a Verb Neuter: as, *I am sound*, *valeo*; *he is pale*, *pallid*.

6. Some Verbs Reurer in *sco*, and also Verbs of moving, are often Englished like passives, and then the English which seems to be made,

1 By the present tense passive, must be made

Of Moods.

made by the preterperfect tense: as, now he is come, *nunc rediit*.

2 The English of the preterimperfect tense, must be made by the preterpluperfect tense: as, *he was not come back in the morning*, *mane non redieret*.

5. Verbs Deponents, are more elegant then actives.

Verbs in *sco*, more elegant then verbs in *eo*.

Verbs Compounds, more elegant then simple verbs.

As Adjectives do garnish, and deck substantives, so do Adverbs adorn Verbs.

To love heartily, { *medullitus amare*.
intime amare.
non mediocriter amare.

Moods:

A Mood is a manner of signifying.

There are four Moods:

1 The Indicative Mood { 1 declareth: as, *tu amas*,
thou lovest.
2 demandeth, { 2 *amas tu*,
dost thou
3 doubteth, { 3 *love*.

2 The Imperative Mood, { 1 commandeth, as, *ama tu*,
love thou.
2 entreateth, { 3 *exhorteth*, { *amato ille*, let
him love.
4 permitteh,

3 The

Of Tenses.

3. The Subjunctive Mood dependeth of some other Verb in the same sentence, with **Qui, quid, qualis, quo-* some Conjunction, or Indefinite ** coming be-*
tween: as, vide quid agas, look what thou
quo.

This Mood is sometimes used in wishing or desiring, and then it is called the Optative Mood: *as, utinam amem, I pray God I love.*

Sometimes it signifieth a power, duty, or desire, expressed in the English, by these signs, *may, can, might, would, could, should, or ought: as, amem, I may, or can love, and then it is called the Potential Mood.*

4. The Infinitive Mood followeth another Verb or Adjective, and hath this sign to: *as, cupio discere, I desire to learn; except after possum, queo, nequeo, volo, nolo, debeo, I must.*

There are added to the Infinitive Mood three voices called Gerunds, ending

in { 1 di, amandi, of loving.
2 do, amando, in loving.
3 dum, amandum, to love.

There are also two Supines: the former ending in *um*, for the * most part signifieth actively: *as, amatum, to love.*
a Neuter passive: *as, vapulatum, passively: as, amatu, to be loved.*

* It signifieth passively, where it is the Supine of a Neuter passive: as, to be beaten.

Tenses.

A Tense is a distinction of time, in regard of time present, time past, or time to come.

There are five Tenses or distinctions of time.

I. The

Of Tenses:

1. The Present Tense, speaketh of the time that now is: *as, amo, I love: amor, I am loved.*

2. The Preterimperfect Tense, speaketh of the time not yet perfectly past: *as, amabam, I loved or did love: amabar, I was loved.*

3. The Preterperfect Tense, speaketh of the time perfectly past: *as, amavi, I have loved.*

4. The Preterpluperfect Tense, speaketh of the time more than perfectly past: *as, amaveram, I had loved.*

5. The Future Tense, speaketh of the time to come: *as, amabo, I shall or will love.*

Signes of the Tenses.

Active.

Present Tense.
eth, est, doe.
doth, dost.

Preterimperfect Tense.

did, didst.
and a person or substantive before a word ending in *d, t, or n: as, he loved, he taught.*

Preterperfect Tense.
have, hath, hast.

Passive.

Present Tense.
am, is, are, art.

Preterimperfect Tense.
was, were, wast.

Preterperfect Tense.
have been, hath been,
hast been.

Preterpluper-

Of Tenses:

Active.

Preterpluperfect
Tense.
had, hadst.

Future Tense.
shall or will.

Potential Mood.
Present Tense.
may, or can.

Preterimperfect
Tense.
*might, would, could,
should.*

Passive.

Preterpluperfect
Tense.
had been, hadst been.

Future Tense.
shall be, or will be.

Potential Mood.
Present Tense.
may be, or can be.

Preterimperfect
Tense.
*might be, would be,
should be, could be.*

Observations:

1. The Preterimperfect Tense is translated by the Preterperfect Tense, unlesse where were is taken for should be: as, a man were happy, if he knew his misery, for should be happy, esset, scripsit Cato qui fuit fere ejus aequalis; *Cato hath written, who was in a manner his like in years.*

2. Had, after the Preterperfect Tense, is commonly a sign of the Preterpluperf. Tense: as, exolvit quod promiserat, he performed that which he had promised; bat it admitteth of the sign of the Preterimperfect Tense also.

Sed cum amore pugnandi in exercitu remansisset; but when he for love of the wars remained in the Camp still. Cum extitisset etiam in Civis tanta crudelitas; when so great cruelty was shewed even against Citizens.

3. The

M. Ie.
Hewes.

Of Conjugations.

3. The Imperative Mood borroweth the Future Tense Indicative. as, valebis, meaque negotia videbis meque (Deo juvante) ante brumam expectabis; farewell, and have a care of my business, and look for me (God assisting) before Winter, and future Subjunctive: as, addideris.

4. When the Future Tense Subjunctive hath the sign hath, joyned therewith, it is called the Future Preterperfect Tense: as, cum dixero, when I shall have spoken; cum peroravero, when I shall have finished.

Conjugations.

There are four Conjugations of Verbs, distinctly known by the vowel going before re in the Infinitive Mood, of Verbs in o, and the second person of the Present Indicative of Verbs in or.

The first Conjugation hath a long before re and ris: as, amare, amaris.

The second Conjugation hath e long before re and ris: as, docere, doceris.

The third Conjugation hath e short before re and ris: as, legere, legeris.

The fourth Conjugation hath i long before re and ris: as, audire, audiris.

Observations.

The first Conjugation is of Verbs in o, commonly with a consonant before o: as, amo,

Of Conjugations:

I love; except beo, to comfort; meo, to goe; creo, to create; screo, to spit; calceo, or calcio, to put on shooes; cuneo, to wedge; laqueo, to halter; lineo, to draw the figure of any thing in lines; nauseo, to have an appetite to vomit, or to despise; nucleo, to cover or hide; and some in io: as, frio, to crum; hio, to gape; pio, to purge sins; travio, to passe, or goe through; gargaridio, to prattle; and a few more.

The second Conjugation is of Verbs ending in eo: as, doceo: except eo, queo, veneo, of the Fourth Conjugation, and those in eo before set down of the first.

The Third Conjugation is of Verbs in o, with a consonant before o, except a few in io: facio, jacio, lacio, specio, fadio, fugio, capio, cupio, rapio, sapio, pario, quatio, & statuo.

The Fourth Conjugation is of Verbs in io, except eo, pereo, queo, vaneo.

The Declining of the Verb

Sum, I am.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus, to be.

Indicative Mood Present Tense:

Sing.	{	1} S um,	<i>I am.</i>
		2} Es,	<i>thou art.</i>
		3} Est,	<i>he is.</i>
Plur.	{	1} S umus,	<i>We are.</i>
		2} Estis,	<i>ye are.</i>
		3} Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

Preter-

Of Verbs.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	1 Eram,	<i>I was.</i>
		2 Eras,	<i>thou wast.</i>
		3 Erat,	<i>he was.</i>

Plur.	{	1 Eramus,	<i>Wee were.</i>
		2 Eratis,	<i>yee were.</i>
		3 Erant,	<i>they were.</i>

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	1 Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
		2 Fuisti,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
		3 Fuit,	<i>he hath been.</i>

Plur.	{	1 Fuimus,	<i>Wee have been.</i>
		2 Fuistis,	<i>yee have been.</i>
		3 Fuerunt,	<i>fuêre, they have been.</i>

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Sing.	{	1 Fueram,	<i>I had been.</i>
		2 Fueras,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
		3 Fuerat,	<i>he had been.</i>

Plur.	{	1 Fueramus,	<i>Wee had been.</i>
		2 Fueratis,	<i>yee had been.</i>
		3 Fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>

Future Tense.

Sing.	{	1 Ero,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
		2 Eris,	<i>thou shalt or will be.</i>
		3 Erit,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>

Plur.	{	1 Erimus,	<i>Wee shall or wil be.</i>
		2 Eritis,	<i>ye shall or wil be.</i>
		3 Erunt,	<i>they shall or wil be.</i>

D

Impe-

Of Verbs.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	{ 2 }	Sis, es, or esto, be thou.
		Sit, or esto, let him be.
Plur.	{ 2 }	Sitis, este, or estote, be yee.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

I have put modò, so that	{ no }	Sim, I am.
modò to the Sub-jun-c-tive Mood, be-cause it al-ways go-verns a Sub-jun-c-tive Mood Englished modò, so that	{ Sis }	Sis, thou art.
	{ Sit }	Sit, hee is.
Pluraliter	{ no }	Simus, Wee are.
	{ Sitis }	Sitis, yee are.
	{ Sint }	Sint, they are.

Preterimperfect Tense.

modò, so that	{ no }	Essem, I were.
	{ Sis }	Esses, thou wert.
	{ Sit }	Esser, hee were.
Plur.	{ no }	Essemus, Wee were.
	{ Sitis }	Essetis, yee were.
	{ Sint }	Essent, they were.

Preterperfect Tense.

modò,	{ Sing. }	Fuerim, I have been.
so that	{ Sing. }	Fueris, thou hast been.
	{ Sing. }	Fuerit, he hath been.
Pluraliter	{ Sing. }	Fuerimus, Wee have been.
	{ Sing. }	Fueritis, yee have been.
	{ Sing. }	Fuerint, they have been.

Preterplu-

Of Verbs.

modò,	{ Sing. }	Preterpluperf. Tense. Fuissem, I had been.
so that	{ Sing. }	Fuisses, thou hadst been.
	{ Sing. }	Fuisset, he had been.
Pluraliter	{ Sing. }	Fuissemus, Wee had been:
	{ Sing. }	Fuissetis, yee had been.
	{ Sing. }	Fuissent, they had been.

Future Tense.

modò,	{ Sing. }	Fuero, I shall or will be.
so that	{ Sing. }	Fueris, thou shalt or will be.
	{ Sing. }	Fuerit, hee shall or will be.
Pluraliter	{ Sing. }	Fuerimus, Wee shall or will be.
	{ Sing. }	Fueritis, ye shall or will be.
	{ Sing. }	Fuerint, they shall or will be.

Infinitive Mood.

Present Tense. Esse, to bee:

Preterimperf. Tense.

Preterperfect Tense.

Preterpluperf. Tense.

Future Tense. Fore, or

Futurum esse, ter.

The Englisches of Sum, am, is, are, art, was, wast, were, wert, been.

To be, coming next after any of the Eng-Rule-lishes of Sum, or after any Substantive, or person, is a sign of the Participle in dus.

Observations.

1. The Compounds of Sum, absum, to be absent:

Of Verbs.

absent: adsum, to be present: desum, to bee
wanting: in sum, to be in: intersum, to bee
present: obsum, to hurt: prosum, to profit:
supersum, to remain, are declined like sum.

Euphonie
gratia.

2. Prosum, in those Tenses and Persons,
 which begin with a Vowel, for sound sake,
 interpose d: as, prodes, prodest, prode-
 ram, prodero, prodesse.

3. Possum, Compounded of potis, and sum,
 to be able, is thus declined;

Indicative Mood.

Present. 1. Possum, 2 potes, 3 potest. *Pl.*
 Tense. { 1 possumus, 2 potestis, 3 possunt.

Preter- { Poteram, poteras, poterat. *Pl.* po-
 imperf. { teramus, poteratis, poterant.

Pret. { potui, potuisti, potuit. *pl.* potuimus,
 perf. { potuistis, potuerunt, potuere.

Pret. { potueram, potueras, potuerat. *pl.* po-
 plu. { tueramus, potueratis, potuerant.

Fut. { potero, poteris, poterit. *pl.* poterimus,
 { poteritis, poterunt.

Possum wants the Imperative Mood.

Subjunctive Mood.

Pret. { Possim, possis, possit. *pl.* possimus, pos-
 tens. { sitis, possint.

Pret. { possem, posses, posset. *pl.* possemus,
 imp. { possetis, possent.

Pret. { potuerim, potueris, potuerit. *pl.* po-
 perf. { tuerimus, potueritis, potuerint.

Pret. { potuissim, potuisses, potuisset. *pl.*
 plu. { potuissimus, potuissetis, potuissent.

Fut. { potuere, potueris, potuerit. *Pl.* potue-
 rimus, potueritis, potuerint.

Infinitive Mood.

Posse, to be able.

Potuisse, to have or had been able.

Decli-

Of Verbs.

Declining of Verbs, with un-
 derstanding thus.

Active.

A Mo, the first person singular of the present
 tense.

Amas, the second person singular of the present
 tense.

Amavi, the first person singular of the preter-
 perfect tense.

Amare, the Infinitive Mood.

Amandi, the Gerund in di.

Amando, the Gerund in do.

Amanduni, the Gerund in dum.

Amatum, the first Supine.

Amatu, the latter Supine.

Amans, the Participle of the present tense.

Amaturus, the Participle of the Future in rus.

Passive.

Amor, the first person singular of the present
 tense.

Amaris, or amare, the second person sing. of
 the present tense.

Amatus sum, or amatus fui, the first person
 of the preterperf. tense.

Amari, the Infinitive Mood.

Amatus, the participle of the preterperfect
 tense.

Amandus, the participle of the Future in
 dus.

D 3

Verbs

Active Voice.

Verbs in [o] of the Four Conjugations.

1. Amo, amas, amavi, amare, amandi, amando, amandum, amatum, amatu, amans, amaturus, *to love.*
2. Doceo, doces, docui, docere, docendi, docendo, docendum, doctum, doctu, docens, docturus.
3. Lego, legis, legi, legere, legendi, legendo, legendum, lectum, lectu, legens, lecturus.
4. Audio, audis, audivi, audire, audiendi, audiendo, audiendum, auditum, auditu, audiens, auditurus.

Indicative Mood.

Conjug.

		Present Tense.
	1	A Mo, I love.
Sing.	2	Amas, thou lovest.
	3	Amat, he loveth.
Plur.	1	Amamus, Wee love.
	2	Amatis, yee love.
	3	Amant, they love.

Terminations.

1 Am|o, 2 as, 3 at. Plu. 1 amus, 2 atis, 3 ant.

Verbs.

Passive Voice.

Verbs in [or] of the Four Conjugations.

1. Amor, amaris, or amare, amatus sum, or amatus fui, amari, amatus, amandus.
2. Doceor, doceris, or docere, doctus sum, or doctus fui, doceri, doctus, docendus.
3. Legor, legeris, or legere, lectus sum, or lectus fui, legi, lectus, legendus.
4. Audior, audiris, or audire, auditus sum, or auditus fui, audiri, auditus, audiendus.

Indicative Mood.

		Present Tense.
	1	A Mor, I am loved.
Sing.	2	Amaris, or thou art loved.
	3	Amare,
	3	Amatur, he is loved.
Plur.	1	Amamus, Wee are loved.
	2	Amamini, yee are loved.
	3	Amantur, they are loved.

Terminations.

1 Am|or, 2 aris, are, 3 atur. Plur. 1 amur, 2 amini, 3 antur.

D. 4

Sing.

Active Voice.

	1	Doceo, I teach.
Sing.	2	Doces, thou teachest.
	3	Docet, he teacheth.
Plur.	1	Docemus, We teach.
	2	Docetis, yee teach.
	3	Docent, they teach.

Terminations.

1 Docleo, 2 es, 3 et. Pl. 1 emus, 2 etis, 3 ent.

	1	Legō, I read.
Sing.	2	Legis, thou readest.
	3	Legit, he readeth.
Plur.	1	Legimus, We read.
	2	Legitis, yee read.
	3	Legunt, they read.

Terminations.

Legō, is, it. Pl. imus, itis, unt.

	1	Audio, I hear.
Singulariter	2	Audis, thou hearest.
	3	Audit, he heareth.
Pluraliter	1	Audimus, Wee hear.
	2	Auditis, yee hear.
	3	Audiunt, they hear.

Terminations.

Audio, is, it. Pl. imus, itis, iunt.

Passive Voice.

	1	Doceor, I am taught.
Sing.	2	Doceris, or Docere,
	3	Docetur, hee is taught.
Plur.	1	Docemur, Wee are taught.
	2	Docemini, yee are taught.
	3	Docentur, they are taught.

Terminations.

1 Docleor, 2 eris, or ere, 3 etur. Pl. 1 emur, 2 emini, 3 entur.

	1	Legor, I am read.
Sing.	2	Legoris, or Legere,
	3	Legitur, hee is read.
Plur.	1	Legimur, Wee are read.
	2	Legimini, yee are read.
	3	Leguntur, they are read.

Terminations.

Legor, eris, or ere, etur. Pl. imur, imini, untur.

	1	Audior, I am heard.
Sing.	2	Audiris, or Audire,
	3	Auditur, he is heard.
Plur.	1	Audimur, Wee are heard.
	2	Audimini, yee are heard.
	3	Audiuntur, they are heard.

Terminations.

Audior, eris, or ire, itur. Pl. imur, imini, iuntur.

Active Voice.

Preterimperfect Tense.

2 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Amabam, I loved, or did love.
2 Amabas, thou lovedst or didst love.

Plur. { 1 Amabat, hee loved, or did love.
2 Amabamus, Wee loved, or did love.
3 Amabatis, yee loved, or did love.
3 Amabant, they loved, or did love.

Terminations.

Am abam, abas, abat. Pl. abamus, abatis, abant.

2 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Docebam, I taught, or did teach.
2 Docebas, thou taughtst or did teach.
3 Docebat, he taught or did teach.
Plur. { 1 Docebamus, We taught or did teach.
2 Docebatis, yee taught or did teach.
3 Docebant, they taught or did teach.

Terminations.

Doc ebam, ebas, ebat. Pl. ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

3 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Legebam, I read or did.
2 Legebas, thou read'st or did read.
3 Legebat, he read or did read.
Plur. { 1 Legebamus, We read or did read.
2 Legebatis, yee read or did read.
3 Legebant, they read or did read.

Terminations.

Leg ebam, ebas, ebat. Pl. ebamus, ebatis, ebant.

Sing.

Passive Voice.

Preterimperfect tense.

Sing. { 1 Amabar, I was loved.
2 Amabaris, or thou wast loved.

Plur. { 1 Amabare, Amahatur, hee was loved.
2 Amabamur, Wee were loved.
3 Amabamini, yee were loved.
3 Amabantur, they were loved.

Terminations.

Amabar, abaris, or abare, abatur. Pl. abamur, abamini, abantur.

2 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Docebar, I was taught.
2 Docebaris, or thou wast taught.
3 Docebare, Docebatur, hee was taught.
Plur. { 1 Docebamus, We were taught.
2 Docebamini, yee were taught.
3 Docebantur, they were taught.

Terminations.

Doc ebar, ebaris, or ebare, ebatur. Pl. ebamus, ebamini, ebantur.

3 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Legebar, I was read.
2 Legebaris, or thou wast read.
3 Legebare, Legebatur, hee was read.
Plur. { 1 Legebamus, Wee were read.
2 Legebamini, yee were read.
3 Legebantur, they were read.

Terminations.

Leg ebar, ebaris, or ebare, ebatur. Pl. ebamus, ebamini, ebantur.

Sing.

Active Voice.

Sing. { 1 Audiebam, I heard, or did hear.
 { 2 Audiebas, thou heard'st, or didst bear.
 { 3 Audiebat, hee heard or did hear.
Plur. { 1 Audiebamus, we heard or did hear.
 { 2 Audiebatis, yee heard or did hear.
 { 3 Audiebant, they heard or did hear.
Terminations.

Audiebam, iebas, iebat. Pl. iebamus, iebatis,
iebant.

Preterperfect tense.

Singulariter { 1 Amavi, I have loved.

{ 2 Amavisti, thou hast loved.
 { 3 Amavit, hee hath loved.

{ 1 Amavimus, Wee have loved.
 { 2 Amavistis, yee have loved.

Plur. { 1 Amaverunt, they have loved.
 { 3 Amavere,

Terminations:

Amavli, isti, it. Pl. imus, istis, érunt, ère.

a. Conjug. { 1 Docui, I have taught.

Sing. { 2 Docuisti, thou hast taught.
 { 3 Docuis, he hath taught.

Plur.

Passive Voice.

Sing. { 1 Audiebar, I was heard.
 { 2 Audiebaris, or Audiebare, thou wast heard.
 { 3 Audiebatur, hee was heard.

Plur. { 1 Audiebamur, wee were heard.
 { 2 Audiebamini, yee were heard.
 { 3 Audiebantur, they were heard.

Terminations.

Audiebar, iebaris, or iebare, iebatur. Pl. ic-
bamur, iebamini, iebantur.

Preterperfect Tense.

Singulariter { 1 Amatus sum, or fui, I have been lo- { 1 Conjug.
ved.

{ 2 Amatus es, or fuisti, thou hast been
loved.

{ 3 Amatus est, or fuit, hee hath been
loved.

Pluralliter { 1 Amati sumus, or fuimus, wee have
been loved.

{ 2 Amati estis, or fuistis, yee have been
loved.

{ 3 Amati sunt, or fuerunt, fuêre, they
have been loved.

Sing. { 1 Doctus sum, or fui, I have been taught.

{ 2 Doctus es, or fuisti, thou hast been
taught.

{ 3 Doctus est, or fuit, he hath been
taught.

Plur.

Active Voice.

Plur. { 1 Docuimus, *Wee have taught.*
 { 2 Docuistis, *yee have taught.*
 { 3 Docuérunt
 or
 Docuère,
 Terminations.

Docu|i,isti,it. Pl. imus, istis, érunt, ère.

3 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Legi, *I have read.*
 { 2 Legisti, *thou hast read.*
 { 3 Legit, *hee hath read.*
 { 1 Legimus, *Wee have read.*
Plur. { 2 Legistis, *yee have read.*
 { 3 Legérunt
 or
 Legère,
 Terminations.

Leg|i,isti,it. Pl. imus, istis, érunt, or ère.

4 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Audivi, *I have heard.*
 { 2 Audivisti, *thou hast heard.*
 { 3 Audivit, *hee hath heard.*
 { 1 Audivimus, *Wee have heard.*
Plur. { 2 Audivistis, *yee have heard.*
 { 3 Audivérunt
 or
 Audivère,
 Terminations.

Audiv|i,isti,it. Pl. imus, istis, érunt, ère:
 Preter-

Passive Voice:

Plur. { 1 Docti sumus, or fuimus, *Wee have been taught.*
 { 2 Docti estis or fuistis, *yee have been taught.*
 { 3 Docti sunt fuérunt or fuêre, *they have been taught.*

Sing. { 1 Lectus sum or fui, *I have been read.*
 { 2 Lectus es or fuisti, *thou hast been read.*
 { 3 Lectus est or fuit, *hee hath been read.*
Plur. { 1 Lecti sumus or fuimus, *wee have been read.*
 { 2 Lecti estis or fuistis, *yee have been read.*
 { 3 Lecti sunt fuérunt, or fuêre, *they have been read.*

Sing. { 1 Auditus sum or fui, *I have been heard.*
 { 2 Auditus es or fuisti, *thou hast been heard.*
 { 3 Auditus est or fuit, *hee hath been heard.*
Plur. { 1 Auditii sumus or fuimus, *Wee have been heard.*
 { 2 Auditii estis, or fuistis, *yee have been heard.*
 { 3 Auditii sunt fuérunt or fuêre, *they have been heard.*

Preter-

Active Voice.*Preterpluperfet Tense:*

2 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Amaveram, I had loved.
 { 2 Amaveras, thou hadst loved.
 { 3 Amaverat, hee had loved.
 1 Amaveramus, Wee had loved.

Plur. { 2 Amaveratis, yee had loved.
 { 3 Amaverant, they had loved.

Terminations.

Amav|eram,eras,erat. Pl.eramus,eratis,erant.

2 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Docueram, I had taught.
 { 2 Docueras, thou hadst taught.
 { 3 Docuerat, hee had taught.

 1 Docueramus, wee had taught.
 { 2 Docueratis, yee had taught.
 { 3 Docuerant, they had taught.

*Terminations.*Docu|eram, eras, erat. Pl.eramus, eratis, e-
rant.

3 Conjug.

Singulariter { 1 Legeram, I had read.
 { 2 Legeras, thou hadst read.
 { 3 Legerat, he hath k.eard.

Plur.**Passive Voice.***Preterpluperfet Tense.*

1 Conjug.

Singulariter { 1 Anatus erā, or fuerā, I had been loved.
 { 2 Anatus eras, or fueras, thou hadst been
 loved.
 { 3 Anatus erat, or fuerat, he had been
 loved.
 1 Amati eramus, or fueramus, wee
 had been loved.
 2 Amati eratis, or fueratis, ye had
 been loved.
 3 Amati erant, or fuerant, they had
 been loved.

Singulariter { 1 Doctus eram, or fueram, I had been 2 Conjug.
 taught.
 { 2 Doctus eras, or fueras, thou hadst been
 taught.
 { 3 Doctus erat, or fuerat, he had been
 taught.

 1 Docti eramus, or fueramus, wee had
 been taught.
 2 Docti eratis, or fueratis, yee had been
 taught.
 3 Docti erant, or fuerant, they had been
 taught.

Singulariter { 1 Lectus eram, or fueram, I had been 3 Conjug.
 read.
 { 2 Lectus eras, or fueras, thou hadst been
 read.
 { 3 Lectus erat, or fuerat, hee had been
 read.

Plur.

Active Voice.

Plur. { 1 Legeramus, Wee had read.
 { 2 Legeratis, yee had read.
 { 3 Legerant, they had read.

Terminations.

Leg'eram,eras,erat. Pl. eramus,eratis,erant.

4 Conjug.

Singulariter { 1 Audiveram, I had heard.
 { 2 Audiveras, thou hadst heard.
 { 3 Audiverat, bee had heard.

 Pluraliter { 1 Audiveramus, Wee had heard,
 { 2 Audiveratis, yee had heard.
 { 3 Audiverant, they had heard.

Terminations.

Audiv'eram,eras,erat. Pl. eramus, eratis, e-
rant.

Future Tense.

1 Conjug.

Singulariter { 1 Amabo, I shall or will love.
 { 2 Amabis, thou shalt or will love.
 { 3 Amabit, he shall or will love.

 Plur. { 1 Amabimus, Wee shall or will love.
 { 2 Amabitis, yee shall or will love.
 { 3 Amabunt, they shall or will love.

Terminations.

Am|abo,abis,abit. Pl. abimus,abitis,abunt.
Sing.

Passive Voice.

Plurilater { 1 Lecti eramus or lecti fueramus, Wee
had been read.
 { 2 Lecti eratis, or lecti fueratis, yee
had been read.
 { 3 Lecti erant, or lecti fuerant, they had
been read.

4 Conjug.

Singulariter { 1 Auditus eram, or fueram, I had been heard.
 { 2 Auditus eras, or fueras, thou hadst been heard.
 { 3 Auditus erat, or fuerat, bee had been heard.

 Pluraliter { 1 Auditii eramus, or fueramus, we had
been heard.
 { 2 Auditii eratis, or fueratis, ye had been heard.
 { 3 Auditii erant, or fuerant, they had been heard.

Future Tense.

1 Conjug.

Singulariter { 1 Amabor, I shall or will be loved.
 { 2 Amabaris, or Amabare, thou shalt or will be loved.
 { 3 Amabitur, he shall or will be loved.

 Plur. { 1 Amabimur, Wee shall or will be loved.
 { 2 Amabimini, yee shall or will be loved.
 { 3 Amabuntur, they shall or will be loved.

Terminations.

Am|abor,ab̄ris,ab̄ere,abitur. Pl. ab̄imur
ab̄imiini,abuntur. Sing.

2 Conjug.

Active Voice.

Sing. { 1 } Docebo, *I shall or will teach.*
 { 2 } Docebis, *thou shalt or will teach.*
 { 3 } Docebit, *he shall or will teach.*
 Plur. { 1 } Docebimus, *we shall or will teach.*
 { 2 } Docebitis, *yee shall or will teach.*
 { 3 } Docebunt, *they shall or wil teach.*
Terminations.
Doc|ebo, ebis, ebit. Pl. **ebimus, ebitis, ebunt.**

3 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 } Legam, *I shall or will read.*
 { 2 } Leges, *thou shalt or wil read.*
 { 3 } Leget, *he shal or wil read.*
 Plur. { 1 } Legemus, *we shal or wil read.*
 { 2 } Legetis, *yee shal or wil read.*
 { 3 } Legent, *they shal or wil read.*
Terminations.
Leg|am, es, et. Pl. **emus, etis, ent.**

4 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 } Audiam, *I shal or wil hear.*
 { 2 } Audies, *thou shalt or wil hear.*
 { 3 } Audiet, *he shal or wil hear.*
 Plur. { 1 } Audiemus, *we shal or wil hear.*
 { 2 } Audietis, *yee shal or wil hear.*
 { 3 } Audient, *they shal or wil hear.*
Terminations.
Aud|iam, ies, iet. Pl. **iemus, ietis, ient.**

Impera-

Passive Voice.

2 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 } Docebor, *I shall or will be taught.*
 { 2 } Doceberis, } or { thou shalt or will bee
 { 3 } Docebere, } taught.
 Plur. { 1 } Docebatur, *he shall or will be taught.*
 { 2 } Docebimur, *we shall or will be taught.*
 { 3 } Docebuntur, *they shal or wil be taught.*
Terminations.
Doclebor, eberis, or ebere, ebitur. Pl. **ebimur, ebimini, ebuntur.**

3 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 } Legar, *I shall or will be read.*
 { 2 } Legéris, or { thou shalt or will
 { 3 } Legère, } be read.
 Plur. { 1 } Legémur, *we shall or will be read.*
 { 2 } Legémini, *yee shall or wil be read.*
 { 3 } Legentur, *they shall or will be read.*
Terminations.
Leg|ar, éris, or êre, etur. Pl. **émur, émini, entur,**

4 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 } Audiar, *I shall or will be heard.*
 { 2 } Audiéris, or { thou shalt or will
 { 3 } Audiére, } be heard.
 Plur. { 1 } Auditetur, *he shall or will be heard.*
 { 2 } Audiemur, *we shall or will be heard.*
 { 3 } Audiemini, *yee shall or will be heard.*
 { 3 } Audientur, *they shall or wil be heard.*
Terminations.
Aud|iar, iéris, or iêre, ietur. Pl. **iemur, iemi-ni, ientur.**

Impe-

Passive Voice.**Imperative Mood.***Present Tense.*

2 Conjug.

Singulariter	2	Ama, or Amato,	love thou.
	3	Amet, or Amato,	let him love.
	1	Amemus, Amate, or Amatote, Ament,	let us love.
Pluraliter	2	Amemus, Amate, or Amatote, Ament,	love yee.
	3	Amanto,	let them love.

Terminations.

2 Am*a*, ato, 3 et, ato. Pl. 1 emus, 2 ate,
atote, 3 ent, anto.

2 Conjug.

Singulariter	2	Doce, or Doceto,	teach thou.
	3	Doceat, or Doceto,	let him teach.
	1	Doceamus, Docete, or Docetote,	let us teach.
Pluraliter	2	Doceamus, Docete, or Docetote,	teach ye.
	3	Doceant, or Docento,	let them teach.

Terminations.

2 Doc*e*, eto, 3 eat, eto. Pl. 1 eamus, 2 etc,
etote, 3 eant, ento.

Sing.

Active Voice.**Imperative Mood.***Present Tense.*

2 Conjug.

Sing.	2	Amare, or Amator,	bee thou loved.
	3	Ametur, or Amator,	let him be loved.
	1	Amemur, Amamini, or Amaminor,	let us be loved.
Pluraliter	2	Amentur, or Amanitur,	be yee loved.
	3		let them be loved.

Terminations.

2 Am*are*, ator, 3 etor, ator. Pl. 1 emur,
2 amini, aminor, 3 entur, antor.

2 Conjug.

Sing.	2	Docere, or Docetor,	be thou taught.
	3	Doceatur, or Docetor,	let him be taught.
	1	Doceamur, Docemini, or Doceminor,	let us be taught.
Pluraliter	2	Doceantur, or Docentur,	be ye taught.
	3		let them be taught.

Terminations.

2 Doc*ere*, etor, 3 eatur, etor, Pl. 1 eamur,
2 emini, eminor, 3 eantur, entor.

Sing.

Active Voice.

Sing.	<i>2</i>	<i>Lege,</i> or <i>Legito,</i>	<i>read thou.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Legat,</i> or <i>Legito,</i>	<i>let him read.</i>
Plur.	<i>1</i>	<i>Legamus,</i> let us read.	
	<i>2</i>	<i>Legite,</i> or <i>Legitote,</i>	<i>readye.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Legant,</i> or <i>Legunto,</i>	<i>let them read.</i>

Terminations.

2 Leg|e, ito, 3 at, ito. Pl. 1 amus, 2 ite, ito-te, 3 ant, unto.

Singulariter	<i>2</i>	<i>Audi,</i> or <i>Audito,</i>	<i>hear thou.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Audiat,</i> or <i>Audito,</i>	<i>let him hear.</i>
Plur.	<i>1</i>	<i>Audiamus,</i> let us hear.	
	<i>2</i>	<i>Audite,</i> or <i>Auditote,</i>	<i>hear yee.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Audiant,</i> or <i>Audiunto,</i>	<i>hear they, or let them hear.</i>

2 Aud|i, ito, 3 iat, ito. Pl. 1 iamus, 2 ite, itote. 3 iant, iunto.

Subjunctive**Passive Voice.**

Sing.	<i>2</i>	<i>Legere,</i> or <i>Legitor,</i>	<i>be thou read.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Legatur,</i> or <i>Legitor,</i>	<i>let him be read.</i>
Plur.	<i>1</i>	<i>Legamur,</i> let us be read.	
	<i>2</i>	<i>Legimini,</i> or <i>Legiminor,</i>	<i>be ye read.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Legantur,</i> or <i>Leguntor,</i>	<i>let them be read.</i>

Terminations.

2 Leg|ere, or itor, 3 atur, itor. Pl. 1 amur, 2 imini, iminor, 3 antur, untor.

Singulariter	<i>2</i>	<i>Audire,</i> or <i>Auditor,</i>	<i>be thou heard.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Audiatur,</i> or <i>Auditor,</i>	<i>let him be heard.</i>
Plur.	<i>1</i>	<i>Audiamur,</i> let us be heard.	
	<i>2</i>	<i>Audimini,</i> or <i>Audiminor,</i>	<i>be yee heard.</i>
	<i>3</i>	<i>Audiantur,</i> or <i>Audiuntor,</i>	<i>let them be heard.</i>

Terminations.

2 Aud|ire, itor, 3 iatur, itor. Pl. 1 iamur, 2 imini, iminor, 3 iantur, iunctor.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Modò, so that,

1 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Amem, I love.
2 Ames, thou lovest.
3 Amet, he loveth.

Plur. { 1 Amemus, wee love.
2 Ametis, yee love.
3 Ament, they love.

Terminations.

1 Am|em, 2 es, 3 et. Pl. 1 emus, 2 etis,
3 ent.

Modò, so that,

2 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Doceam, I teach.
2 Doceas, thou teachest.
3 Doceat, he teacheth.

Plur. { 1 Doceamus, we teach.
2 Doceatis, yee teach.
3 Doceant, they teach.

Terminations.

Doc|eam, eas, eat, Pl. eamus, eatis, eant.

Modò, so that,

3 Conjug.

Sing. { 1 Legam, I read.
2 Legas, thou readest.
3 Legat, he readeth.

Plur.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Modò, so that,

{ 1 Amer, I am loved.
2 Ameris, or
3 Amere,

Sing. { 2 } { Ameris, or
3 Amere, } thou art loved.

3 Ametur, he is loved.

Plur. { 1 Amemur, we are loved.
2 Amemini, yee are loved.

3 Amentur, they are loved.

Terminations.

Am|er, eris, or ere, etur. Pl. emur, emini, entur

Modò, so that,

{ 1 Docear, I am taught.
2 Docearis, or

Sing. { 2 } { Docearis, or
3 Doceare, } thou art taught.

3 Doceatur, he is taught.

Plur. { 1 Doceamur, we are taught.
2 Doceamini, yee are taught.

3 Doceantur, they are taught.

Terminations.

Doc|ear, earis, or eare, eatur. Pl. eamur, ea-
mini, eantur.

Modò, so that,

{ 1 Legar, I am read.
2 Legaris, or

Singularter { 2 } { Legaris, or
3 Legare, } thou art read.

3 Legatur, he is read.

2 Conjug.

3 Conjug.

Active Voice.

Plur. { 1 } Legamus, wee read.
 { 2 } Legatis, yee read.
 { 3 } Legant, they read.

Terminations.

Leglam, as, at. Pl. amus, atis, ant.

Modò, so that,
4 Conjug.

Singulariter { 1 } Audiam, I hear.
 { 2 } Audias, thou hearest.
 { 3 } Audiat, he heareth.
 Plur. { 1 } Audiamus, wee hear.
 { 2 } Audiatis, yee hear.
 { 3 } Audiant, they hear.

Terminations.

Audjiam, ias, iat. Plu. iamus, iatis, iant.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Modò, so that,

1 Conjug. { 1 } Amarem, I loved or did love.
 { 2 } Amares, thou lovest or did love.
 { 3 } Amaret, hee loved or did love.
 Plur. { 1 } Amaremus, wee loved or did love.
 { 2 } Amaretis, yee loved or did love.
 { 3 } Amarent, they loved or did love.

Terminations.

Amjarem, ares, aret. Pl. aremus, aretis, arent.

Modò, so that,

2 Conjug. { 1 } Docerem, I taught, or did teach.
 Sing. { 2 } Doceres, thou taughtst, or did teach.
 { 3 } Doceret, hee taught, or did teach.

Passive Voice.

Plur. { 1 } Legamur, wee are read.
 { 2 } Legamini, yee are read.
 { 3 } Legantur, they are read.

Terminations.

Leglar, aris, or are, atur. Pl. amur, amini, antur.

Modò, so that,

Sing. { 1 } Audiar, I am heard.
 { 2 } Audiaris, or Audiare,
 { 3 } Audiatur, hee is heard.
 Plur. { 1 } Audiamur, wee are heard.
 { 2 } Audiamini, yee are heard.
 { 3 } Audiantur, they are heard.

Terminations.

Audjar, jaris, or jare, jatur. Plu. iamur, iami-ni, iantur.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Modò, so that,

Sing. { 1 } Amarer, I was loved.
 { 2 } Amareris, or Amarere,
 { 3 } Amaretur, hee was loved.
 Plur. { 1 } Amaremur, wee were loved.
 { 2 } Amaremini, yee were loved.
 { 3 } Amarentur, they were loved.

Terminations.

Amjarer, areris, or arere, aretur. Pl. aremur, aremini, arentur.

Modò, so that,

Sing. { 1 } Docerer, I was taught.
 { 2 } Docereris, or Docerere,
 { 3 } Doceretur, hee was taught. Plur.

4 Conjug.

* Conjug.

2 Conjug.

Active Voice.

Plur. { 1 } Doceremus, we taught, or did teach.
 { 2 } Doceretis, yee taught, or did teach.
 { 3 } Docerent, they taught, or did teach.
Terminations.

Docjerem, eres, eret. *Pl.* eremus, eretis, erent.

2 Conjug.

Modò, so that,
 { 1 } Legerem, I read or did read.

{ 2 } Legeres, thou readst, or did read.
 { 3 } Legeret, he read, or did read.

Plur. { 1 } Legeremus, we read, or did read.
 { 2 } Legeretis, yee read, or did read.
 { 3 } Legerent, they read, or did read.
Terminations.

Legjerem, eres, eret. *Pl.* eremus, eretis, erent.

4 Conjug.

Modò, so that,
 { 1 } Audirem, I heard, or did hear.

Sing. { 2 } Audires, thou heard'st or did hear.
 { 3 } Audiret, he heard, or did hear.

Plur. { 1 } Audiremus, we heard, or did hear.
 { 2 } Audiretis, ye heard, or did hear.
 { 3 } Audirent, they heard, or did hear.
Terminations.

Audjirem, ires, iret. *Pl.* iremus, iretis, irent.

Preter-

Passive Voice.

Plur. { 1 } Doceremur, we were taught.
 { 2 } Doceremini, yee were taught.
 { 3 } Docerentur, they were taught.
Terminations.

Docjerer, ereris, or erere, eretur. *Pl.* eremur, eremini, erentur.

3 Conjug.

Modò, so that,
 { 1 } Legerer, I was read.
 { 2 } Legereris, } or
 { thou wast read.
 { 3 } Legerere, }

Plur. { 1 } Legeremur, we were read.
 { 2 } Legeremini, yee were read.
 { 3 } Legerentur, they were read.
Terminations.

Legjerer, ereris, or erere, eretur. *Pl.* eremur, eremini, erentur.

4 Conjug.

Modò, so that,
 { 1 } Audirer, I was heard.
 { 2 } Audireris, } or
 { thou wast heard.
 { 3 } Audirere, }

Plur. { 1 } Audiremur, we were heard.
 { 2 } Audiremini, yee were heard.
 { 3 } Audirentur, they were heard.
Terminations:

Audjirer, ireris, or irere, iretur. *Pl.* iremur, iremuni, irentur.

E 4

Preter-

Active Voice.*Preterperfect Tense.*

1 Conjug. Modò, so that,

{ 1 } Amaverim, I have loved.

Sing. { 2 } Amaveris, thou hast loved.

{ 3 } Amaverit, hee hath loved.

{ 1 } Amaverimus, we have loved.

Pluraliter { 2 } Amaveritis, yee have loved.

{ 3 } Amaverint, they have loved.

Terminations.

Amaverim, eris, erit. Pl. erimus, eritis, erint.

2 Conjug. Modò, so that,

{ 1 } Docuerim, I have taught.

Sing. { 2 } Docueris, thou hast taught.

{ 3 } Docuerit, hee hath taught.

{ 1 } Docuerimus, wee have taught.

Pluraliter { 2 } Docueritis, yee have taught.

{ 3 } Docuererint, they have taught.

Terminations.

Docuerim, eris, erit. Pl. erimus, eritis, erint

3 Conjug. Modò, so that,

{ 1 } Legerim, I have read.

Sing. { 2 } Legeris, thou hast read.

{ 3 } Legerit, hee hath read.

Plur.

Passive Voice.*Preterperfect tense.*

Modò, so that,

{ 1 } Amatus sim, or fuerim, I have been 1 Conjug. loved.

{ 2 } Amatus sis, or fueris, thou hast been loved.

{ 3 } Amatus sit, or fuerit, hee hath been loved.

Plur. { 1 } Amati simus, or fuerimus, we have been loved.

{ 2 } Amati sitis, or fueritis, yee have been loved.

{ 3 } Amati fint, or fuerint, they have been loved.

Modò, so that,

{ 1 } Doctus sim, or fuerim, I have been 2 Conjug. taught.

{ 2 } Doctus sis, or fueris, thou hast been taught.

{ 3 } Doctus sit, or fuerit, he hath been taught.

{ 1 } Docti simus, or fuerimus, we have been taught.

{ 2 } Docti sitis, or fueritis, yee have been taught.

{ 3 } Docti fint, or fuerint, they have been taught.

Modò, so that,

{ 1 } Lectus sim, or fuerim, I have been 3 Conjug. read.

{ 2 } Lectus sis, or fueris, thou hast been read.

{ 3 } Lectus sit, or fuerit, hee hath been read.

E 5

Plur.

Active Voice.

Pluraliter

- 1 Legerimus, we have read.
- 2 Legeritis, yee have read.
- 3 Legerint, they have read.
Terminations.

Legjerim, eris, erit. *Pl.* erimus, eritis, erint.

Modò, so that,

4 Conjug.

- 1 Audiverim, I have heard,
- Sing. 2 Audiveris, thou hast heard.
- 3 Audiverit, he hath heard.

Pluraliter

- 1 Audiverimus, we have heard.
- 2 Audiveritis, yee have heard.
- 3 Audiverint, they have heard.
Terminations.

Audiverim, eris, erit. *Pl.* erimus, eritis, erint.

Modò, so that,

Preterpluperfet Tense.

- 1 Amavissem, I had loved.
- Sing. 2 Amavisses, thou hadst loved.
- 3 Amavisset, he had loved.

Plur.

- 1 Amavissemus, we had loved.
- 2 Amavissetis, yee had loved.
- 3 Amavissent, they had loved.
Terminations.

Amavissem, isses, isset. *Plur.* issenus, issentis, issent.

Sing.

Passive Voice.

Plur.

- 1 Lecti simus, or fuerimus, we have been read.
- 2 Lecti sitis, or fueritis, ye have been read.
- 3 Lecti sint, or fuerint, they have been read.

Modò, so that,

4 Conjug.

Singulariter

- 1 Auditus sim, or fuerim, I have been heard.
- 2 Auditus sis, or fueris, thou hast been heard.
- 3 Auditus sit, or fuerit, he hath been heard.

Plur.

- 1 Auditi simus, or fuerimus, we have been heard.
- 2 Auditi sitis, or fueritis, yee have been heard.
- 3 Auditi sint, or fuerint, they have been heard.

Preterpluperfet Tense.

Modò, so that,

Preterpluperfet Tense.

Singulariter

- 1 Amatus essem, or suissem, I had been loved.
- 2 Amatus esses, or suisses, thou hadst been loved.
- 3 Amatus esset, or suisset, he had been loved.

Pluraliter

- 1 Amati essemus, or suissemus, we had been loved.
- 2 Amati essetis, or suissetis, yee had been loved.
- 3 Amati essent, or suissent, they had been loved.
Sing.

Active Voice.

Modò, so that,

2 Conjug. { 1 Docuissem, I had taught.
Sing. { 2 Docuisses, thou hadst taught.

{ 3 Docuisset, bee had taught.
Plur. { 1 Docuissemus, wee had taught.
2 Docuissetis, yee had taught.
3 Docuissent, they had taught.

Terminations.
Docuissem, isses, isset. Pl. issemus, issetis,
issen.

Modò, so that,

3 Conjug. { 1 Legissem, I had read.
Sing. { 2 Legisses, thou hadst read.

{ 3 Legisset, bee had read.
Plur. { 1 Legissemus, wee had read.
2 Legissetis, yee had read.
3 Legissent, they had read.

Terminations.
Legissem, isses, isset. Pl. issemus, issetis,
issen.

Modò, so that,

4 Conjug. { 1 Audivissem, I had heard.
Sing. { 2 Audivisses, thou hadst heard.
3 Audivisset, he had heard.

Plur.

Passive Voice.

Modò, so that,

Singulariter { 1 Doctus essem, or fuisset, I had been **2 Conjug.**
taught.
2 Doctus esses, or fuisses, thou hadst been
taught.
3 Doctus esset, or fuisset, bee had been
taught.
Pluraliter { 1 Docti essemus, or fuissetis, we had
been taught.
2 Docti essetis, or fuissetis, yee had
been taught.
3 Docti essent, or fuissent, they had been
taught.

Modò, so that,

Singulariter { 1 Lectus essem, or fuisset, I had been **3 Conjug.**
read.
2 Lectus esses, or fuisses, thou hadst been
read.
3 Lectus esset, or fuisset, bee had been
read.
Pluraliter { 1 Lecti essemus, or fuissetis, we had
been read.
2 Lecti essetis, or fuissetis, yee had been
read.
3 Lecti essent, or fuissent, they had
been read.

Modò, so that,

Sing. { 1 Auditus essem, or fuisset, I had been **4 Conjug.**
heard.
2 Auditus esses, or fuisses, thou hadst
been heard.
3 Auditus esset, or fuisset, bee had been
heard.

Plur.

Active Voice.

Plur. { 1 } Audivissemus, we had heard.
 { 2 } Audivissetis, yee had heard.
 { 3 } Audivissent, they had heard.
 Terminations.

Audivissem, issem, isset. *Pl.* issemus, issetis,
 issent.

Future Tense.

Modò, so that,
 1 Amavero, I shall or will love.
Sing. { 2 Amaveris, thou shalt or will love.
 { 3 Amaverit, he shall or will love.
Plur. { 1 Amaverimus, we shall or will love.
 { 2 Amaveritis, ye shall or will love.
 { 3 Amaverint, they shall or will love.
 Terminations.

Amavero, eris, erit. *Pl.* erimus, eritis, erint.

Modò, so that,
 1 Docuero, I shall or will teach.
Sing. { 2 Docueris, thou shalt or will teach.
 { 3 Docuerit, he shall or will teach.
Plur. { 1 Docuerimus, we shall or will teach.
 { 2 Docueritis, yee shall or will teach.
 { 3 Docuerint, they shall or will teach.

Sing.

Passive Voice.

Plur. { 1 Auditi essemus, or suissemus, wee
 had been heard.
 { 2 Auditi essetis, or suissetis, ye had
 been heard.
 { 3 Auditi essent, or suissent, they had
 been heard.

Future Tense.

Modò, so that,
 1 Amatus ero, or fuero, I shall or will *1 Conj.*
 be loved.
Singulariter { 2 Amatus eris, or fueris, thou shalt or
 will be loved.
 { 3 Amatus erit, or fuerit, he shall or
 will be loved.
Pluraliter { 1 Amati erimus, or fuerimus, we shall
 or will be loved.
 { 2 Amati eritis, or fueritis, yee shall or
 will be loved.
 { 3 Amati erint, or fuerint, they shall or
 will be loved.

Modò, so that,

Singulariter { 1 Doctus ero, or doctus fuero, I shall or *2 Conj.*
 will be taught.
 { 2 Doctus eris, or doctus fueris, thou
 shalt or will be taught.
 { 3 Doctus erit, or doctus fuerit, he shall
 or will be taught.
Pluraliter { 1 Docti erimus, or docti fuerimus, wee
 shall or will be taught.
 { 2 Docti eritis, or docti fueritis, ye shall
 or will be taught.
 { 3 Docti erint, or docti fuerint, they shall
 or will be taught.

Sing.

Active Voice.

3 Conjug.

Modò, so that,
 Singulariter { 1 } Legero, I shall or will read.
 { 2 } Legeris, thou shalt or will read.
 { 3 } Legerit, hee shall or will read.
 Plur. { 1 } Legerimus, wee shall or will read.
 { 2 } Legeritis, yee shall or will read.
 { 3 } Legerint, they shall or will reaad.

Terminations.

Legero, eris, erit. Pl. erimus, eritis, erint.

4 Conjug.

Modò, so that,
 Singulariter { 1 } Audivero, I shall or will hear.
 { 2 } Audiveris, thou shalt or will hear.
 { 3 } Audiverit, he shall or will hear.
 Plur. { 1 } Audiverimus, we shall or will hear.
 { 2 } Audiveritis, yee shall or will hear.
 { 3 } Audiverint, they shall or will hear.

Infinitive**Passive Voice.**

Modò, so that,
 Singulariter { 1 } Lectus ero, or lectus fuero, I shall 3 Conjug,
 or will be read.
 { 2 } Lectus eris, or lectus fueris, thou
 shalt or will be read.
 { 3 } Lectus erit, or lectus fuerit, hee shall
 or will be read.
 Pluraliter { 1 } Lecti erimus, or lecti fuerimus, wee
 shall or will be read.
 { 2 } Lecti eritis, or fueritis, yee shall or
 will be read.
 { 3 } Lecti erint, or fuerint, they shall or
 will be read.

Modò, so that,
 Singulariter { 1 } Auditus ero, or fuero, I shall or will 4 Conjug,
 be heard.
 { 2 } Auditus eris, or fueris, thou shalt or
 will be heard.
 { 3 } Auditus erit, or fuerit, he shall or will
 be heard.
 Pluraliter { 1 } Auditii erimus, or fuerimus, we shall
 or will hear.
 { 2 } Auditii eritis, or fueritis, yee shall or
 will hear.
 { 3 } Auditii erunt, or fuerint, they shall
 or will hear.

Infinitive

Active Voice.**Infinitive Mood.***Present Tense.*

*1 Amare, to love.
2 Docere, to teach.
3 Legere, to read.
4 Audire, to hear.*

Terminations.

*1 Am | are. 2 Doc | ēre. 3 Leg | ēre,
4 Aud | ire.*

*Preterimperfect Tense.**Preterperfect Tense.**Preterpluperfect Tense.*

*1 Amavisse, to have or had loved.
2 Docuisse, to have or had taught.
3 Legisse, to have or had read.
4 Audituisse, to have or had heard.*

*Termination isse.***Future****Passive Voice.****Infinitive Mood.***Present Tense.*

*1 Amari, to be loved.
2 Doceri, to be taught.
3 Legi, to be read.
4 Audiri, to be heard.*

Terminations.

*1 Am | ari. 2 Doc | ēri. 3 Leg | i.
4 Aud | iri.*

*Preterimperfect Tense.**Preterperfect Tense.**Preterpluperfect Tense.*

Sing. { 1 Amatum
2 Doctum
3 Lectum
4 Auditum } isse, or fū
to have or had
been loved.

Plur. { 1 Amatos
2 Doctos
3 Lectos
4 Auditos } effe, or fu-
isse, or fū
to have or had
been loved. *Se adeptos,
themselves
to have
obtained.*

Future

Active Voice.**Future Tense.**

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Amaturum esse, to love hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Docturum esse, to teach hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Lecturum esse, to read hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Auditurum esse, to hear hereafter.

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Amatu^ros, to love hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Doctu^ros, to teach hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Lectu^ros, to read hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Auditu^ros, to hear hereafter.

Participles.

A Participle of the Pre. Tense. Amans, loving.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Docens, teaching. \\ Legens, reading. \\ Audiens, hearing. \end{array} \right\}$

A Participle of the Future in -rus.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Amaturus, to love, or about to love. \\ Docturus, to teach, or about to teach. \\ Lecturus, to read, or about to read. \\ Auditurus, to hear, or about to hear. \end{array} \right\}$

Gerunds**Passive Voice.****Future Tense.**

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Amaturum iri,
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} or \\ Amandum esse, \\ Doctum iri, \end{array} \right\}$ to be loved hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Docendum esse,
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} or \\ Lectum iri, \end{array} \right\}$ to be taught hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 3 \\ 4 \end{array} \right\}$ Legendum esse,
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} or \\ Auditum iri, \end{array} \right\}$ to be read hereafter.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 4 \\ or \\ Audiendum esse, \end{array} \right\}$ to be heard hereafter.

Participles.

A Participle of the Preter Tense. Amatus, loved.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Doctus, taught. \\ Lectus, read. \\ Auditus, heard. \end{array} \right\}$

A Participle of the Future in -dus. Amandus, to be loved.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} Docendus, to be taught. \\ Legendus, to be read. \\ Audiendus, to be heard. \end{array} \right\}$

Gerunds

Of Verbs.

Gerunds.

Amandi, of loving : amando, in loving : amandum, to love. Docendi, of teaching : docendo, in teaching : docendum, to teach. Legendi, of reading : legendo, in reading : legendum, to read. Audiendi, of hearing : audiendo, in hearing : audiendum, to hear.

Volo, I will, or am willing : nolo, I will, or am unwilling : malo, I am more rather, or I am more willing : fero, to bear or suffer : edo, to eat : are of the Third Conjugation, declined like lego : having that they vary in some Tenses as followmeth.

Present Tense singular.

Volo, vis, vult. Pl. volumus, vultis, volunt.

Nolo, nonvis, nonvult. Pl. Nolumus, nonvultis, nolunt.

Malo, mavis, mavult. Pl. malumus, mavultis, malunt.

Fero, fers, fert. Pl. ferimus, fertis, ferunt.

Edo, edis, or es, edit, or est. Pl. Edimus, editis, or estis, edunt.

Imperative Mood singular.

Volo wants 2 Ede, edito, or es, esto. 3 Edat, edito, or esto. Pl. 1 Edamus. 2 Edite, editore, este, estore. 3 Edant, edunto.
Fer, fert. Ferat, fert. Pl. Feramus, ferte, fertore. Ferant, ferunto.

Subjunctive Mood Present Tense.

Gerunds, Velim, velis, velit. Pl. Velimus, velitis, velint. and the Nolim, nolis, nolit, pl. nolimus, nolitis, nolint. Participle Malim, malis, malit. Pl. Malimus, malitis, malint.

Preter-

Of Verbs.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Vellem, velles, veller. Pl. Vellemus, velleatis, vellent.

Nolle, nolles, nollet. Pl. Nollemus, nolletis, nollent.

Malle, malles, mallet. Pl. Mallemus, malleatis, mallen.

Ferrem, ferres, ferret. Pl. Ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.

Ederem, or essem. Ederes, esses. Ederet, esset. Pl. Ederemus, essemus. Ederetis, essetis. Ederent, essent.

Infinitive Mood Pres. Tense.

Velle, nolle. Malle, ferre. Edere, or esse.

Eo, I go, and queo, to may or can : also, to be able, with the Compounds nequeo and pereo, are of the fourth Conjugation, differing from audio.

1. Because they make the third person plural of the Present Tense Indicative, eunt, queunt, nequeunt.

2. They make the Preterimperfect Tense ibam : as,

Ibam, ibas, ibat. Pl. ibamus, ibatis, ibant.

Quibam, quibas, quibat. Pl. Quibamus, quibatis, quibant. Sin. Nequibā, nequibas, nequibat. Pl. Nequibamus, nequibatis, nequibant.

3. They make the future Tense.

Sing. Ibo, ibis, ibit. Pl. Ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Quibo, quibis, quibit. Pl. Quibimus, quibitis, quibunt. Nequibo, nequibis, nequibit. Pl. Nequibimus, nequibitis, nequibunt.

Sometimes eo hath the Future Tense, eam, ies, iet : as, ineam, inies, iniet. Præteream, præteries, præteriet. Transeā, Transies, transiet, although the futures inibo, præteribo, transibo, are more usual.

4. In

Of Verbs.

4. In the Present Tense Subjunct. eam, eas,
eat. Pl. eamus, eatis, eant.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Irem, Ires, iret. Pl. iremus, iretis, irent.

Ambio, varieth nothing in Mood and
Tense from audio.

Let your
scholar
learn these
perfectly.

Cognate Tenses, or Tenses agreeable, or very like
in the Active voice.

		Pret.	Pret. im.	Fut.	Pret.	Pret.	Pret.	Pret.	Pret.	Pret.
1	am	abam,	abo	a, ato	em	arem	are	ere	ere	Pret.
2	doc	ebam	ebō	e, ero	eam	ērem	ērem	ēre	ēre	im.
3	leg	ebam	am	e, ito	am	ērem	ērem	ēre	ēre	im.
4	aud	iebam	iam	i, ito	iam	irem	irem	ire	ire	im.

Indic. Mood.

Imper. Mood. Subjunc. Mood. Infinit. Mood.

These Tenses are formed from the Present Tense Indicative.

The

Of verbs:

The Cognate or agreeable Tenses, formed from the Preterperfect Tense Indicative.

		Pret.	Pret.	Pret.	Pret.	Fut.	Pret.	Pret.
1	amav	amav	amav	amav	amav	ero	ero	ero
2	docu	docu	docu	docu	docu	ero	ero	ero
3	leg	leg	leg	leg	leg	ero	ero	ero
4	audiv	audiv	audiv	audiv	audiv	ero	ero	ero

Indic. Mood.

Subjunc. Mood. Infinit. Mood.

Indic. Mood.

Cognate

Of Verbs:

Cognate Tenses, or Tenses very like in the Passive Voice, formed from the Present Tense.

	Preter-tense or	Preter-Tense.		Preter-Tense.		Preter-Tense.		Preter-Tense.	
		Preter-imp. abar	Fut. abor	are or ator	er	ar	er	ari	eri
1 am.	or	ebar	ebar	ére or étor	er	ar	érer	eri	eri
2 doc.	or	ebar	ar	ére, or itor	ar	ar	érer	i	i
3 leg.	or	ebar	iar	ire, or itor	iar	iar	irer	iri	iri
4 aud.	or	ibar							

Indic. Mood.

Imper. Mood.

Subjunct. Mood.

Infinit. Mood.

Mood.

Cognate

Of Verbs.

Cognate Tenses or Tenses very like in the Passive Voice, formed from the Preterperf. Tense.

	Preterperf. {sum or fui}	Preterperf.		Preterperf.		Preterperf.		Preterperf.	
		sum	or fueram	sum	or fueram	sum	or fueram	sum	or fueram
1 amat.	us { or fui}	ero	or fueron	ero	or fueron	ero	or fueron	ero	or fueron
2 doct.	us { or fui}	fueram		fueram		fueram		fueram	
3 Lect.	us { or fui}	sum		sum		sum		sum	
4 audit.	us { or fui}	sum		sum		sum		sum	

Subjunct. Mood.

Infinit. Mood.

Indicative Mood.

Subjunct. Mood.

Infinit. Mood.

F. 2

The

I here : cipharactically I enies, or I enies composed of sum, and the Participle of the Preterperfect Tense vary their Gender according to their Nominate case or Substantive. Dixit *in iuriam effatam.*

Of Verbs.

The desetted or reserved letters of Verbs in their several Conjugations, which are to be put to the Terminations of the severall Tenses, are thus found.

Rule 1.

If the Verb be of the first or third Conjugation, cast away o from the first person singular of the Present Tense, and the remaining letters are for the Terminations of the severall Tenses coming thereof: as, am̄o, am. leḡo, leg. am̄or, am. am̄o, abam, abo, a, ato, em, arem, are.

From Verbs in io, of the third Conjugation, cast away io from the first person of the Present Tense: as, fac̄io, jac̄io, fod̄io, which remaining letters put to the Terminations of Verbs of the fourth Conjugation, except the Imperative Mood, Preterimperfect Tense Subjunctive, and Present tense Infinitive: as, fod̄io, iebam, iam, e, ito, iam, ērem, ēre.

Rule 2.

If the Verb be of the second Conjugation, cast away eo from the Present Tense: as, doc̄eo; if it be of the fourth Conjugation, cast away io from the Present tense: as, aud̄io, aud̄ior.

Doc̄eo, ebam, ebo, e, eto, eam, erem, ere.

Aud̄io, iebam, iam, i, ito, iam, irem, ire.

Rule 3.

The desetted, or reserved letters of the preterperfect tense, are found by cutting off i from the end of the first person of the said Tense: as,

Amav̄i, Leḡi. amav̄i, cram, erim, issem, ero, issē.

Gerunds

Of Verbs.

Gerunds are formed from the Present tense Indicative, by putting the reserved letters to the terminations of the Gerunds.

Am	Sandi,	ando,	andum.
Doc	Sendi,	endo,	endum.
Leg	Zendi,	endo,	endum.
Aud	Liendi,	iendo,	iendum.

A Type of the reserved Letters, with the Terminations in the Active and Passive Voice.

Let your Scholar be every day exercised in these.

*Indicative Mood.**Present Tense.*

Sing.	am	o, as, at.
	doc	eo, es, et.
	leg	o, is, it.
	aud	io, is, it.

Plur.	am	amus, atis, ant.
	doc	ēmus, ētis, ent.
	leg	īmus, ītis, unt.
	aud	īmus, ītis, iunt.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	am	abam, abas, abat.
	doc	ebam, ebas, ebat.
	leg	ebam, ebas, ebat.
	aud	iebam, iebas, iebat.

Plur.	am	abamus, abatis, abant.
	doc	ebamus, ebatis, ebant.
	leg	ebamus, ebatis, ebant.
	aud	iebamus, iebatis, iebant.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	amav	i,
	docu	isti, it.
	leg	or ēre.
	audiv	Pl. imus, istis, ērunt,

*Preter-**Indicative Mood.**Present Tense.*

Sing.	am	or, aris, or are, atur.
	doc	ōcleor, ēris, or ēre, ētur.
	leg	or, ēris, or ēre, itur.
	aud	ādior, īris, or īre, ītur.

Plur.	am	amur, amini, antur.
	doc	ēmur, ēmini, ēntur.
	leg	īmur, īmini, untur.
	aud	īmur, īmini, īuntur.

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	am	abar, abaris, or abare, abatur.
	doc	ēbar, ēbaris, or ebare, ebatur.
	leg	ebar, ebaris, or ebare, ebatur.
	aud	iebar, iebaris, or iebare, iebatur.

Plur.	am	abamur, abamini, abantur.
	doc	ebamur, ebamini, ebantur.
	leg	ebamur, ebamini, ebantur.
	aud	iebamur, iebamini, iebantur.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	us	sum	es	est
	a	or	or	or
	um	fui	fuisti	fuit.
	i	sumus	estis	sunt

Plur.	æ	or	or	or
	a	fuimus	fuistis	fuerunt, or fuere.

Terminations of Verbs Active.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Singular.	amav doeu leg audiv	{ eram, eras, erat. eratis, erant.	Pl. eramus, erant.
-----------	------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-----------------------

Future Tense.

Sing.	am abo, abis, abit. doc ebo, ebis, ebit. leg am, es, et. aud iam, ies, iet.
Plur.	am abimus, abitis, abunt. doc ebimus, ebitis, ebunt. leg emus, etis, ent. aud iemus, ietis, ient.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	am	{ a, áto.	{ et, áto.
	doc	{ é, éto.	{ eat, éto.
	leg	{ ē, íto.	{ at, íto.
	aud	{ í, íto.	{ iat, íto.

Plur.

Terminations of Verbs Passive.

Preterpluperfect Tense.

Sing.	{ us a um	{ eram, or fueram,	{ eras, or fueras,	{ erat, or fuerat.
Plur.	{ i æ a	{ eramus, or fueramus,	{ eratis, or fueratis,	{ erant, or fuerant.

Future Tense.

Sing.	am abor, aberis, or abere, abitur. doc ebor, eberis, or ebere, ebitur. leg ar, eris, or ere, etur. aud iar, ieris, or iere, ietur.
Plur.	am abimur, abimini, abuntur. doc ebimur, ebimini, ebuntur. leg emur, emini, entur. aud iemur, iemini, ientur.

Imperative Mood.

Sing.	am	{ are, ator.	{ etur, ator.
	doc	{ ere, etor.	{ eatur, etor.
	leg	{ ere, itor.	{ atur, itor.
	aud	{ ire, itor.	{ iatur, itor.

Plur.

Terminations of Verbs Active.

Plur. siter	am emus,	ate, ent,
		atote. amanto.
	doc eamus,	ete, eant,
		etote. ento.
	leg amus,	ite, ant,

Plur. siter	ite, ant,	ítote. unto.
	íte, iant,	íto. iunto.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Sing.	am em, es, et.	
	doc eam, eas, eat.	
	leg am, as, at.	
	aud iam, ias, iat.	

Plur.	am emus, etis, ent.	
	doc eamus, eatis, eant.	
	leg amus, atis, nta.	
	aud iamus, iatis, iant.	

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	am árem, áres, áret.	
	doc érem, éres, éret.	
	leg érem, éres, éret.	
	aud írem, íres, íret.	

Plur.	am arémus, arétis, árent.	
	doc érémus, éréti, érent.	
	leg érémus, éréti, érent.	
	aud írémus, íréti, írent.	

Preter-

Terminations of Verbs Passive.

Plur. siter	am emur,	amini , entur.
		amini, antor.
		emino, eantuur.
	doc eamur,	eminor, entor.
		imini, antur

Plur. siter	leg amur,	iminor, untor
		imini, iantur.
		imino, iuntur.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Sing.	am er, éris, or ère, ètur.	
	doc ear, éáris, or éáre, éátur.	
	leg ár, áris, or áre, átur.	
	aud iar, iáris, or iáre, iátur.	

Plur.	am émur, émini, éntur.	
	doc cámur, éámini, éántur.	
	leg àmür, ámini, ántur.	
	aud iámnr, iámini, iántur.	

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	am arer, areris, or arere, aretur.	
	doc érer, eréris, or érére, eréetur.	
	leg érer, éréris, or érére, eréetur.	
	aud irer, iréris, or irére, iréetur.	

Plur.	am aremur, aremini, arentur.	
	doc eremur, eremini, erentur.	
	leg eremur, eremini, erentur.	
	aud irémur, irémini, iinentur.	

Preter-

Terminations of Verbs Active.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	amav docu leg audiv	ērim. ēris, ērit. Plur. erīmus, erītis, erīnt.
-------	------------------------------	---

Plusquam perfect Tense.

Sing.	amav docu leg audiv	issem, isses, isset. Pl. issemus, issetis, issent.
-------	------------------------------	---

Future Tense.

Sing.	amav docu leg audiv	ēro, ēris, ērit. Pl. erīmus, erītis, erīnt.
-------	------------------------------	--

Infinitive Mood Active.

Present Tense.

am	āre	Preterper.	amav
doe	ēre	Preterplu.	docu
leg	ēre	Preterim.	leg
aud	ire		audiv

Future

Terminations of Verbs Passive.

Preterperfect Tense.

Sing.	us a um	sim, or fuerim.	sis, or fueris.	sit, or fuerit.
Plur.	i æ a	simus, or fuerimus,	sitis, or fueritis	sint, or fuerint.

Plusquam perfect Tense.

Sing.	us, a, um,	essem, or fuiſſem	elles, or fuiſſes,	efſet, or fuiſſet.
Plur.	essemus, or fuiſſemus,	Eſſetis, or fuiſſetis,	Eſſent, or fuiſſent.	

Future Tense.

Sing.	us, a, um,	ero, or fuero,	eris, or fueris,	erit, or fuerit.
Plur.	erimus, or fuerimus,	eritis, or fueritis,	erunt, or fuerunt.	

Infinitive Mood Passive.

Present Tense.

am	ari,	Preterperf.	esse,
doe	eri,	Preterimperf.	or fuisse.
leg	i,	Preterpluper.	
aud	iri.		

*Locus esse
dicitur hoc
mo copiosus,
aliqua bo-
ras, de im-
peratoris
officio.*

Future

Active Voice.*Future Tense.*

Amat }
Doct }
Leet }
Audit } urum esse.

Signs of the Infinitive.

Active.
Pre. tens. *that I love.*
Pre. tens. *that I have loved.*
that I had loved.
that I did love.

Passive.
{ *that I am loved.*
{ *that I have been loved.*
{ *that I had been loved.*
{ *that I was loved.*

Obser-**Passive Voice.**

Future Tense.
Amat | um, iri, { am
Doc | or { doc
Leet | leg
Audit | aud | andum
| endum
| endum
| iendum
} esse.

Signes of the Future:

Active.
that I might love.
that I would love.
that I should love.
that I will love.

Passive.
{ *that I might be loved.*
{ *that I would be loved.*
{ *that I should be loved.*
{ *that I will be loved.*

Obser-

Of Verbs.

Observations.

I. Amaturum fuisse, doth differ from amaturum esse, as followeth:

1. Amaturum fuisse, signifieth the time past: as, dixit aliam puellam se amaturum fuisse, bee said, he would have loved another maid; ejusmodi igitur credo res Panetium prosecutum fuisse. Such matters therefore I believe Panetius would have treated of.

2. Amaturum esse, signifieth the simple Future Tense, or time to come; dicis te esse amaturum, thou sayest, that thou wilt love.

II. If a Verb want its Supines, and consequently the future in rus, then Grammarians speak about by spero and fore: as, spero fore ut contingat id nobis, I hope that it will happen to us: which Circumlocution takes place also when the Verbs are onfectum perfect: as, spero fore ut me ames. I hope that thou wilt love me.

Periphrasis.

III. Instead of the Future Tense Indicative, Future Subjunctive, and Preterimperfect Tense Subjunctive, you may use the Participle in rus with the Verb Sum.

1. Ego amatus sum, I shall love.
2. Cum amatus sim, when I shall love.
3. Cum amatus essem, when I would love.

IV. The Future Tenses Passive, amatum iri, and amandum esse, differ as followeth:

1. Amandum esse, signifieth necessity: as, Et

Of Verbs.

Et dirâ bellum cum gente gerendum, and that war must be waged with a fierce nation.

2. Amandum esse, signifieth office: as, admonendum potius te à me quam rogan-dum puto. I think thou oughtest rather to be admonished than intreated of me.

3. Amandum is declined and must agree in Case, Gender, and Number, with the Substantive on which it doth depend.

But amatum iri, simply noteth the time to come, and is not varied in Gender, and Number: as, cum interea rumor venit datum iri gladiatores; when in the mean while there was a rumour that Fencers were promised or should be given: spero omnia à te confossum iri.

V. Amatum ire, hath the signification of the Present Tense Indic. in the active voice: Amatum as, amatum ire, to love, with endeavour to ire signification obtain: as, Siccine oportet ire amicos homini amanti operam datum? i.e. dare, doth esse ad mandum, it so behove friends to help or aid a man that is scio te amare a Lover?

VI. Amatum fore, hath the compleat signification of Future Tense Passive in the Infinitive Mood: as, Spero amicitiam nostram notam posteritati fore. I hope our friendship will be known to posterity.

VII. Future Tenses Infinitive are sometimes joyned to Futures: as, deinde addit te ad me fore venturum.

VIII. Amaturum, occisurum, dicturum, Despancer and in fol.

Of Verbs Impersonals.

and the Future Tenses in rum , amongst old authoress are used invariable , but without esse : as, quocunque venerint hanc sibi rem præsidio sperant futurum , for futuram esse.

Verbs Impersonals.

There are certain Verbs deficient in Person, which are called *Impersonals*.

Impersonals bee declined throughout all Moods and Tenses in the voice of the third person singular only : as, delectat, it delighteth ; delectabat, it did delight : delectavit, it hath delighted ; delectaverat, it had delighted ; delectabit, it shall or will delight. Imper. delectet, let it delight, &c. i-tur, I go : ibatur, I did go : itum est, I have gone : oꝝ, itum fuit, I have gone : itum erat, I had gone : oꝝ, itum fuerat, I had gone : ibitur, I shall or will go, &c.

And they have commonly before the English this sign (it:) as, it delighteth, delectat : it becommeth not , non decet.

Observations.

1. It before a Verb is a sign of a Nominative case after the Verb : as, it is he, ille est.

2. It before a Verb, is also a sign of an Infinitive Mood, or sentence put instead of the Nominative case : as, Turpe est aliorum incumbere famæ. It is a shameful thing to depend upon another mans faine.

3. A Nominative case in the English before

Of a Participle.

before a Verb Impersonal, shall bee such case as the Verb Impersonal will govern; for, I must, say, me oportet, it behoveth me ; and for we often repent us of our lost time, it repenteith us often of our lost time.

Of a Participle.

There are four kinds of *Participles* :

i. A Participle of the Present Tense hath his English ending in ing : as, loving, and his Latine in ans : as, amans : in ens, as, legens, docens : in iens, as, audiens.

And it hath the signification Active or Neuter, as the Verb whereof it cometh.

And it is formed of the Preterimperfect Tense of the Indicative Mood, by changing the last syllable into ns : as, amabam , amans : poteram, potens.

A word ending in ing , is a Participle of the Present Tense, when it hath a person or substantive before it , answering to the Question who, or what : as , offendit adveniens, I coming, have offended : manus scribentis, the hand of one writing.

Jens, the Participle of eo, and the compound thereof, make the oblique cases, eun- cases are tis, cunti, euntem, eunte, and the Gerunds all but the eundi, eundo, eundum, only ambiens, maketh ambientis, ambienti, ambientem, &c. like audiens.

Of a Participle.

2. A Participle of the Preter Tense.

A Participle of the Preter Tense hath his English ending in d: as, loved; in t: as, taught; in n: as, slain; and his Latin in tus: as, amatus: insus: as, vi-sus: in xus, as, nexus: and one in uus: as, mortuus. And it hath the signification of the Passive or Deponent, of which it cometh; Participles of Deponents having their English also ending in ing: as, se-quutus, following, or having followed.

It is formed of the latter Supine by putting to s: as, of amatu, amatus.

Observations.

1. When the Tenses of Verbs are Eng-lished in d, t, or n, as the Participle of the Preter Tense, they have some person, substantive, or signe of the Tense before them: as, he loved, he hath loved.

2. When the English of the Partici-ple of the Present Tense should go-bern a Substantive after it, it may better be made by the Participle of the Preterperfect Tense, put absolute with that Substantive: as, he sending his man, informed me, misso famulo me docuit.

3. Having coming before the English of this Participle, if the Participle come of a Verb Deponent, it is made in Latin by this Participle, governing the Substantive following: as, Having spoken these words he went away: Loquu-tus

Of a Participle.

rus haec verba abiit. But if the Parti-ciple come of a Verb Passive, then it is put in the Ablative case absolute: as, his verbis dictis, or made by the Subjunctive Mood, with cum, when: as, cum haec verba dixisset, when he had spoken these words.

4. Being is a sign of this Participle: as, being weary, defessus.

3. A Participle of the Future in rus.

A Participle of the future in rus, is Englisched with to, like the Infinitive Mood of the Verb Active: as,

1. To doe.
2. About to doe.
3. Ready to doe.
4. Like to doe.
5. Upon the point to doe.

Ruiturus, Upon the point to fall.

And it hath the signification of the Active or Neuter, wherof it cometh; and it is formed of the latter Supine by putting to rus: as, of amatu, amaturus.

4. A Participle of the Future in dus.

A Participle of the future in dus, is Englisched with to be, like the Infinitive Mood Passive: as,

To

- 1 To be.
- 2 Must be.
- 3 Fit to be.
- 4 Should be.
- 5 Ought to be.
- 6 Deserves to be.

Plectendus esset, hee
should have been pu-
nished.
Laudandus est, hee
deserves to bee prai-
sed.

And hath always the passive signification, and is readily formed from the Gerund in dum, by changing dum into dus : as, amandum, amandus.

Participles of the Present Tense are declined like foelix. Participles of other Tenses, are declined like bonus.

A Participle is a word derived of a Verb, from which it hath signification of time, and is declined with Cases and Genders like a Noun,

Observations.

1. Cano, cresco, soleo, obliviscor, have the Supines, and want the Participle of the Future in rus.

2. Osurus is of odi, moriturus, of morior, which want the Supines.

3. Pariturus, nosciturus, sonaturus, ar-
guiturus, eruiturus, oriturus, are formed irregularly.

4. Innumerable words like Participle are derived of Nouns : tunicatus, togatus, personatus, larvatus.

5. Carendus, pudendus, pigendus, Vigilanus, regnandus, come of Verbs Neuters.

An

An Adverb.

A Adverb is a word undeclined, joined to a Verb, Noun, or Participle, to express some circumstance or quality.

1. Adverbia affirmandi.

Adverbs of affirming : as, etiam, yea; etiam atque etiam, diligently, earnestly; etiamdum, as yet; etiamne, therefore; etiamnum, yet, until then; etiam nunc, even now; etiam tum, even then; sic, so; ita, yea so, even so; sane, yea certainly, doubtlesse; maximè, most of all, very greatly, very much; omnino, wholly altogether; omnino non, never, not at all; prorsus, verily, surely; rursum prorsum, to and fro, forward and backward; certè, certainly, surely, without doubt; profectò, in very deed, forsooth, doubtless; planè, clearly, without dout; planè manè, very early; imò, but rather, yea rather.

2. Adverbia comparandi.

Adverbs of comparing.
Tam, so, or aswell : quam, as : magis, more : minus, lesse : maxime, especially.

3. Adverbia congregandi.

Adverbias of gathering together.
Simul, together : unà, together ; pariter, together : universim, generally, altogether ; coniunctim, together.

4 Ad-

Of Adverbs.

4. Adverbia corrigendi, eligendi,
or præferendi.

Adverbs of correcting, choosing, or preferring.

Imo, yea rather: potius, rather: magis, rather: satius, better: potissimum, rather, or ciefly.

5. Adverbia demonstrandi.

Adverbs of shewing: ac, en, behold: ecce, behold.

6. Adverbia distribuendi.

Adverbs of dividing in sundry parts.

Bifariam, after two sorts, in two parts: trifariam, three manner of ways: dupliciter, two ways: tripliciter, three fold.

7. Adverbia diverfitatis.

Adverbs of contrariety, difference, or unlikeness.

Aliter, otherwise, after another fashion: secus, otherwise.

8. Adverbia dubitandi.

Adverbs of doubting.

Forsan, peradventure: forsitan, peradventure: fortassis, it may be, or peradventure: an, whether or no: num, whether or no.

9. Adverbia excludendi.

Adverbs of shutting out, or debarring.

Tantum, only: solum, only, alone: dunat, only: unicè, only.

10. Adver-

Of Adverbs.

10. Adverbia hortandi.

Adverbs of exhorting.

Amabo, of fellowship of all love, or I pray thee, as ever thou wilt do me a good turn: agendum, well, go to: eia, go to.

11. Adverbia intendendi.

Adverbs of increasing.

Valde, very much, greatly: nimis, too much, very much, over-much: nimium, too far, too greatly: immodicè, too much, excessively: impendio, very much, more and more.

Impensè, exceedingly, very much: penitus, deeply, far in: funditus, from the foundation or ground.

12. Adverbia interrogandi.

Adverbs of asking.

Of which some ask,

1. Whether the thing be: as, num, whether? an, whether?

2. Others ask concerning the cause: as, cur, wherefore?

3. Others ask concerning the place: as, ubi, where? unde, from whence?

4. Others ask concerning the time: as, quando, when? quoad, how long? quoque, how long? quamdiu, how long?

5. Others ask concerning the number: quoties, how many times? how often?

6. Others ask concerning the quality: as, qualiter, how?

7. Others ask concerning the intention or increasing: as, quam, how greatly? how much?

Of Adverbs.

13. Adverbia jurandi.

Adverbs of swearing: as, Hercule, by Hercules, or truly: me Hercule, as Hercules shall help me: Pol, in good sooth, or by Pollux: Ædepol, by the Temple of Pollux: nœ, truly, or now in good faith.

14. Adverbia loci.

Adverbs of place.

1. *From a place, by which we answer to unde, from whence? hinc, from hence: illinc, from thence: istinc, from thence: intus, from within: foris, from without: inde, from that place: aliunde, from some other place: aliquid, from some place: indidem, from thence, from the same place: undecunque, from what place soever: supernè, from above: infernè, from below, or beneath: cœlitus, from heaven.*

2. *To a place: by which we answer to quo? whither? or to what place? huc, hither, where I am, or to this place: illuc, thither, or to that place: istuc, thither: intrò, into a place within: foras, out of doors, abroad: sursum, upward: deorsum, downward.*

3. *In a place: by which we answer to the question ubi? wherein, or in what place? hic, here, illic, there: istic, there: intus, within: foris, without: usquam, in any place, nusquam, in no place: uspiam, in any place: ubique, in all places: ubicunque, in what place soever: utrinque, on both sides: ibi, in that place: alibi, in another place, or in another matter: alicubi, in any place: ibidem, in the same place, or in the same thing.*

4. *Towards a place: by which we answer to the*

Of Adverbs.

the question quorsum? which way, or towards what place? horsum, hitherward: aliquorsum, to some other place: dextrorsum, towards the right hand: sinistrorsum, on or toward the left side or hand: introrsum, within, in the inward part: extrorsum, toward the outward part.

15. Adverbia negandi.

Adverbs of denying.

Haud, not: non, not: minime, n̄: nequaquam, no, or in no wise.

16. Adverbia negatæ solitudinis.

Adverbs of solitariness, or aloneness denied. Non modò, not only: non solum, not only: non tantum, not only.

17. Adverbia numeri.

Adverbs of number.

Semel, once: bis, twice: ter, thrice: quater, four times: quinquies, five times: sexies, six times: septies, seven times: vigesies, or vicies, twenty times: trigesies, or tricies, thirty times: quadragies, forty times: quinquagies, fifty times.

18. Adverbia optandi.

Adverbs of wishing.

Utinam, I would to God, or God grant: &, O that.

19. Adverbia Ordinis.

Adverbs of order.

Imprimis, first of all: inde, then, next after: deinde, secondly, moreover, or furthermore:

Of Adverbs.

novissimè, finally : denique, in conclusion, or finally.

20. Adverbia rei non peractæ.

Adverbs of a thing not finished.

Fermè, almost, well nigh : fere, almost : prope, nigh : propemodum, almost : vix, scarcely : modo non, almost : tantum non, almost.

21. Adverbia prohibendi.

Adverbs of forbidding : as,

Ne, no : nequaquam, no : minimè, no.

22. Adverbia qualitatis.

Adverbs of quality : as,

Doctè, learnedly : pulchrè, gaudily, or gaily : fortiter, valiantly : gnaviter, lustily, diligently.

23. Adverbia quantitatis.

Adverbs of quantity : as,

Parùm, little : satis, as much as one doth need : abundè plenteously.

24. Adverbia remittendi.

Adverbs of abating or slackning : as,

Vix, scantely, or scarcely : ægrè, hardly : paupèratim, by little and little : sensim, leisurely : peditentim, at leisure, softly and fair.

25. Adverbia restringendi.

Adverbs of restraining, or keeping in : as,

Quatenus, so faire as, or how far forth : quod, as to that, or as touching that.

26. Ad-

Of Adverbs.¹

26. Adverbia segregandi.

Adverbs of severing, or laying apart : as, Seorsim, asunder : segregatim, asunder : nominatim, particularly by name : viritim, man by man : oppidatim, town by town : vicatim, street by street : ostiatim, door by door.

27. Adverbia similitudinis.

Adverbs of likeness : as,

Sic, so : sicut, like as : ita, so : tanquam, even as : quasi, as : ceu, as : uti, as : veluti, as.

28. Adverbia temporis.

Adverbs of time : as,

1. *Of the Present Tense : as, jam, now : nunc, now : hodiè, to day.*

2. *Of the Preterperfect Tense : as, heri, yesterday.*

3. *Of the Future Tense : as, cras, to morrow : perendie, the day after : mox, anon, forthwith : propediem, now, every day, shortly.*

4. *Of time indefinite, or not determined : as, dum, when, or whiles : quum, when : quando, when : quamdiu, how long, as long as : subinde, forthwith, or anon.*

5. *Of the Present and Future Tense, olim, in time past, or in time to come : aliquando, in time past, or in time to come : quondam, in time past, or in time to come.*

Observations.

1. *There before a person, or substantive, or before It, is an Adverb of place : as, ibidem, there : eo loci, there (i.e) in that place : there he was èo erat loci, there men gather fruit, there it is.*

Of a Conjunction.

2. There before a Verb, is a sign of the Nominative case after the Verb; there came one to me, venit ad me quidam.

3. There before is, in the beginning of a speech, is but a void word with the Latines: as, There is no enemy like to a flattering friend; nullus inimicus est adulanti amico inimicitior.

Adverbs have the Comparative and Superlative degree: as, doctè, learnedly; doctius, more learnedly; doctissimè, most learnedly; bene, well; melius, better; optimè, best; male, evil; pejus, worse; pessimè, worst; magis, more; maximè, most.

A Conjunction:

A Conjunction joyneth words and sentences together.

1. Conjunctiones easuales.

Which bring in a reason of the sentence or thing going before.

Nam, for: namque, for: enim, for: etenim, for: ut, that: quod, that: quia, because: quippe, for: quum, sith that: quoniam, because: quando, sith that, or because.

2. Conjunctiones concessivæ.

Which grant something in a sentence, to which something afterwards is joyned, which impugneth it by a Redditive, as not hindring the main thing by so granting.

Concess.

A Conjunction.

Concessive.

Etsi, although.

Tametsi, although.

Etiamtsi, although.

Quanquam, although.

Quamvis, although.

Esto, be it so.

Redditive.

Tamen, yet notwithstanding.

Attamen, yet notwithstanding.

Veruntamen, yet nevertheless.

3. Conjunctiones conditionales.

Which determine the sentence following upon some condition: as, si, if: fin, but if: siquidem, if for truth: modò, so that: dum, so that: dummodo, so that: quoad, so far, as much as: quatenus, so far, as much as: alioqui, except that, if not: alias, or else.

4. Conjunctiones continuativæ.

Which without intermission do orderly continue the parts of an Oration amongst themselves: as, deinde, moreover: porrò, moreover: præterea, furthermore: itemque, and moreover: insuper, moreover.

5. Conjunctiones copulativæ.

Which couple words and sense: &c, and: ac, and: que, and: atque, and: cum, both: tum, and also.

6. Conjunctiones disjunctivæ.

Which so sever parts of sentences, as if one

Of a Conjunction.

one onely could be true. They conjoin words and disjoin sense: aut, or, or either: ve, or, either: seu, either: sive, either.

7. Diminutivæ.

Which judge that which is less worthy to be granted: as, saltem, at least: minimum, at the least: vel, yea, or at least wise:

8. Discretivæ.

Which lightly sever parts, or join together things severed: as, sed, but: at, but: quidem, but truly: autem, but: verò, but: at, but: ast, but: atqui, but: cæterum, but: tamen, yet.

9. Electivæ.

By which of two things set before us, we shew that we choose and prefer the former: as, quam, then as: ac, than: atque, than.

10. Exceptivæ.

Which except something from the sentence going before: as, nisi, except: præterquam, except: ni, except: quin, nay, for all that: alioquin, except that.

11. Explanativæ.

Which explains things going before: as, seu, as it were: scilicet, as who say: nempe, to wit: nimis, to wit.

12. Expletivæ, or Completivæ.

Which are inserted into the Deation for ornament or filling sake only: at enim non finam, but I will not suffer it.

13. Illa-

Of a Conjunction.

13. Illativæ.

Which are also called Rationales, Ratiocinativæ, & Conclusivæ; which from Antecedents do infer a Conclusion: ergo, therefore: ideo, therefore: igitur, therefore: itaque, therefore.

Observations.

1. Cum, when, is an Adverb of time: Cum, both, is a Conjunction Copulative: Cum, seeing that, is a Conjunction Casual.

Hermes.

But,

1. But, i. e. only, is made by tantum, or modo, or solum.

2. But, i.e. but that, by quin, or qui, quæ, quod, and non, or ut non.

3. But, i. e. not but, by non or quin.

4. But, i. e. except by, præter or nisi.

Quam.

1. Quam is often understood after plus, minus, amplius.

Amplius Centum, for quam centum, above an hundred.

2. Quam, is sometimes put for antequam or postquam: as, quadringentessimo anno quam urbs Roma condita erat, the four hundredth yeare after the City Rome was built.

3. Qyam is put for postquam, after alter: as, alterâ die quam, the next day after, &c.

4. Quam is put for postquam, when protinus or statim go before: as, statim quam urbem ingressi, incontinently, or by and by after that they entred the City.

G. S.

S. Quam

Of a Conjunction.

5. Quàm, is put for postquam, after pri-
die, and postridie: as, postridiè intellexi
quam à vobis discessi, I understand it the day
after that I departed from you.

6. Quam, for: quantum, how, or as, is
joyned to Possessives: quam sint moro-
si, how wayward or froward they are: homo
non quam isti sunt glorioſus, a man not so
glorious as these are.

7. Quam, as, is joyned to Superlatives,
if possim, volo, or queo, come between
quam and the degree: as, quam possunt
mollissimè, as gently or diligently as they can:
quam occultissimè, as closely as they may.

8. Quàm, as, is sometimes joyned to a
Superlative with tam or ità: as, quàm
quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est,
he that did worst, sped best.

Vel is very elegantly added to Superlatives, and Verbs for etiam, yea; you.

9. Quàm, very, is elegantly joyned to Superlatives: ut esset apud te ob ho-
tives, and quàm gratissimus; that he might be for this
verbis potior ratio hinc- quam rel quām paucos habet, he hath very few of his
optimè di- own: and sometimes to Possessives: as,
cendi vide- scribit ad me quām honorificè, he writeth
return. unto me very honourably.

10. Quam with valdè, is joyned to Pos-
ſe vivendi sessives, and englighed very: as, suos valdè
quam rel quām paucos habet, he hath very few of his
optimè di- own: and sometimes to Possessives: as,
cendi vide- scribit ad me quām honorificè, he writeth
return. unto me very honourably.

11. Tam in a sentence is elegantly set
before quàm: tam te diligo quam meip-
sum, I love thee as well as my self.

12. Quàm elegantly knits two Compar-
atives: as, triumphus clarior, quam gratior
fuit, the triumph was more famous, then ac-
cepted.

Of a Conjunction.

13. Quàm with volo, is put for tantum
quantum, as much as: as, cum volo tur-
bent porrò quam velint, when I will, they
can disturb as much as they will.

14. A deò, perindè, benè, and ità, are
elegantly Englisched very: as, habebis O-
rationem benè longam; you shall have a very
long Oration.

15. Nedum, much leſſe, is put in the
latter part of the sentence, and in Ne-
gatives it joyneth the greater to the fore-
going lesser: as, vile nè captare qui-
dem nedum alere conduceat; it is profit-
able not indeed to catch, much leſſe to nourish
that which is of no value or account: but
in Affirmatives it joyneth the leſſe to the
greater, that went before. Satrapas si
sit amator nunquam sufferre ejus sumptus
queat nedum tu possis.

16. Nedum, Englished not onely, is
put in the former and latter clause:
as, nedum hominum humilium ut nos
sumus, sed etiam amplissimorum virorum
consilia probare solent. Movere hic casus
quemlibet possit nedum hominem patriæ
suæ amantissimum.

Etenim, enim, quidem, quoque, autem,
vero, are placed in the second place of
your speech: also inquam, inquit, e qui-
dem, hercle, proculdubio, igitur, que, un-
quam.

Of a Præposition.

A Præposition.

A Præposition is set before other words:

1. In Composition.
2. In Government of case.

Præpositions serving to the Accusative case.

ad, to : at, until.	per, by or through.
quoad, as touching.	pone, behind.
apud, at, with, before.	post, after, behind.
ante, before.	præter, beside, except.
adversus, { against,	propter, for, or near
adversum } towards.	by.
cis, on this side.	secundum, according
citra, on this side, with-	to, near, next to.
out.	secus, by.
circum } about.	supra, above, beyond.
circa,	trans, over, on the o-
circiter,	ther side.
contra, against, over a-	versus, towards.
gainst.	ultra, beyond.
erga, towards.	infra, beneath.
extra, without, be-	juxta, beside, or nigh
sides.	to.
inter, between, among,	ob, for, before.
amidst.	penes, in the power,
intra, within.	with.

Præpositi-

Of a Præposition:

Præpositions serving to the Ablative case.

à, from, of, by, since,	præ, before, or in com-
after, for, or on our	parison, for, or by
side.	reason of.
ab, or abs, from, of, by.	pro, for, before, out of,
absque, without.	or after.
coram, before.	scire, without.
cum, with.	
de, of, concerning, out	* nihil ex occulto,
of, by, about.	nihil ex insidiis
e, *ex, of, out of, ever	agendum, Cic.
since.	

If procul, or simul, be joyned with an Ablative case, à, or cum, is understood before the Ablative: as, procul patriâ, for à patriâ, far from his country: à and è, are set before consonants, ab and ex, before words beginning with a vowel, and j, l, abs, before words beginning with t, and q: as, abs te.

Præpositions serving to the Accusative and Ablative case.

In, signifying in, or among, requires an ablative case usually: fuit mihi in mente, it was in my mind.

In, signifying into, for, towards, upon, against, requireth an accusative case.

Sub, signifying towards, about, a little before, or after, requireth an accusative case: and also after Verbs of moving: missus, sub

Of a Præposition.

sub jugum, brought into subjection.

*Sub, signifying under, requireth an ablati-
tive case, and sometimes about: as, sub
exitu vitæ, about the time of his death.*

*Super, signifying concerning, requireth
an ablative case.*

*Super, signifying beyond, requires an ac-
cusative case.*

*Subter, under, requireth an accusative,
or ablative case.*

*Clam, unknown to, requireth an accusa-
tive, or ablative case.*

*Tenus, nigh to, or up to, governs an ab-
lative case, both singular or plural, unlesse
the word to be governed of tenus, want
the singular number, or signifie things
two in nature: as, crurum tenus, up to the
ankles: aurum tenus, up to the ears: nutri-
cum tenus, nigh to the paps: and, lumborum
tenus, for then it is a genitive.*

Observations.

1. *Apud is set before the place: as, quid apud hasce ædes negotii est tibi? what busi-
ness hast thou at this house?*

2. *Apud, is not used after Verbs of mo-
tion.*

3. *Apud, signifying by, of, to, before, is
set before the person: as, apud te, before
thee: apud majores nostros, by our an-
cestors.*

4. *Ante, is referred to { time,
persons,
places.*

5. *Cis, for the most part is set before
Moun-*

Of a Præposition.

*Mountains and Rivers; also, cis paucos di-
es, within a few days.*

6. *Citra is used before persons, time,
and other Substantives.*

7. *Circiter is set before time and number,
but seldom before place.*

8. *Circa, is set before time, place, and per-
sons, seldom before number.*

9. *Extra, is set before persons and sub-
stantives of things material and not ma-
terial: extra muros, without the walls: ex-
tra periculum, without danger.*

Signes.

1. *A sign is a void word in the Latine, or
a word for which no Latine is allotted; yet
noting some Case, Mood, or Tense, &c.*

2. *Præpositions are then set before cases
when they are not signes of cases; and
they are signes of cases, when by the
Rules of Syntax, a word governeth a case,
without a Præposition.*

3. *Cum is seldom expressed, but when
it signifieth society: venit cum sociis, he
came with his companions.*

4. *Præpositions set without cases after
them, become Adverbs.*

5. *For, when it is made by the Conju-
nctions casual, nam, enim, &c. it hath ordi-
narily a nominative case and the verb, or a
verb joyned with an Adverb or Relative,
immediately following: as,*

*Non enim sumus ii quorum vagetur ani-
mus errore, for wee are not they whose mind
wandreth in error; nam cum in omnibus
quæ*

Of an Interjection:

quæ aguntur, for when as in all things that are done.

For, when it is a Preposition, it is immediately before a Noun or a Pronoun Substantive: as, Pueri inter se quām pro levibus noxis iras gerunt.

Interjection.

An Interjection is a word expressing some affection of the mind.

1. **Some be exultantis, of mirth:** as, evax, hey; vah, heyday.
2. **Dolentis, of sorrow:** as, heu, alas; hei, ah, alas; hoi, alas; eheu, alas, ah, alas.
3. **Exclamantis, of crying out:** as, oh, and proh! ô.
4. **Admirantis, of marvelling:** as, pape, O marvellous, or strange!
5. **Timentis, of fearing:** as, atat, oh, or out alas.
6. **Laudantis, of praising:** as, euge, O wel done! eja, go to.
7. **Vitantis, of shunning:** as, apage, get thee gone, or fie away.
8. **Vocantis, of calling:** as, O, echo, heus, hoe.
9. **Deridentis, of scorning:** as, hui, hoe, alas.
10. **Ridentis, of laughing:** as, ha, ha, he.
11. **Fastidientis, of disdaining:** as, Phuy.
12. **Indignantis, vah, ah.**

13. Mi-

Of an Interjection.

13. **Minantis, of threatening:** as, vœ, wo.
14. **Silentium injungentis, of injoyning silence:** as, aé, au, st. pax.

Observations:

Sometimes Nouns and Verbs are used as Interjections to expresse some affection of the mind: as, Infandum, ô horrible chance not to be mentioned.

Malum, ô the foul ill, or a mischief take him.

Mirabile dicta, quæso, fodes, sis, for sivis, sultis, for sivultis, &c.

Finis Libri primi.

THE SECOND BOOK.

Grammar is an art of speaking rightly.

There be two parts of Grammar :

1. Etymology.
2. Syntax.

Etymologie considereth the properties of every word by it self.

Syntax is the right ordering, or putting together of words amongst themselves, according to the use of most approved Authors.

Grammatica est Gars recte loquendi.

Grammaticæ duæ sunt partes.

1. Etymologia.
2. Syntaxis.

Etymologia vocum singularum proprietates considerat.

Syntaxis est recta vocum inter se compositio, juxta usum Autorum probatissimum.

Rules

Of Order in Construing.

Rules shewing the Order, wherein words are to be taken in Construing.

First, the *Vocative case* (if there be any) is to bee taken, and whatsoever depends of it.

Secondly, the *Nominative case* to the Verb, or whatsoever stands instead thereof, and that which depends of it: but if the Verb be an *Impersonal*, then there is no *Nominative case*.

Thirdly, the *Principal Verb* with his *Infinitive Mood*, or in stead thereof a *Gerund* or *Supine*.

There is no sentence without a *Verb*, either express or understood, unlesse when an *Interjection* supplies the place thereof.

Fourthly, that case which the *Verb* properly governeth, and then the other cases are to be taken in order.

When this Order is to be changed.

First, this Order is changed in the oblique cases of the *Relative Qui*, and of *Interrogatives*, *Indefinites*, and *Partitives*, which together with their *Substantives*, (if they have any expressed, are commonly to bee taken before the *Verb*, or other word whereof they are governed.

Secondly, *Conjunctions* are usually taken first

Of Order in Construing.

first in Construction, and Adverbs are taken either before, or after their Verb, as the Tense requires: Except Adverbs of likeness, as, quemadmodum, sicut, &c. having sic or ita, answering to them in the second part of the sentence, which are taken first.

Thirdly, Interjections also governing a Vocative, or other case, are to be construed in the first place together with their case.

Fourthly, Prepositions must be taken, together with their case.

Fifthly, the Adjective is always to be taken with his Substantive, unless when it doth passe the signification into another word.

Sixtly, such words as are wanting to make up full construction, are to be supplied by the sense of the place.

Seventhly, Latine phrases, which cannot fitly be disjoined, are to be taken together, and to be expressed as near as can be, to the life, that the elegance of them be not lost.

Eighthly, and lastly, when by these rules a piece of Latine is to be expounded, the sentence is plainly, and distinctly to bee read to a full point, and the points, as Commas, Colons, Interrogations, &c. are to be marked.

Points

Of Points.

Points by which sentences are distinguished and noted, are seven.

There are seven Points distinguishing sentences.

1. Comma	6. Exclamation
2. Colon	: } Admiratio
3. Semicolon	; } Deploratio
4. Period	. } Parenthesis ()
5. Interrogation ?	

Their use.

I. A Comma, is the note of a breathing place, so that the breath being taken, that which followeth, must presently be read.

II. A Semicolon sheweth a larger breathing place, than the Comma: and is used,

1. In contraries: as, not in life; but in death; not in health; but in sickness, &c.

2. In disjoined sentences: as, aliud clausum pectore; aliud promptum in lingua habere. The one defends us against the stroak of the Law; the other against the mutability of fortune.

III. A Period is used, when the whole sentence is perfected; and after it, followeth a great letter.

IV. An Interrogative point is used when a question is asked: as, who cometh?

V. An Exclamation is used,

1. In calling out: as, o most childish follies!

2. In

Of the Genders of Nouns.

2. In wondring at : as, *by living under Pharaoh, how quickly Joseph learned the Courtship of an Oath ! miserable brevity ! more miserable incertainty of life !*

3. In bewailing : as, *Pitiful ! that we should rather mischiefe our selves, then be content to be unpriued : en quo discordia cives perduxit miseris ! en quis consevimus agros !*

4. In wishing : as, *o that I had the wings of a Dove !*

V I. Colon, noteth a perfect part or branch of a sentence : the whole sentence being not yet finished : as, *ut agri non omnes frugiferi sunt, qui coluntur : sic animi non omnes culti, fructum ferunt.*

VII. Parenthesis, encloseth words, without which, notwithstanding the sense is perfect : as, *Though the Heathen (in many places) tempted and adored their drunken God.*

A Parenthesis is to be construed by itself.

Of the Gender of Nouns Substantives, gathered from their signification.

Rule I.

Thou mayest call Propria quæ majoribus tribuuntur
proper names, which are applyed to mascula dicas.
Hees, masculines.

Names

Of the Gender of Nouns:

143

Names of Rivers, Fluviorum, Men- Rule 2.
Moneths, and Windes, sium & ventorum
are Masculine. nomina sunt masculina.

These Observations are to be read perfectly : also the rest upon any other Rule.

Observations.

I. Under the names of hees, are comprehended, 1. Heathen Gods : as, Mars, Pan. 2. The names of Angels : as, Raphael, Gabriel. 3. Gentiles : as, an English man, a Scotch man, a french men, &c. 4. Proper and common names given to men, and hees : as, Charles, Thomas, Romulus, Remus, vir, a man, gen. viri ; praedo, a robber, gen. prædonis ; taurus, a bull, gen. tauri.

II. Of Rivers, Allia, Albula, Matrona, Sequana, Druentia, Vistula, Mosella, Garumna, following the Declension and Termination, are read feminines. Iader, is the Neuter Gender. Nar is the Masculine and Neuter Gender. Stix, and Lethe are the feminine gender. Offa and Oeta, names of Mountains, by reason of mons understood, are read masculines.

III. The names of Moneths are, 1 Januarius, i. 2. Februarius, i. 3. Martius, i. 4. Aprilis. 5. Maius. 6. Junius. 7. Julius. 8. Augustus. 9. September, is. 10. October, is. 11. November, is. 12. December, is.

IV. The

Of the Genders of Nouns.

4. **The names of Winds;** the East-wind, Eurus; the West-wind, Favonius; the North-wind, Boreas, &c; the South-wind, Auster, tri.

5. Note that proper names, and Adjectives derived of them, also the beginnings of Verses are written with great letters.

Rule 3.

Proper names shewing the shee kind are applied to the fœminine Gender.

Rule 4.

Names of Cities, or Towns, of Countries and Islands, are fœminines.

Propria fœminum referentia nomina sexum, fœmineo generi tribuuntur.

Urbium, Regionum & Insularum, nomina sunt fœminina.

Observations.

I. Under names shewing the she kind, are comprehended the names of Heathen Goddesses: as, Juno. 2. Names of women: as, Dido. 3. Such as represent the female sex: as, Nymphes, Drias, &c. Muses, Clio, &c. Graces, Euphrosyne, &c. Furies, Alecto, Megæra, and Tysiphone; and with these common nouns signifying shees: as, uxor, gen. uxoris, a wife; agna, gen. agnæ, a Ewe-Lamb; Leæna, &c, a Liones.

II. In names of Cities, Authors seem to have had respect to the termination, from which if they have declined urbs, regio or insula is understood.

The rules for the termination are,

I. That

Of the Gender of Nouns.

1. Those words ending in a and e long, are Fœminines.

2. Words ending in o and in us, especially if they descend of Greek words in ος, contracted of οεις, are Masculines: as, Sulmo, Narbo, Hippo, Pontus, Abidus, Pef-sinus, Daphnus, Opus, Rhamnus.

Argos, is the Neuter Gender: as, τοιχος.

3. Words ending in as, are Masculines: as, Agragias.

4. Words in e short: as, Prænestē, Cære, Nepete: also in ma: as, Zeugma; in l, as, Hispal, Suthal; in ir, as, Gedir; in ur, as, Tibur, are Neuters; but Anxur, is Masculine and Neuter.

5. Plurals in i, are Masculines: as, Gabii, Philippi; and Plurals in a, are Neuters: as, Bactra, Artaxata.

Nouns are of the Common of two Gender, which do receive both an Adjective of the Masculine and Fœminine Gender, with difference of kind.

Sunt commune Rule 5.
duum, quæ cum discrimine sexus, masculum & admittunt Adjectivum & Muliebre.

Infans, tis, an Infant. Atque Parens, tis, a father or mother. Adolescens, tis, a young man, or maid. Miles, &c tis, a soldier.

Hostis, is, an enemy. Vates, is, a Prophet.

Affinis, is, a kinsman by marriage. Testis, is, a witness.

Patruelis, is, a cousin german; & hæres, dis, and an heir. Vindex, icis, a revenger, & jūdex, icis, and a Judge.

H

Con-

Of the Gender of Nouns:

Conjux, jugis, a husband, or wife: antistes, titis, a Prelate: & augur, uris, a south-sayer: autor, toris, a Founder.
Exercise *Nemo, minis, no body: custos, todis, a keeper: Dux, cis, a Captain: sacerdos, otis, a Priest.*

your
scholar in
declining
these
words.

Municeps, municipis, a Citizen, or Freeman: Comes, comitis, a companion: Civis, civis, a Citizen.

Sus, suis, a Swine: Bos, bovis, an Oxe: Canis, canis, a dog or bitch.

Observation.

The meaning of this rule is, that if the word be spoken of a bee, it is masculine, but of a skee, feminine: as, affinis, a kinsman, is masculine: but affinis, a kinswoman, feminine: testis, a witness, if a man, the masculine: if a woman, the feminine.

Rule 6.

Names of Birds, Beasts, and Fishes, are Epicenes. Nomina, volucrum, ferarum, piscium sunt Epicœna.

Observations.

1. Sometimes the sex is differenced in several words: as, taurus, a bull: vacca, a cow: juvencus, juvencia, an Heifer.

2. Sometimes to avoid doubtfulness, or uncertainty, we use masc. and foemina: as, passer foemina, a hen-sparrow, to distinguish the sex.

The

Of the Genders of Nouns:

The name of a Tree is feminine, as a popular tree, an alder tree. Arboris est nomen Rule 7. muliebre ut populus alnus.

Exception.

Oleaster, a wild Olive Tree, gen. Oleastri, is masculine.

Siler, gen. sileris, a small withy. Suber, gen. suberis, a Cork tree. Robur, gen. roboris, an Oak. Acer, gen. aceris, a Maple Tree, are Neuters.

The Gender from the Terminalion excepted from the signification.

You shall put a word ending in um, neuter, if you except the proper names of men and women:

Um neutrum po- Rule 8.
nes hominum si pro-
pria tollas.

Observations:

1. Greek words in on, are neuters: as, Ilion, a City. Pelion, a Mountain.

2. Mancipium, a bond-man. Scortum, an harlot; or common strumpet. Jumentum, a labouring beast, are neuters by their termination, not by their signification; &c.

Pægium, and Dynacium, names of boyes. Glycerium, Phronesium, names of women, keep the Gender according to their signification, and not their termination.

Rule 9.

Of the Gender of Nouns:

A letter or other word put for a Noun is the Neuter Gender, so is a Noun undeclined: as, *gumnii*, *gum*; *cornu*, a horn.

Litera 'five aliud positum pro nomine verbum, est Neutra-le genus, sic invaria-bile nomen, ut gum-mi, cornu.

Explication.

*Et potes es
nigrum vi-
tio præfige-
re theta.
Pers. Sat.
4.*

1. A letter put for a Noun: as, *a* *n* *d*: *nigrum theta*, black or *dismall theta*.
2. Another word put for a Noun: i. e. words put materially, or for themselves: as, *velle suum*, his own *velle*. Aliud *cras*, another *cras*, &c.

Of the Gender of Noun Substantives known from their Declension.

Rule 10.

Nouns of the first, and fifth Declension, are of the Fœminine Gender.

Fœminæ generis sunt primi, & nomina quinti flexus.

Except of the first Declension.

1. Greek Nouns ending in *as*: *as*, *tiaras*, gen. *æ*, a round ornament for the head; and in *es*: *as*, *sorites*, gen. *soritæ*, a kind of subtle argument.

2. Words derived of these, ending in *a*: *as*, *cométa*, gen. *cometæ*, a Comet, or blazing star. *Planeta*, gen. *Planetæ*, a Planet, or wandering star. *Hadria*, gen. *Hadriæ*, the Adriatic sea, which are all Masculines.

Except

Of the Gender of Nouns:

Except from the First Declension:

1. *Dies*, a day, which is Masculine and Fœminine in the singular number, and Masculine only in the plural.

2. *Meridies*, mid-day, which is Masculine in the singular number, and wants the plural.

Observations upon the First Declension.

1. That many Nouns which descend of Greek Nouns of the Masculine Gender, are notwithstanding Fœminines: *as*, *margarita*, *charta*, *cætæracta*, a *Portcullis*. *Cochlea*, *catapulta*, a *sling*. *Gausapa*, *balista*, *ca-tasta*, a *Cage* to sell or punish servants in, &c.

2. Compounds of Verbs: *as*, *transfuga*, *parricida*, *advena*, *coclicola*, &c. may be referred to the rules of signification.

Nouns which are of the Fourth, and which are of the Second Declension, are Masculines: *as*, *fructus*, *fruit*: *fluvius*, a river.

Mascula sunt fle- Rule 25
xus, quæ quarti quæ-
que secundi: *ut*, *fru-
ctus*, *fluvius*.

Exceptions from the second Declension.

1. Fœminines. 2. Neuters. 3. Doubtfuls.

I. Fœminines excepted.

1. *Vannus*, gen. *Vanni*, a *Van*. *Humus*, gen. *Humi*, the ground. *Domus*, a house. *Alvus*, gen. *Alvi*, a *belly*. *Colus*, *i*, a *distaff*.

H 3 2. Greeks

Of the Genders of Nouns.

2. Greek nouns changing os into us: as, Papirus, paper. Antidotus, a preservative against venene or poison. Costus, an herb called herba Mariæ. Diphongus, a Diphong. Byssus, a kind of fine flax. Abyssus, a bottomless gulf. Crystallus, Crystal. Synodus, an Assembly. Sapphirus, a Saphir stone. Eremus, a wilderness. Arctus, a celestial constellation in form of a Bear. Exodus, a going, or departing out. Methodus, a ready way to doe or teach any thing. Dialectus, a manner of speech in any language divers from others. Crysolitus, a kind of Jasper shining with a golden colour quite through. Carbasus, fine linnen. Hyssopus, hysope. Nardus, a plant called Spicknard. Aconius, a mote in the Sun. Pharos, a high watch-Tower. Lecythus, a pot of ointment. Byblus, a Bul-rush. Ficus, a Fig, and a Fig-Tree, are fœminines.

2. Neuters excepted:

Virus, poison. Nominativo virus. Accusativo virus. Voc. virus. Pelagus, the sea, are Neuters. Vulgus, the common people, is sometimes the masculine, and sometimes the neuter gender.

3. Doubtfuls.

Balanus, i, all kind of mast or acorns. Rubus, i, a great bramble, the black-berry bush. Phaselus, a little ship called a Galleot. Barbitus, a Lute, or Dulcimer. Grossus, a green fig, or unripe fig, are of the Doubtful gender.

Exception

Of the Genders of Nouns.

Exception from the fourth Declension.

- 1 Fœminines.
- 2 The Common of two.
- 3 Neuters.

1 Fœminines.

Manus, a hand : tribus, us, a tribe or ward : Porticus, us, a Porch, or Gallery: acus, us, a needle : idus, iduum, in the plural number only, the Ides of every month.

2. Masculine and Fœminine.

Specus, a den, and penus, all kind of vituals, meat and drink, are the masculine and fœminine gender.

3. Neuters:

Words ending in u, In u, definentia are of the Neuter Gen- sunt Neutrius gene- der undeclined in the ris, in singulari singular number : us, declinabilia : ut, cor- cornu, a horn : genu, nu, genu.

The Third Declension.

The Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension, is known by three special Rules, drawn from the increasing, or not increasing of the genitive case singular.

1 Parisylla-
bical.

2 Impari-
syllabical.

Of the Genders of Nouns.

The Genitive case is said not to increase, when the syllables are equal with the syllables in the Nominative : as, *Nom. caro, Gen. carnis.*

The Genitive case is said to increase, when there are more syllables in the Genitive case than in the Nominative : as, *virtus, gen. virtutis.*

The first special Rule

Fœminines.

Exc. 1.

A Noun not increasing in the Genitive case : as, *caro, flesh, carnis : vis, strength, might, or power : nubes, a cloud, is the Feminine Gender.*

Nomen non cre-scens, genitivo : ceu, caro, carnis, vis, vis, nubes, nubis, genus est mulibre.

Exceptions

1. Of *Masculines.* 2. *Neuters.*

3. *Doubtfuls.*

1. Masculines.

Orbis, a circle, or ring ; postis, a poste; vepres, a briar, or bramble, gen. vepris ; & and, aqualis, an ewer, or laver, are Mascul.

Also, callis, a beaten path. Caulis, a stalk or stem of an hearb. Follis, a pair of bellows. Collis, a Hillock. Menfis, a moneth. Ensis, a sword. Fustis, a club. Funis, a rope, or cable.

Mascula sunt orbis, postis, vepres, & aqualis.

Of the Gender of Nouns.

cable. Panis, bread. Sentis, a thorn. Crinis, hair. Amnis, a river. Cassis, a net or snare. Fassis, a faggot. Penis, a tail. Torris, a fire-brand. Piscis, a fish. Unguis, the nail of the Finger or Toes. Ignis, fire. Vectis, a bar or sparr of wood. Vermis, a worm. Sodalis, a companion. Axis, an Axe Tree, or Axle Tree. Mutilus, a mullet. Acinaces, a Persian Sword or Speer.

Nouns ending in er, are Masculines ; as, imber, a smoaking shou're of rain ; venter, a belly ; uter, a bottle.

Mascula nomina Exc. 2. in er ; velut, imber, venter & uter.

2. Neuters excepted.

If a Noun in e make Neutrum nomen is (in the Genitive case) it is a Neuter ; as, mare, gen. maris, the sea ; rete, gen. retis, a net.

Also Panäces, an hearb that hath a leaf like the leaf of a fig Tree. Nepenthes, buglosse. Hippomänes, a venomous humour issuing from a Mare. Cacoéthes, an evil custome. Solcophänes, a shew of a solecism.

3. Doubtfuls excepted.

Finis, an end, and corbis, a basket, and canalis, a channel, are of the doubtful gend.

Sunt dubii gen- ris finis corbisq; canalis.

Of the Gender of Nouns.

Also, *anguis*, a snake: *clunis*, a buttock, or haunch: *torques*, a collar, or chain: *palumbes*, a wood-culver, or ring-dove, are of the masculine or feminine gender.

The second special Rule:

Feminines.

A Noun is the feminine gender, if the last syllable save one of the genitive case increasing, sound long: as, *pietas*, godliness: *virtus*, virtue, doe shew.

Nomen crescentis penultima si genitivi syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc: pietas, pietatis: virtus, virtutis, monstrant, genus est muliebre.

Exceptions of

1. *Masculines.*
2. *Neuters.*
3. *Doubtfuls.*

1. *Masculines.*

Exc. 1.

Some Nouns of one syllable are called masculines: **sal*, *salt*, *gen. salis*: *sol*, the Sun, *gen. solis*.

* *Sal præf-
eis neutrū.*

Mascula dicuntur Monosyllaba nomina quædam, ut sal, sol.

Also *ren*, *gen. renis*, the kidney or reins of the back: *splen*, the spleen: *pes*, a foot, *gen. pēdis*: *glis*, a dormouse, *gen. gliris*: *fur*, a thief: *gryps*, a griffin: *vas*, *gen. vādis*, a surety: *præs*, *gen. prædis*, a surety: *mos*, *gen. moris*, a manner: *flos*, a flower: *ros*, the dew: *mus*, a mouse: *dens*, a tooth: *seps*, *gen. sepis*, a venomous

Of the Gender of Nouns.

mous worm, of whose stroak or biting, the flesh rotteth: *mons*, a mountain: *pons*, a bridge: *grex*, *gen. grēgis*, a flock of cattle: *fons*, *gen. fontis*, a fountain.

Also Nouns of many syllables in *n*, are masculines, of what sort are *Lichen*, *gen. Lichenis*, a tetter, or ring-worm: also the bearb Liverwort.

And *Delphin*, *gen. Delphinis*, a *Dolphin*: Also *Anz-Pæan*, *gen. Pæanis*, a song of praise made to *gē*, a morehen, & *Python*.

Nouns in o, signifying a body, are masculines: as, unio, a precious pearl: bubo, an Owle: umbo, a shield, gen. unibonis.

Mascula sunt in o, Exc. 2. signantia corpus: ut, unio, bubo, umbo.

So Senio, the size cast of the Dice: ternio, the number of three: sermo, a word or speech.

Nouns ending in er, dr, and os: as, crater, gen. crateris, a great cup: sudor, gen. sudoris, sweat: and honos, gen. honoris, honour, are masculines.

Mascula in er, or, Exc. 4. & os: ut, crater, sudor, honosque.

So torrens, a brook: oriens, the East: Elephas, an Elephant: Magnes, the Lead-stone: tapes, tapestry: lebes, a cau'dron: adamas, a Diamond: hydrops, the dropsie: nicticorax,

Of the Gender of Nouns.

rax, a night raven: thorax, the breast: Phœnix, gen. Phoenicis, a bird called a Phoenix: rudens, a cable of a ship: bombyx, a silk-worm: bidens, a dung fork, or forked instrument: and tridens, gen. tridentis, an instrument having three teeth.

Exc. 5.

*Uncia fol-
lows the
rule of the
2. Declen.*

*Also the parts and Compounds of a pound:
as, sextans, sextantis, two ounces: quincunx, quincuncis, five ounces: bes, bessis, eight ounces: semissis, gen. semissis, half a pound: triens, gen. trientis, a farthing.*

Exc. 1.

Also these Nouns of one syllable are Neuters: as, mel, honey, gen. mellis: fel, gall, gen. fellis.

Exc. 2.

*And Nouns of many syllables ending in Et in al, polysyl-
laba in arque, nomi-
al,*

Mascula sunt etiam partes & composita assis: ut, sextans, quincunx, bes cum semisse triensque.

2. Neuters excepted:

Sunt Neutralia & hæc Monosyllabæ nomina mel, fel.

Also lac, milk, gen. lactis: far, bread corn: Ver, the Spring time: Cor, a heart, gen. Cordis: æs, braſſe, gen. æris: vas, a Vessel, gen. vasis: os, a bone: gen. ossis: os, a mouth, gen. oris: rus, the Countrey, gen. ruris: thus, frankincense, gen. thuris: Jus, right: gen. juris: Crus, the leg from the knee to the ankle. Pus, snot, gen. puris.

Of the Gender of Nouns.

al, and in ar, are Neuters: as, capital, gen. capitalis, a ribbon: laquear, a wanted roof of a chamber, to which halec, gen. halecis, a herring is added.

na sunt Neutra: ut, capital, laquear, calcar, quibus additur halec.

3. Doubtfuls excepted:

These Nouns are of the Doubtful Gender: sunt perdix cum limax, a snail: with grus, gen. gruis, a crane.

Also lynx, gen. lyncis, a beast like unto a Wolf, having many spots.

** Stirps, gen. stirpis, the root or stem: ser-
pens, a serpent: scrobs, a Ditch: calx, the
heel, gen. calcis.*

** A stock
or kindred
Gender.*

The Third special Rule.

Masculines.

If the last syllable save one of the Genitive case increasing, be short: as, sanguis, blood, sanguinis, in the Genitive case, that Noun is a masculine.

Nomen, crescentis penultima si Genitivi fit gravis: ut, sanguis, Genitivo sanguinis est mas.

Exceptions

Of the Gender of Nouns.

Exceptions

1. Of Fœminines.
2. Neuters.
3. Doubtfuls.

1. Fœminines.

Exc. 1.

Let a word above two syllables ending in *do*, which gives *dinis*, in the genitive case, and ending in *go*, which giveth *ginis*, in the genitive case, be the fœminine gender: *as*, *dulcedo*, *sweetnes*: *compago*, *a joint*.

Add to these, *grando*, *hail*, gen. *grandinis*: *teges*, *a course blanket, or coverlet*: *compes*, *a pair of fetters*: gen. *compedis*: *seges*, *standing corn*, gen. *segetis*: *arbor*, *a tree*, gen. *arboris*: *hyems*, *winter*, gen. *hyemis*: *halcyon*, *the bird called the Kings Fisher*: *pecus*, gen. *pecudis*, *all cattle and beasts*: *cassis*, gen. *cassidis*, *a helmet*: *cuspis*, gen. *cuspidis*, *the point of a weapon*: *lagopus*, gen. *lagopodis*, *an heareb called Hares-foot*: *bindon*, gen. *bindonis*, *very fine linnen*: *icon*, *an image*: *aëdon*, *aëdonis*, *a Nightingale*: *forfex*, gen. *forficis*, *a pair of scissars, or sheers*: *carex*, gen. *cari-cis*, *sedge*: *forceps*, gen. *forcipis*, *a pair of songes*: *Supellex*, gen. *supellectilis*, *household-stuff*: *appendix*, gen. *apendicis*, *a dependance, or addition*: *histrix*, gen. *histrice*, *a Porcupine*: *coxendix*, gen. *coxendicis*, *the hip*: *filix*, gen. *filicis*, *fern-brake*.

And

Of the Gender of Nouns.

And Greek Nouns ending in *as*, *is*, and *ys*: *as*, *Lampas*, gen. *Lam-padis*, *a Lamp*: *jaspis*, gen. *jaspidis*, *a jasper stone*, are fœminines: *clamys*, *a short cloak*.

2. Neuters excepted.

A Noun ending in *a*, signifying a thing without life: *as*, *problema*, gen. *proble-matis*, *a hard question* is the Neuter Gender.

A Noun ending in *u*, *is* Neuter: *as*, *omen*, gen. *ominiis*, *fore-speak-ing*, except *pecten*, gen. *pectinis*, *a comb*, masculine.

Nouns ending in *ar*: *as*, *jubar*, gen. *jubaris*, *the sun-beam, and end-ing in ur*, *as*, *jeeur*, gen. *jecoris*, *the liver*, are Neuters, except *furfur*, *bran*, masculine.

A Noun ending in *us*: *as*, *onus*, *oneris*, *a bur-den*: and in *put*,

Græcaeque in *as*, Exc. 2. *is*, & *ys*, *finita*: *ut*, *Lampas*, *jaspis*, at-que *chlamys* sunt fœminina.

Est neutrale genus Exc. 2. signans rem non ani-matam, nomen in *a*, *ut problema*.

Nomen in *n* est Exc. 2. neutrum: *ut*, *omen* excipe pecten masculum.

Sunt neutralia Exc. 3. nomina in *ar*: *ut*, *jubar*, & in *ur*, *ut je-cur*, excipe furfur, masculum.

Nomen in *us*: *ut*, Exc. 4. *onus*, & in *put*, *ut occiput* est neutrum, *as*,

Of the Gender of Nouns.

as, occiput, occipitis, the hinder part of the head is Neuter.

Exc. 5.

Cadaver, gen. ca-
daveris, *a dead car-
kasse* : *uber*, gen.
uberis, *a breast or
teat* : *iter*, gen. *itineris*, *a journey* : *fiser*,
gen. *fiseris*, *a parsnep*, are Neuters.

Sunt Neutra ca-
daver, *uber*, *iter*, *si-
ser*.

Also filer, gen. fileris, *an Osier*. Tu-
ber, gen. Tuberis, *a Tad-stool*, or *swell-
ing in a mans body*. Neuter, *for a Tree*,
Fœminine, *for fruit of a Tree* Masculine.
Verber, Gen. Verberis. Ablat. Verbere. Plu-
raliter Verbera, Verberum, Verberibus,
a Stripe. Suber, Genitivo Suberis, *Cork*.
Zinziber, Genitivo Zinziberis, *Ginger*. La-
ser, Genitivo Laseris, *the Hearb Benjamin*.
Cifer, Genitivo Ciferis, *an Italian Pease*.
Piper, Genitivo Piperis, *Pepper*. Papa-
ver, Genitivo Papaveris, *Poppy*. Pecus,
Genitivo Pecoris, *Cattel*. Æquor, Geni-
tivo Æquoris, *the Sea*. Marmor, Geni-
tivo Marmoris, *Marble*. Ador, Genitivo
Adoris, *Wheat*.

3. Doubtfuls excepted.

These Nouns are of Incerti generis
the Doubtful Gender: sunt hæc, cinis, ales,
cinis, *ashes*, Geniti- adepsque.
vo cineris: ales, Ge,
alitis, *any great bird*, and adeps, fat, gen. adipis.

Also

Of the Gender of Nouns.

Also Margo, Gen. Marginis, *the brim of a-
ny thing*. Culex, Gen. culicis, *a Gnat*. Cor-
tex, gen. corticis, *the bark of a Tree*. Pu-
mex, *a Pumice stone*. Pulvis, *dust*, gen. pul-
veris. Obex, *a boult*, gen. obicis. Imbrex,
a gutter-tile, gen. imbricis. Silex, *a flint*, gen.
silicis. Onyx, gen. onichis, *the nail of a fin-
ger*. Sardōnix, gen. Sardonichis, *a stone, the
upper part resembling the colour of a mans nail*,
are the Masculine or Fœminine Gender.

Finis Libri secundi.



THE THIRD BOOK.

Of Heteroclites, or words out of Rule.

Irregular words in the first Declension.

Rule 1.

Dica, an action or process.

Sing. { Nom. dica.
Accus. dicam. } ^P { Accus. dicas.

2. Suppetiæ, aid, or help.

Pluraliter { Nom. Suppetiæ.
Accus. Suppetias.

3. Inficias, to gainsay, or deny.

Plur. Accusativo Inficias.

* Under-
stand line-
as translatio
ab Iudo ubi
calculis
non ampli-
uscire
(i.e.) mo-
vere poffer.

So Accus. incitas, poverty, ad * incitas
Redactus, brought to extream poverty.

Plural. Ablativo, Ingratiis, by con-
straint.

These

Of Irregular words.

These Nouns are sel-
dom read plurals; fa-
ma, fame, or tidings;
gloria, glory; cholera,
choler; pituita, flegm.

Names of ages, vir-
tues, and vices, are sel-
dom plurals: as, se-
necta, old age; juven-
ta, youth; justitia,
justice; invidia, envy.

These Nouns are the
Fœminine Gender, and
plural number: antiaæ,
gen. antiarum, fore-
locks: insidiæ, wily
trains.

All so tenebraæ, darkness. Phaleræ, horse-
trappings. Minæ, threatenings. Excubiæ, watch
and ward. Nugæ, trifles. Nonæ, the nones of a
moneth. Tricæ, vain trifles. Calendæ, the Ca-
lends. Quisquiliaæ, the sweeping, and refuse of
things. Thermaæ, baths. Cunæ, the Cradles
of infants. Diræ, curfings. Exequiæ, solemnities,
as Funerals, or Burials. Feriæ, holy-days.
Inferiæ, Heathenish sacrifices done to spirits.
Primitiæ, the first-fruits. Plagæ, nets. Valvæ,
folding doors. Divitiæ, riches. Literæ, learn-
ing, or an Epistle. Exuviaæ, the skin, or things
put off. Clitellæ, a pannel, or pack-saddle. Vi-
giliaæ, watch. Nuptiæ, marriage. Illecebræ,
an illuremens. Quadrigæ, four horses drawing

Hæc nomina raro Rule 2.
leguntur pluralia fa-
ma, gloria, cholera,
pituita.

Ætatum, virtutum
& vitiorum nomina,
raro sunt pluralia:
ut, senecta, juventa,
justitia, invidia.

Hæc sunt fœminei Rule 2.
generis, numerique
secundi, antiaæ, &c in-
sidiæ.

Of Irregular words.

in a Cart. Vindiciæ, the assertion of liberty or freedom.

Reliquiæ, remains. Cumæ, arum, a City of Campania. Thebæ, the head City of Thebæs in Ægypt, and Athenæ, Athens.

Irregular words in the second Declension.

1. Fæminines and Neuters.

*P*ergamus, a Towre of Troy. 2. Cæbasus, fine linnen, are Fæminines in the singular number, declined like Dominus, and Neuters in the plural, declined like Regna: as,

<i>Singulariter</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Pluraliter</i>	<i>Nom.</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>		<i>Dat.</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>		<i>Acc.</i>
	<i>Voc.</i>		<i>Voc.</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>		<i>Abl.</i>
	<i>Pergam-</i>		<i>Pergam-</i>
	<i>us</i>		<i>a</i>
	<i>i</i>		<i>orum</i>
	<i>o</i>		<i>is</i>
	<i>um</i>		<i>a</i>
	<i>e</i>		<i>is</i>
	<i>o</i>		

2. Masculines and Neuters.

1. Mænælus, an hill in Arcadia. 2. Dindymus, the top of Ida by Troy. 3. Ismarus, a Mountain in Thracia. 4. Tartarus, Hell. 5. Taygetus, an hill in Lacedemonia. 6. Tenarus, a Promontory in Laconia. 7. Massicus, a Mountain in Campania. 8. Avernus, a lake in Italy, are Masculines in the singular number, declined like Dominus, and Neuters in the plural, declined like regna, orum, is.

3. Mas-

Of Irregular words.

3. *Masculines in the singular number, but Masculines and Neuters in the plural.*

1. Locus, a place. 2. Jocus, sport, 3. Sibillus, a hissing, are Masculines in the singular number, but Masculin and Neuter in the plural, declined like Dominus, and Regnum: as,

<i>Singulariter</i>	<i>Locus</i>	<i>Pluraliter</i>	<i>Loci & loca</i>
	<i>Loci</i>		<i>Locorum</i>
	<i>Loco</i>		<i>Locis</i>
	<i>Locum</i>		<i>Locos & loca.</i>
	<i>Loce</i>		<i>Loci & loca.</i>
	<i>Loco</i>		<i>Locis.</i>

4. *Neuter in the singular number, and Masculine in the plural.*

<i>Singulariter</i>	<i>Cœlum, Heaven, thus declined.</i>
	<i>Cœlum</i>
	<i>Cœli</i>
	<i>Cœlo</i>
	<i>Cœlum</i>
	<i>Cœli</i>
	<i>Cœlis.</i>
	<i>Cœlos</i>
	<i>Cœli</i>
	<i>Cœlis.</i>

5. *Neuters in the singular number, and Fæminines in the plural.*

1. Nundinum, a Fair. 2. Delicium, de- is a privat light. 3. Epulum, a Banquet. 4. *Balneum, a Bath, are Neuters, declined like Regnum in the singular, and Musæ in the plural: as,

Sing.

* *Balneum* Bath; *balnum*, a Bath, are Neuters, declined like Regnum in the singular, and Musæ in the plural, is used for publike Baths.

Of Irregular words.

Singulariter	Nundinum. Nundini. Nundino. Nundinum. Nundinum, Nundino.	Pluraliter	Nundinæ. Nundinarum. Nundinis. Nundinas. Nundinæ. Nundinis.
--------------	---	------------	--

6. Neuters in the singular number, but masculines and neuters in the plural.

1. Rastrum, a rake.
2. Frænum, a bridle.
3. Capistrum, a head-stall, in the singular number, are Neuters, declined like Regnum; in the plural number, masculines and neuters, declined like Dominus, and Regnum: ag,

Singulariter	Rastrum. Raſtri. Raſtro. Raſtrum. Raſtrum. Raſtro.	Pluraliter	Raſtri & Raſtra. Raſtrorum. Raſtris. Raſtros & Raſtra Raſtri & Raſtra. Raſtris.
--------------	---	------------	--

7. Nouns declined in the genitive case singular only.

1. Nauci, the shell or pill of a nut.
2. Ejusmodi, of the same sort.
3. Istiusmodi, of the same sort, &c. the genitive cases of is and modus, and iste and modus.

8. Nouns of the Neuter Gender in the singular number, which have only the Nominate, Accusative, and Vocative case in the plural.

I Hor-

Of Irregular words.

1. Hordeum, Barley.
2. Forum, a Market.
3. Mulsum, Wine mingled with honey.
4. Deſtrutum, wine made of new wine sod, untill half be boiled away: ag,

Singulariter	Hordeum. Hordei. Hordeo. Hordeum. Hordeum. Hordeo.	Pluraliter	Nom. Hordea. Accus. Hordea. Vocat. Hordea.
--------------	---	------------	--

9. Jugerum, an acre, is the Neuter Gen. der in the singular number, declined like Regnum, and Neuter in the plural number of the third Declension, declined like tempora: ag,

Singulariter	Jugerum. Jugeri. Jugero. Jugerum. Jugerum. Jugero.	Pluraliter	Jugera. Jugerum. Jugeribus. Jugera: Jugera. Jugeribus.
--------------	---	------------	---

Singularia tantum aut raro pluralia. *Irregular Nouns of the second Rule, Declension, singulars only, or seldom plurals.*

1. Declined like Dominus.

Vesperus, the Evening. Viscus, bird-lime. Pontus, the sea. Limus, mud. Fimus, dung. Mundus, womens decking themselves. Humus, the ground. Cestus, a marriage girdle.

2. De-

Of Irregular words.

2. Declined like Regnum.

Cœnum, dirt. Salum, the sea. Justitium, Vacation, or out of Term. Barathrum, a place taken for Hell. Vitrum, glasse. Viscum, bird-time. Penum, provision of Victuals. Virus, poysen. Nihilum, nothing. Senium, old age. Lethum, death. Macellum, the Shambles. Vulgus, the common people. Solium, a Throne. Pelagus, the Sea. Fœnum, Hay. Lutum, clay or dirt. Solum, the Foundation of the Earth. Callum, brawn or hardnesse of the skin by much labour. Hilum, the black spot in the top of a Bean. Fascinum, a bewitching. Ævum, Æternity.

Rulin.

These Masculines are onely read in the plural number, declin-ed as Domini.

Masculina tantum in plurali leguntur hæc.

Liberi, children. Loculi, a Bag, Purse or Coffin. Cancelli, Lattices. Codicillo, Epistles or Letters. Fori, the Hatches or top of a Ship. Fasti, a Register of things of the year. Gabii, the name of a City in Italy. Philippi, a City in Thessali.

These are only Neuters in the plural number, declined like Regna, Regnorum, Regnis.

Neutra tantum pluralia sunt, hæc mœnia cum tesquis præcordia lustra ferarum.

Mœnia, the wals of a City. Tesqua, rough

Of Irregular words.

rough places. Præcordia, the Midriffe. Lustra dens, of wilde Beasts. Justa, rights of burial. Bellaria, banqueting dishes. Compita, crosse ways. Castra, a Camp or Tent. Rostra, a Pulpit. Incunabula, the Cradle of a little child. Exta, the inwards or intrais. Effata, Prayers. Fraga, a Strawberry. Arma, Weapons. Crepündia, trifles and gugawes for children. Flabra, a blast of winde. Repotia, drinkings or banquetings with new wedded folks, with many others.

1. Proper names of places: ag,
Susa, the name of a City in Persia. Ar-taxäta, a City of Armenia. Bactra, a Province of Scythia.

2. Famous Plays: ag,
Pythia, Playes and Games in the honour of Apollo. Orgia, the sacrifices of Bacchus.

3. The Titles of Books: ag,
Georgica, Virgils Books of the Tillage of the Earth. Ethica, Books of moral Philosophy. All thus dectined.

Pluraliter	Nom. Mœnia.
	Gen. Mœniorum.
	Dat. Mœniis.
	Acc. Mœnia.
	Voc. Mœnia.
	Abl. Mœniis.

I e Irre-

Of Irregular words.

Irregular Nouns in the Third Declension.

1. **F**ors, chance. *Singulariter Nom. Fors.
Abl. Forte.*
2. Vesper, the Evening. *Sing. Nom. Vesper.
Abl. Vespere.*
3. Spontis, of his own accord. *Sing. Gen. Spontis.
Abl. Sponte.*
4. Impetis, of violence. *Sing. Gen. Impetis.
Ablat. Impete; which four want the plural number.*

1. Jugeris, of an Acre. *Sing. Gen. Jugeris.
Ablat. Jugere. Plur. Jugera, Jugerum,
Jugeribus, Jugera, Jugera, Jugeribus.*
2. Verberis, of a Stripe. *Sing. Gen. Verberis.
Abl. Verbere. Plur. Verbera, Verberum,
Verberibus, Verbera, Verbera,
Verberibus.*

1. Opis, help.
2. Dapis, delicate meats.
3. Sordis, uncleanness, filth, have the Genitive, Accusative, and Ablative case only in the singular number, and are perfect in the plural: as,

Gen. Opis.

Acc. Opem.

Abl. Ope.

Plur. { *Opes.
Opum.
Opibus.
Opes.
Opes.
Opibus.*

1. **Fru-**

Of Irregular words:

1. Frugis, of fruit.
2. Ditionis, of rule or authority.
3. Precis, of prayer. Proceris, of a Peer, or head man, want only the Nominative and Locative case singular.
4. Vis, force, wants the dative singular.

Singulariter { *Nom. Vis.
Gen. Vis.
Dat.
Acc. Vim.
Voc. vis:
Abl. Vi.*

Plurilater { *Nom. Vires.
Gen. Virium.
Dat. Viribus.
Acc. Vires.
Voc. Vires.
Abl. Viribus.*

Jovis. Sing. Gen. Dat. Jovi. Acc. Jovem. *Jupiter
Abl. Jove.*

1. Ambage, an idle circumstance of words. *pater.*
2. Fauce, the cheek or jaws.
3. Crate, an hurdle, have only the Ablative case in the singular number, and are perfect in the plural: as, Singulariter Ablat. Ambage. Plur. Ambages, Ambagium, Ambagibus, Ambages, Ambages, Ambagibus.

1. Far, all kind of Corn.
2. Mel, Honey.
3. Rus, the Country.
4. Thus, Frankincense, have only the Nominative, Accusative, and Locative case in the plural number: as,

Singulariter { *Nom. Mel.
Gen. Mellis.
Dat. Melli.
Acc. Mel.
Voc. Mel.
Abl. Melle.*

Plurilater { *Nom. Mella.
Acc. Mella.
Voc. Mella.*

1. Tempē, a fair field in Thessaly.
2. Cetē, a Whale.
3. Melē, Songs, want the Singular

Of Irregular words.

In number, and have onely the **Nominative**, **Accusative**, and **Vocative case** in the plural: as, *Plur. Nom. tempē, Accus. tempē. Voc. tempē.*

Vas, a Vessel, is thus declin'd.

Singulariter	<i>Nom.</i> Vas.	Pluraliter	<i>Vasa.</i>
	<i>Gen.</i> Vatis.		<i>Vasorum.</i>
	<i>Dat.</i> Vasi.		<i>Vasis.</i>
	<i>Accu.</i> Vas.		<i>Vasa.</i>
	<i>Voc.</i> Vas.		<i>Vasa.</i>
	<i>Abl.</i> Vase.		<i>Vasis.</i>

Argos, a famous City of Peloponnesus. Gen. Argeos, the Neuter Gender in the singular number. Plur. Nom. & Voc. Argi. Dat. & Abl. Argis. Accu. Argos, of the Masculine Gender, and second Declension.

These for the most part want the plural number: pulvis, dust. Nemo, no man. Pudor, shamefastnesse. Sopor, a sound sleep.

Æther, the Firmament. Sanguis, bloud. Aer, air.

And Pubes, gen. pubis, ripenesse of age. Salus, gen. salutis, health. Nex, gen. Necis, violent death. Talio, gen. Talionis, like for like. Indoles, towardnesse, gen. Indolis. Tussis, a cough, gen. Tussis. Lux, light, gen. Lucis. Plebs, the common people, gen. plebis. Lues, pestilence in men, murrain in cattle, gen. luis. Tabes, a consuming of the body by long sicknesse, gen. tabis. Mors, death, gen. mortis.

Of Irregular words.

mortis. Supellex, householdstuffe, gen. supellectilis. Quies, sleep or rest, gen. quietis. Bilis, choller or anger, gen. bilis. Proles, a child, gen. prolis. Sitis, thirst, gen. sitis. Senectus, old age, gen. senectutis. Paupertas, poverty, gen. paupertatis. Soboles, an issue, or offspring, gen. Sobolis. Fames, hunger, gen. Famis. Contagio, an infectious disease, gen. contagionis. Tellus, the Earth, gen. Telluris. Jubar, the Sun-beam, gen. jubaris. Nectar, the drink of the Gods, gen. Nectaris. Ver, the Spring, gen. veris. Halec, a Hering, gen. Halecis. Gluten, glue, gen. glutinis. Ebur, Ivory, gen. ebōris. Fel, gall, gen. fellis. Siser, the Parsnip, gen. Siseris. Siler, a small withy, gen. Silēris.

These Nouns are of the Masculine Gender and plurall number generis numerique. only.

Antes, gen. Antium, the first rowes of Vines. Menses, gen. Mensium, an issue of bloud. Manes, gen. Manium, the souls of the dead. Lemures, gen. Lemurum, ghosts or spirits. Natales, gen. Natalium, a stock. Penates, gen. Penatium, household Gods.

Joyn to these fo- Hisce fores, lactes, res, a door, or gate, grates, muliebria gen. forium. Lactes, jungas. the small gut, gen. lactium. Grates, thanks. Plur. nom. grates. Accu. grates. Voc. grates, being Feminines.

Of Irregular words.

And these Neuters. Mapalia, Gen. Mapaliorum, & Mapalium. Dat. Mapalibus, Cottages, &c. Sponsalia, Gen. Sponsaliorum & Sponsalium. Dat. Sponsalibus, &c. a Contract, or betrothing a man or woman. Mœnia, Gen. Mœniorum, & mœnium. Dat. Mœnius, &c. the walls of a City.

Irregular Nouns in the Fourth Declension.

The Ablative cases of these nouns, are Orum Ablativi tantum sunt in only in use.

Noctu, by night. Natu, by birth. Jussu, by bidding. Injussu, by forbidding. Promtu, with speed. Permissu, by sufferance.

Gelu, frost, not declined in the singular number, wants the plural.

Artus, the joints, wants the singular number. Plur. Artus. Gen. Artum. Dat. Artubus, &c. and Idus, the Ides of a month: Plur. Nom. Idus. Gen. Iduum, &c.

Irregular Nouns in the Fifth Declension.

Rule.
Planitierū
equabilita-
te. Bar. En. only three cases in the

Nouns of the Fifth Declension, admit in pluriā tres tan-
gibilitate. Declinationis in plurali tres tan-
gibilitate. Declinationis in plurali tres tan-
gibilitate.

Of Irregular words.

plural number, the sum admittunt casus, Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative.

Except res, a thing: species, a shape, or form: facies, a face, and acies, an edge, and dies, a day, which are perfect in the plural number.

Expes, void, or past hope, is only read in Exc. 2. the Nominative case.

Fides, faith. Gen. Fidei. Requies, rest, Exc. 2. Gen. Requiei. Meridies, Mid-day. Gen. Meridiei. Rabies, the madness of a mad dog, Gen. Rabiei, want the plural number.

A mixture of some Nouns out of Rule.

These change no case: nil, nothing: nihil, nothing: fas, lawful: nefas, a thing detestable, a cursed deed: instar, like, as it were: and want the plural.

Also Cæpe, an Onion: * Pondo, a weight, * Is used or pound weight: Gausape, a Frize, or rough Garment: Volupe, delectable, pleasant.

Of Irregular words:

Rule 2. Names of letters are undeclined: as, Alpha, Beta.

Nomina literarum sunt aclita: ut, Alpha, Beta.

Rule 3: Words uttered materially, or for themselves, are undeclined: as, this word bonus is an Adjective.

Voces materialiter enunciatæ sunt aclitæ: ut, bonus est adjectivum.

Rule 4. Barbarous or rude words, are undeclined: as, frit, the light corn in the top of the ear. Gru, dirt under the nail.

Barbaræ dictiones non variantur. ut, frit, gru.

Rule 5. Many Nouns ending in i: as, Sina, mustard seed. Gummi, Gumme. Semi, half, and Nouns ending in u: as, cornu, a horn: genu, a knee, are not declined in the singular number, but are perfect in the plural: as,

Singulariter
Nom. Cornu.
Gen. Cornu.
Dat. Cornu.
Accu. Cornu.
Voc. Cornu.
Abl. Cornu.

Pluraliter
Nom. Cornua,
Gen. Cornuum.
Dat. Cornibus.
Acc. Cornua.
Voc. Cornua.
Abl. Cornibus.

Rule 6.
Danes

If a Noun be compounded of two Nominate cases, and

Si nomen componatur ex duobus Nominativis, & de-

Of Irregular words.

be declined, both the one and the other word is declined as Respublica, a Commonwealth. Unusquisque, every one. Iusjurandum, &c.

Singulariter	Respublica Reipublicæ Reipublicæ Rempublicam Respublica Respublícâ	Pluraliter	Respublícæ Rerum publicarum Rebus publicis Respublicas Respublicæ Rebus publicis.
--------------	---	------------	--

Except alteruter, the one or the other, which is declined, Nom. alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum: Gen. alterutrius. Dat. alterutri. Accu. alterutrum, &c. in the latter part of the Composition only; and Leopardus, gen. Leopardi, a Leopard, with olus-atrum, gen. olus-atri, or oleris-atri, an herb called Loveage. Duo also in Composition is not varied as Duodevigesimus, &c.

If a Noun be compounded of a Nominative case, and another case, the Nominative only is declined: as, Senatusconsultum, but if of two cases that are not Nominative, the whole Noun is undeclined.

Si nomen componatur ex recto & obliquo, rectus; solus declinatur: ut, Senatusconsultum, si ex duabus obliquis, totum invariabile ut hujusmodi, istiusmodi, illiusmodi.

I. 5 Senatus.

Senatus-consultum, an Ordinance of the Senate.

Sing. { Nom. Senatus-consultum.
Gen. Senatus-consulti.
Dat. Senatus-consulto.
Acc. Senatus-consultum.
Voc. Senatus consultum.
Abl. Senatus-consulto.

{ Nom. Senatus-consulta.
Gen. Senatus-consultorum.
Dat. Senatus-consultis.
Acc. Senatus-consulta.
Voc. Senatus-consulta.
Abl. Senatus-consultis.

Rule 1.

Observe all proper names, which have a restraining nature, that they shall not be plurals : as, Mars, Gen. Martis, the Heathenish God of battel.

Cato, Gen. Catonis, the name of a wise man in Rome.

To this rule belong proper names, 1. Of Heathen Gods. 2. Of Men. 3. Of Countries. 4. Of Cities. 5. Of Mountains. 6. Of Rivers. 7. Of Dogs. 8. Of Horses.

Rule 2.

Proper names sometimes are declined in both numbers.

Propria nonnumquam, numero flexuntur ut quoque.

1. When

1. When more of the same name are noted : as, trecenti Fabii, three hundred of the stock of Fabius.

2. When property is only signified : as, non omnes possumus esse Catones, wee cannot be all Catoes.

Sint Mecænates, nor deerunt Flacce Marones.

Thou shalt add to His frumenta
these, 1. *bread corn.* bis, pensa, herbas,
2. *Things delivered by weight.* 3. *Hearbs.*
4. *Moist things.* 5. *Metals.*

Observations:

1. By bread corn, understand Wheat, and Rye; not Barley and Oats.
2. By things delivered by weight, understand Pepper, Sugar, &c.
3. By hearbs, understand Rue, Sage, &c.
4. By moist things, Opi, Vinegar, &c.
5. By Metals, Gold, Silver, Iron, &c.

Nouns Substantives, Redundant, or abounding.

Some Nouns are allotted the form of two Declensions : as, Mendum, mendi, and menda, mendæ, a fault in writing. Pa-

Uædam duarum Rule 1. Declinationum formam fortiuntur : ut, Mendum, mendæ, a Pavo, Pavus, &c. pavonis, and Pavus, Pavi, a Peacock.

A Nominative case of the first Declension arises from a Greek Accusative case of the third Declension: as, crater, acc. cratera. Sing. No. cratera, crateræ.

Some Nouns have two endings in the same Declension: as, Clypeus, a buckler, and clypeum baculus, a staffe, and baculum.

Some Nouns onely vary or abound in the Nominative case: as, Nom. vomis, & vomer. Gen. vomeris, a plow-share. Nom. cucumis, and cucumber. Gen. cucumeris, a Cucumber.

Some Nouns of the fourth Declension chuse some oblique cases of the second. All cases are called oblique cases, except the Nominative and Vocative.

1 Laurus item 2 quercus, pro fructu ac arbore 3 Ficus. Sit 4 colus atque 5 Domus, 6 Pinus, proque arbore 7 Cor-nus.

Redundants.

Ex Accusativo Græco tertiae inflexionis, nascitur nominativus primæ: ut, à crater, Accusativo cratera, &c.

Gemina nonnullis est terminatio in eadem Declinatione: ut, Clypeus, i: clypeum, i: baculus, i: baculum, baculi, &c.

Quædam in Nominativo tantum variant: ut, vomis & vomer, cucumis cucumber.

Quædam nomina quartæ Declinationis adoptant quos-dam casus obliquos secundæ.

Pinus

Anomala Adjectiva.

Pinus and Cornus are rather of the fourth than the second Declension.

Gradere ad infernos specus, Sen. Trag. Abl. penus & specus.

Irregular Adjectives,

Tandundem, even so much. Sing. Nom. Rule 1. & Acc. Tandundem. Gen. Tantidem.

Mactus, increased or augmented. Sing. Nom. Mactus. Voc. Macte. Plur. Nom. Macti.

Plus, more. Sing. Nom. & Acc. Plus. Gen. Pluris. Plu. Nom. Plures & plura. Gen. plurium. Dat. pluribus, &c.

Plerique, many, the most part. Singulari caret. Plur. Plerique, pleræque pleraque.

Singuli, every one, each, it is seldom read in the singular number. Plur. Nom. singuli, singulæ, singula. Gen. singulorum, &c. Necesse, needs, of necessity. Sing. Nom. & Acc. Necesse, and necessum, necessary, or needful. Sing. Nom. & Acc. necessum, of the Neuter Gender.

Nequam, an ill man, a naughty unthrift, undivided in both numbers.

Tot, so many. Plur. tot per omnes casus. Quot, how many. Plur. quot per omnes casus. Totidem, even, or just so many. Plur. totidem per omnes casus. Aliquot, some. Plur. aliquot, per omnes casus.

Nouns of number from three to an hundred Plurals, are not declined: as, quatuor non variantur ut quatuor, quinq; sex, four. Plur. quatuor & cætera cardinalia, per omnes casus. Quinque, five; sex, six; and the residue of Cardinals. Numeralia à tribus ad centum pluralia non variantur ut quatuor, quinq; sex, four. & cætera cardinalia, per omnes casus. Mille,

Anomala Adjectiva.

Mille, a thousand, when it is an **Adjective**, it is undeclined in the plural number: as, *Plur. Mille per omnes casus.* But mille, when it is a **Substantive**, it is declined in the plural number: as, *Plur. Nom. Millia. Gen. Millium. Dat. Millibus.*

Rule 3:

These Adjectives take three terminations in the Nominative case singular: celer, swift, and celeber, well renowned.

Acer, sharp, or tart. Alacer, cheerful, quick of spirit. Pedester, a foot man. Equester, a horse man. Saluber, healthful, wholesome. Campester, of the plain, or Champion Country, or Field. Sylvester, of a Wood, or Forest. Paluster, of, or belonging to a Fen, or Marsh: as,

Sing. *Nom. Acer, masc. Acris, fœm. Acre, neut. oꝝ,*

Nom. Aeris, masc. and fœm. and Acre, neut.

Gen. Acris.

Dat. Acri, &c. like tristis.

So celer, celeris, celere, oꝝ *Nom. celeris, masc. & fœm. celere, neut. Gen. celeris, &c.*

Locuples, rich, abundant. Uber, fertill, fruitfull. Degener, unnable, growing out of kind. Pauper, poor, needy. Inops, poor, needy. Sospes, whole, safe. Superstes, a survivor. Comis, gentle, milde. Puber, full grown. Memor, mindful, are seldom read in the *Ælfric*.

Hæc Adjectiva tres sortiuntur terminaciones in Nominativo singulari, celer, atque celeber.

Anomala Adjectiva.

ter gender, especially in the plural number.

Adjectives Irregular, in comparison.

Adjectives which are derived of dico, loquor, volo, facio, form the degrees as it were from positives in ens: as, maledicus, maledicentior, maledicentissimus.

Quæ derivantur à Rule 4. dico, loquor, volo, facio, formant gradus tanquam à positivis in ens: ut, maledicus.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bonus, good.	melior, better.	optimus, best.
malus, ill.	pejor, worse.	pessimus, worst.
magnus, great.	major, greater.	maximus, greatest.
multus, much.	plus, more.	plurimus, very much.
vetus, old.	veterior, elder.	veterimus, eldest.
deter, ill.	deterior, worse.	deterrimus, worst.
nequam, lewd.	nequior, more lewd.	nequissimus, most lewd.

These are forsaken of the positive: prior, the former: primus, the first: ocior, more swift: ocissimus, swiftest: penitior, more inward: penitissimus, as far in as can be;

These are forsaken of the Comparative degree.

Positivo destitu- Rule 5. untur ista: prior, primus, ocior, ocissimus; penitior, penitissimus.

Comparativo de- Rule 6. stituntur ista. Novus,

Anomala Adjectiva.

Novus, new. Novissimus, the last or hindermost. Invitus, unwilling. Invitissimus, most unwilling, against heart and mind. Inclytus, glorious, famous. Inclytissimus, most glorious or excellent. Diversus, divers, or unlike. Diversissimus, most differing or unlike. Meritus, that hath deserved. Meritissimus, that hath most deserved. Sacer, holy or consecrated. Sacerrimus, most holy. Falsus, deceived, or false. Falsissimus, most false. Fidus, trusty. Fidissimus, most trusty. Nuperus, late done. Nuperimus, last done.

Rule 7. These Adjectives Superlativo carent want the Superlative ista. degree.

*Positiva sunt Sini-
stimus
Dextimus. Dexter, right. Dexterior, more of the right hand. Sinister, on the left hand. Sinistri-
or, more on the left hand. Optimus, fat, rich, plentiful. Optimor, more fat or rich. Juvenis, young. Junior, younger. Senex, old. Senior, elder. Declivis, bending downward. Declivi-
or, more bending downward. Longinquus, far off. Longinquier, farther off. Salutaris, wholesome. Salutario, more wholesome. Supinus, upward, also negligent. Supinor, more idle, or negligent.*

Rule 8. Anterior, the for-
mer, and Licentior,
over-liberal, want the
Positive and Superla-
tive degree.

Anterior & Li-
centior, Positivo ca-
rent, & Superlativo,

Finis Libri Tertii.



THE FOURTH BOOK.

*Rules concerning the Preterperfect
Tense and Supines of Verbs.*

A General Rule.

The syllable which is doubled in the beginning, or forepart of the Preterperf. Tense of the uncompounded Verb, is not doubled in the Supines, nor yet in the Preterperfect Tenses, and Supines of Verbs compounded: as, pendo, to weigh. Suspendo, to hang up, or hang upon.

Syllaba quæ in Rule, simplicis præteriti fronte geminatur in supinis non geminatur, uti nec in præteritis & supinis compositorum: ut, pen- do, pependi, pensum, suspendo, suspendi, suspensum.

Exception:

In the Compounds of do, to give, disco, to learn, posco, to require, and also in some Compounds of pingo, to prick, and curro, to run, the syllable of the Preterperfect Tense is doubled.

Concer-

Concerning the Preterperfect Tense, and Supine of Verbs of the first Conjugation.

Rule 1.

O, as, amo : as, as,
amas, in the Present
Tense formeth the Pre-
terperfect Tense in avi:
as, amavi, and the
Supine in atum : as,
amatum.

Exercise to
decline
these verbs
as you
learn them.

Plico, plicavi, plicatum, to fold.
Multiplico, multiplicavi, multiplicatum, to
multiply.

Supplico, supplicavi, supplicatum, to intreat.
Replico, replicavi, replicatum, to reply, or
unfold.

Duplico, duplicavi, duplicatum, to double.
Triplico, triplicavi, triplicatum, to triple.

Applicatus Applico, { applicui, } applicitum, } to apply
applicau- { applicavi, } applicatum, }
rus.

Expli- { explicui, } explicitum, } to un-
co, { explicavi, } explicatum, } fold.

Implico, { implicui, } implicitum, } to fold
implicau- { implicavi, } implicatum, } in.

Complicatus Com- { Complicui, } Complicitum, } to wrap
compli- plico, { Complicavi, } Complicatum, } together.

Exception

Exception.

Juvo, juvi, jutum, and adjūvo, adjūvi, ad-
jutum, to help. Lavo, lavi, lavatum, to wash.
Poto, poravi, potatum, and potum, to drink.
Cubo, cubui, cubitum, to lie down. Domo,
domui, domitum, to tame. Sono, sonui, so-
nitum, to sound. Tono, tonui, tonitum, to
thunder. Attōno, attonui, attonitum, to
make abashed. Crepo, crepui, crepitum, to
give a crack. Veto, vetui, vetitum, to for-
bid. Frico, fricui, frictum, to rub. Mico,
micui, without Supines, to shine. Neco,
necui, necum, to kill. Seco, secui, sectum,
to cut. Do, dedi, datum, to give. Circundo,
circundēdi, circundātum, to compass about.
Pessundo, pessundēdi, pessundātum, to
tread, or cast under foot, to undo. Satisdo,
satisfēdi, satisfātum, to put in sufficient sure-
ties for performance of covenants. Venundo,
venundēdi, venundātum, to sell. Sto, steti,
statum, to stand. Circumsto, circumsteti, to
compass, or stand about, the rest of the Com-
pounds have stīti in the Preterperfect
Tense, and stītum in the Supine. Nexo,
to knit. Labo, to waver, lack Preterperfect
Tense, and Supines.

These in the Com-

pounds change a into

mutant a in e : dam-
no : damno, to con-
demn : lacto, to allure:sacro, to dedicate: tra-
eto, to handle :

patro, to commit : as,

Condemno, condemnavi, condemnatum,

Hæc in compositis Rule 22

mutant a in e : dam-
no, lacto, sacro, tra-
eto, patro.

to

The Pret. Tense and Sup. of Verbs

to condemn. Delecto, delectavi, delectatum, *to delight.* Consecro, consecravi, consecratum, *to dedicate.* Detrecto, detrectavi, detrectatum, *to shift off, or refuse to do.* Perpetro, perpetravi, perpetratum, *to commit.* Excepi, Retracto, *to draw back.* Pertracto, *to handle much.* Ablacto, *to wean, which keep a.*

Rule 3.

The Compounds of calco, to tread upon, or stamp down; salto, to leap, change a into u ; as, inculco, to pour in, or often to repeat. Insulto, to leap up, or to rebound.

Composita à calco
salto mutant (a) in
(u) ut, inculcō, insulto.

Annotations.

1. Observe that many of the Verbs excepted to the first rule, have sometimes the Preterperfect Tense in avi : as, resonavi, and dimicavi usually.

2. Exercise your self to understand whether the Verb swerves or departs from the general rule in the Preterperfect Tense, or Supine, or both. For example, I would know, whether seco, secui, sectum, be excepted in the Pret. perf. Tense, or sup. or in both. First, I seek the deseged or reserved Letters, by cutting off o from seco, and there is left sec. To these I add avi, atum, secavi, sectum, and the exception being secui, sectum, it appears that the Preterperfect Tense and Supine are excepted.

But

of the second Conjugation.

But in lavo, lavi, lavatum, the Preterperfect Tense only.

3. Dissolve the Compound Verb: as, inculco, is compounded of in and calco, &c. and besides the ordinary declining of every Verb, give the Cognate Tenses from the Present and Preterperfect tens, lib. i. p. 96.

The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the second Conjugation.

E O, es, in the Present Tense, formeth the Preterperfect Tense in ui, and the Supine in itum: as, habeo, habes, habui, habitum, posthabeo, posthabes, posthabui, posthabitum.

E O, es in præsenti Rule 1. Perfectum format in ui, supinum in itum: ut, habeo, habes, habui, habitum, posthabeo, posthabes, posthabui, posthabitum.

All other Compounds of habeo, change ha into hi: as,

Adhibeo, adhibui, adhibitum, to use. Cohibeo, cohibus, cohibitum, to restrain. Exhibeo, exhibui, exhibitum, to present. Inhibeo, inhibui, inhibitum, to withhold. Perhibeo, perhibui, perhibitum, to affirm. Prohibeo, prohibui, prohibitum, to forbid. Redhibeo, Redhibui, Redhibitum, to sue or compel the seller to take again the thing that is sold by him.

Exception

Exception:

beo.

Jubeo, jussi, jussum, to command. Sorbeo,
sorbui, sorptum, to sup any moisture.

ceo.

Doceo, docui, doctum, to teach. Misceo,
misci, mistum, to mingle. Mulceo, mulsi,
mulsum, to pacifie, or mitigate.

deo.

Suadeo, suasi, suasum, to counsel. Sedeo,
sedi, sessum, to sit. Supersedeo, supersedi,
supercessum, to omit, or ease. Circumsedeo,
circumsedi, circumcessum, to sit round.

All other the Compounds of sedeo,
change se into si : as,

Affideo, affedi, affessum, to sit nigh unto.
Consideo, consedi, confessum, to sit together.
Desideo, desedi, defessum, to sit still idle.
Insideo, insedi, insessum, to sit upon. Obsi-
deo, obsedi, obfessum, to besiege. Persideo,
persedi, persessum, to sit still. Præsideo, præ-
sedi, præfessum, to be in dignity. Resideo, re-
sedi, resessum, to rest in a place. Subsideo, sub-
sedi, subfessum, to sit under. Frendeo, fren-
di, fressum, to gnash with the teeth. Video,
vidi, visum, to see. Rideo, risi, risum, to
laugh at. Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. Mor-
deo, momordi, morsum, to bite. Spondeo,
sponsandi, sponsum, to promise freely. Ton-
deo, totondi, tonsum, to clip, or shear. Pran-
deo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

geo.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe, or make
clean. Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant
lightly, or to make much of one. Mulgeo,
mulxi, and mulsi, mulctum, to milk or stroak.
Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. Lugeo, lu-
xi, luctum, to mourn, or lament.

Deleo,

of the second Conjugation.

Deleo, delevi, deletum, to deface, or blot a
thing written. Fleo, flevi, fletum, to weep.
Impleo, implevi, impletum, to fill.

Maneo, mansi, mansum, to tarry, or remain.
Permaneo, permansi, permansum, to abide to
the end. Remaneo, remansi, remansum, to
tarry behind. Commaneo, commandsi, com-
mansum, to tarry, or abide together. Ema-
neo, emansi, emansum, to stay out of a place,
Obmaneo, obmansi, obmansum, to abide long.
Intermaneo, intermansi, intermansum, to
stay between.

The Compounds of maneo, which change
ma into mi, make the Preterperfect
Tense in ui, and want the Supines:
as,

Emineo, eminui, to be higher then others.
Immmineo, imminui, to hang over. Promi-
neo, prominui, to appear, and stand out far-
ther then another, to extend. Præmineo,
præminui, to appear before others. Superemi-
neo, supereminui, to excel much, or overcome.
Teneo, tenui, tentum, to hold.

The Compounds of teneo, change te into
ti : as,

Contineo, continui, contentum, to contain.
Retineo, retinui, retentum, to retain.
Detineo, detinui, detentum, to detain. At-
tineo, attinui, to attain, without Supines.
Pertineo, pertinui, to reach, or pertain, with-
out Supines. Abstineo, abstinui, to abstain,
without Supines.

Torqueo, torsti, tortum, to wreath.

queo,
Hæreo,

reо.

feо.
veо.

ieо.

Rule 2.

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick to. Torreo, torrui, torsum, to rost.

Censeo, censui, censum, to suppose or think.

Caveo, cavi, cautum, to beware. Faveo, favi, fautum, to favour. Moveo, movi, motum, to move. Foveo, fovi, fotumi, to cherish. Voveo, vovi, votuni, to vow.

Cieo, civi, citum, to provoke or move to anger. Vieo, vievi, vietum, to bind.

These want the Preterperfect Tense, and moreover the Supine: Polleo, to be able. Renideo, to shine. Glabro, to be naked or bare. Denseo, to congeal or thicken. Flaveo, to be yellow. Liveo, to be black and blew. Clueo, to be named, or esteemed. Medeor, to heal.

Polleo, polles, sine præterito, pollere, pollendi, pollendo, pollendum, sine Supinis pollens, so decitne the rest.

Rule 3.

These want the Supines onely; arceo, to drive away. Abarceo, to prohibit.

Two Compounds of arceo, change a into e, and have the Supines: as, exerceo, exercui, exercitum, to exercise. Coerceo, coercui, coercitum, to restrain or keep in.

Egeo, egui, to want, without Supines. Indigeo, indigui, to lack, sine Supinis. Aceo, acui, to be eager, tart, or sownre. Luceo,

luxi,

of the second Conjugation:-

Luxi, to shine. Pendeo, pependi, to hang or be hanged. Strideo, stridi, to make a noise or crash. Algeo, alsi, to chill for cold. Fulgeo, fulsi, to shine or glister. Turgeo, turfi, to swell up or grow big. Urgeo, ursi, to presse out, to urge. Frigeo, frixi, to be cold. Neo, nevi, to spin. Liqueo, licui, to melt. Pateo, patui, to be opened. Paveo, pavi, to fear. Ferveo, fervi, and ferbui, to be hot. Conniveo, connivi and connixi, to wink with the eyes. Langueo, langui, to languish. Timeo, timui, to fear.

Timeo, times, timui, timere, timendi timendo, timendum, sine Supinis, timens &c.

Verbs Neuters in the second Conjugation which form the Preterperfect Tense in ui, want the Supines.

Neutra secundâ Rule 4.
Conjugatione quæ formant præteritum per ui carent Supinis: ut, madeo, madiui, to be moist.

Except.

Placeo, placui, placitum, to please. Complaceo, complacui, complacitum, to please very well. Perplaceo, perplacui, perplacitum, to content very much. Beneplaceo, beneplacui, beneplacitum, to please well.

Displaceo, disprivci, to displease, wants the Supines. Taceo, tacui, tacitum, to keep silence: but Conticeo, conticui, to hold ones peace. Obticeo, obticui, to keep silence. Reticco, reticui, to keep silence.

The Pres. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

Subticeo, Subticui, to keep silence, being Compounds of taceo, changing ta into ti, lack the Supines. Noceo, nocui, nocitum, to hurt. Caleo, calui, calitum, to be hot. Valeo, valui, valitum, to be able of force, and power. Olco, olui, olitum, to sent or favour. Suboleo, subolui, subolitum, to smell a little. Redoleo, redolui, redolitum, to smell sweet. Oboleo, obolui, obolitum, to stink. Exoleo, exolevi, exoletum, to grow into oblivion. Obsoleo, obsolevi, obsoletum, to wax old. Aboleo, abolevi, abolitum, to abolish. Adoleo, adolevi, adulatum, to begin to grow. Doleo, dolui, dolitum, to be grieved. Pareo, parui, paritum, to obey. Careo, carui, caritum, to want. Lateo, latui, latitum, to lie hid. Diliteo, dilitui, to lurk, wants the Sup.

*Neuter
Pa lives
are so cal-
led either
in respect
of their
Passive sig-
nification,
or Pret.
Tense, or
both.

Neuter Passives * wanting Supines.

Audeo, ausus sum, to be bold or to dare. Gaudeo, gayitus sum, to rejoice or to be glad. Soleo, to be accustomed, solitus sum. Mocreo, moctus sum, to be sad.

Audeo audes, ausus sum, or ausus fui. Audere, audendi, audendo, audendum, sine Supinis, audens; in like manner declining the rest.

Verbs Deponents of the second Conju- gation, lacking Supines.

Reor, ratus sum, to think or suppose. Misereor, misertus sum, to pity. Fateor, fassus sum, to confess.

Th

of the second Conjugation.

The Compounds of fateor, change fa into fi: as,

Confiteor, confessus sum, to confess. Profiteor, professus sum, to profess. Diffiteor, sine præterito, to deny. Tueor, tui-
tus sum, to defend.

Note.

Deponents are declined like Verbs Passives, saving that they have Gerunds, the first Supine, and the Participle of the present Tense, and future in ius, like as Active. And also the latter Supine and future in clus, if they will govern an Accusative or Ablative case: as, complector, complect̄ris vel complect̄re, complexus sum vel fui, complect̄i, complect̄endi, complectendo, complectendum, complexum, complexu, complectens, complexurus, complexus, complectendus.

Verbs Impersonals of the second Conjugation having two Preterperfect Tenses, one of the Active, another of the Passive.

Libet, libuit, and libitum est, it liketh or contenteth. Licet, licuit, and licitum est, it is lawfull. Pertædet, pertæduit, and pertæsum est, to loath greatly or to be very weary of. Pudet, puduit, and puditum est, to be ashamed. Piget, piguit, and pigitum est, it grie-
veth

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

veth or repenteth. Miseret, it pitieh, hath only misertum est. Liquet, it appeareth, or it is clear, hath no Preterperfect Tense. Poenitet, poenituit, it repenteth. Libet, libebat, libuit, and libitum est, or libitum fuit, libuerat and libitum erat, or libitum fuerat, libebit, Imperat. libeat, &c.

The Preterperfect Tense and Supines of Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

To find the Preterper. Tense and sup. of verbs of the Third Conjugation, observe the last syllable of the first person of the Present Tense, according to the order of the letters.

I: B O.

Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, to write. Nubo, nupsi, nuptum, to be married.

Bibo, bibi, bibitum, to drink. Incumbo, incubui, incubitum, to lean upon, or endeavour earnestly. Decumbo, decubui, decubitum, to lye down. Occumbo, occubui, occubitum, to dye or lye down. Procumbo, procubui, procubitum, to lye flat or groveling.

2. Co.

Dico, dixi, dictum, to say. Duco, duxi, ductum, to lead. Ico, ici, ictum, to strike. Vinco, vici, victum, to overcome. Parco, pepercii & parsi, parcitum & parsum, to spare.

3. Sco.

of the Third Conjugation.

3. Sco.

Nosco, novi, notum, to know. Agnosco, agnovi, agnatum, to acknowledge. Cognosco, cognovi, cognitum, to know. Ignosco, ignovi, ignotum, to pardon or know well. Cresco, crevi, cretum, to grow or increase. Pasco, pavi, pastum, to feed. Depasco, depavi, depastum, to eat all. Epasco, epavi, epastum, to consume all. Compasco, compavi, compastum, to feed together. Compesco, compescui, compescitum, to restrain. Dispasco, dispescui, dispescitum, to drive away beasts from pasture. Impesco, to turn beasts into rank corn, which these Compounds change pasco into pesco. Quiesco, quievi, quietum, to rest. Acquiesco, acquievi, acquietum, to obey. So conquiesco, to abide. Requiesco, to rest. Suesco, suevi, suetum, to wont, or accustom, or to bee accustomed. Whence Suetus sum, I am accustomed. So Assuesco, to practise by custome. Consuesco, to use a thing much.

Desuesco, to change ones fashion. Disseresco, to disaccustome; and Insuesco, to bee trained in a thing.

4. Do.

Edo, edi, esum, to eat. Comedo, comedii, comesum, and comeditum, to eat together.

Abedo, abedi, abesum, to gnaw. Ambedo, ambedi, ambesum, to eat about. Exedo, exedi, exesum, to eat up.

Superedo, superedi, superesum, to eat more. Obedo, obedi, obesum, to consume. Peredo, peredi, peresum, to eate quite through. Subedo, subedi, subesum, to eat underneath. Mando, mandi, mansum, to eat. Scando, scandi, scansum, to climbe. Ascendo, ascendit, ascentum, to mount up, with the rest of the Compounds, change scando into scando, and scansum into scensum: as, conscendo, concendi, concensum, to mount up. Descendo, descendit, descensum, to descend, go or sink down.

Inscendo, inseendi, incensum, to climbe up unto. Cudo, cudi, cusum, to forge as Smiths do. Prehendo,prehendi, prehensum; to take. Accendo, accendi, accensum, to kindle. Incendo, incendi, incensum, to inflame. Defendo, defendi, defensum, to defend, save or preserve. Offendo, offendit, offensum, to finde by chance or do amiss. Claudio, clausi, clausum, to shut. The Compounds of claudio change claudio, clausi, clausum, into cludo, clusi, clusum: as, acclaldo, acclusi, acclusum, to hold in. Concludo, conclusi, conclusum, to conclude. So Circumcludo, to close about. Excludo, to shut out. Includo, to close in. Occludo, to shut against. Percludo, to shut fast. Praecludo, to shut up or stop. Recludo, to open or reveal. Plaudo, plausi, plausum, to applaud. Applaudo, applausi, applausum, to clap hands for joy. Complundo, complausi, complausum, to clap hands for joy. Displodo, displifi, displosum, to break in sunder with a noise, to shoot off. Explodo, explofi, explosum, to biffe out. Rado, rasi, rasum, to shave.

Vado,

Vado, vasi, vasum, to go; which preter-perfect tense and supine is scarce to bee found. Evado, evasi, evasum, to escape. Invado, invasi, invasum, to invade or lay hold on. Circumvado, circumvasi, circumvasum, to go about. Pervado, pervasi, pervasum, to go through. Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt. Oblædo, oblæsi, oblæsum, to hurt sore. Allido, allisi, allisum, to dash or bruise; and the rest of the Compounds change læ into li: as, Collido, collisi, collisum, to knock or bruise together. Divido, divisi, divisum, to divide. Rodo, rosi, rosum, to gnaw. Ludo, lusi, lusum, to play. Trudo, trusi, trusum, to thrust out with violence. Fundo, fudi, fusum, to pour out. Findo, fidi, fissum, to cleave. Scindo, scidi, scissum, to cut. Pando, pandi, passum and pansum, to open. Cado, cecidi, casum, to fall. Occido, occidi, occasum, to fall n-gangt, to die; with the rest of the Compounds, change ca into ci, but want the Supines: as, Accido, accidi, to fall or happen to. Excido, excidi, to fall out or fall away. Decido, decidi, to fall away. Incido, incidi, to fall in, to happen. Recido, recidi, to fall backward. Succido, succidi, to fall under. Procidio, procidi, to fall down. Supercido, supercidi, to fall upon. Concido, concidi, to fall together. Intercido, intercidi, to fall be-twixt. Cædo, cæcidi, cæsum, to beat or cut. The Compounds of cædo change cæ into ci: as: Ascido, ascidi, ascisum, to cut asunder. Excido, excidi, excisum, to destroy. Incido, incidi, incisum, to tear in pieces. Occido, occidi, occisum, to kill. Percido, percidi, percisum, to knock and beat vehemently. Präcido,

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

cido, præcidi, præcīsum, to strike or chop off. Intercido, intercidi, intercīsum, to cut down or cut asunder. Recido, recidi, recīsum, to cut again. Cedo, cessi, cēsum, to give place. Pendo, pependi, pensum, to weigh. Tendo, tetendi, tensum, and tentum, to stretch out. Ostendo, ostendi, ostēsum, and ostētum, to shew, or tell. Pedo, pepedi, peditum, to belch backward. Tundo, tutudi, tunsum and tusum, to knock. Contundo, contūdi, contūsum, to beat.

The Compounds of Composita à do do form dīdi in the formant dīdi, dītum: Preterperfect Tense, ut, edo, ēdīdi, ēdī- and ditum in the Su- tum, to utter. pine.

Reddo, reddi, redditum, to restore. Perdo, perdidi, perditum, to loose. Abdo, abdīdi, abdītum, to hide. Obdo, obdīdi, obdītum, to thrust against. Dedo, dedīdi, dedītum, to yeild. Condo, condidi, condītum, to build. Indo, indīdi, indītum, to put in. Trado, tradīdi, tradītum, to deliver. Prodo, prodīdi, prodītum, to betray, Vendo, vendīdi, vendītum, to sell. Credo, credīdi, creditum, to believe. Abscondo, abscondi, and abscondīdi, absconsim, and abscondītum, to hide.

Go.

Rego, rexī, rectum, to rule.

The Compounds of rego change re into ri, as,

Corrigo, correxi, correctum, to correct or amend. Porrigo, porrexi, porrectum, to stretch

of the Third Conjugation.

stretch, or reach out. Surgo, surrexi, surrectum, to arise. Pergo, perrexi, perrectum, to go or proceed. Tego, texi, tectum, to cover. Affligo, afflīxi, afflictum, to beat the ground. Infligo, inflīxi, inflīctum, to cast violently or fling. Sugo, suxi suctum, to suck. Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, to gird or inclose. Lingo, linxi, linctum, to lick. Tingo, tinxi, tinctum, to die color. Extinguo, extinxi, extinctum, to quench or put out any thing that burneth. Distinguo, distinxi, distinctum, to divide or separate. Plango, planxi, planctum, to lament. Un- go, unxi, unctum, to anoint. Jungo, junxi junctum, to joyn. Emungo, emunxi, emunctum, to snuffe a candle. Fingo, finxi fictum, to counterfeit. Pingo, pinxi, pictum to paint. Stringo, strinxi, strictum, to binde. Frigo, frixi, frictum, and frixum, to fry, or parch.

Figo, fixi, fictum, to fasten. Lego, legi, lectum; to read. Allēgo, allēgi, allectum, to ascribe or choose. Perlēgo, perlēgi, perlēctum, to read over. Prælego, prælegi, prælectum, to read to, as a Master in expounding to his Scholars. Relēgo, relegi, relectum, to read again. Sublēgo, sublēgi, sublectum to touch lightly.

Other Compounds of lego change le into li : as, Deligo, delegi, delectum, to choose. Seligo, selegi, selectum, to choose out. Eligo, elegi, electum, to elect: But Diligo, dilexi, dilectum, to love; and negligi, neglexi, neglectum, to neglect; intelligi, intellexi, intellectum, to understand. Ago, agi, agiū, to do. Perago, peregi, peractum, to perform.

The Pret. Tense, and Sup:of Verbs

Circumago circumegi circumactum, to turn or wind about. **Satago sategi**, to be busie about a thing; it wants the Supines. The rest of the Compounds of ago change a into i: as,

Abigo abegi abactum, to drive from. **Adigo adegi adactum**, to bring or drive to. **Exigo exegi exactum**, to expel or require. **Subigo subegi subactum**, to drive or bring under. **Transigo transegi transactum**, to drive thow. But **Cogo coegi coactum**, to compel. **Prodigo prodegi**, to spend riotously. **Dego degi**, to live; which two want the Supines. **Frango fregi fractum**, to break.

The Compounds of frango change fran into frin: as,

Adfringo, to break, as against a wall, adfringi, adfractum. **Confringo confregi**, confractum, to break or bruise. **Defringo defregi defractum**, to break off. **Effringo effregi effractum**, to break in pieces. **Infringo infregi infractum**, to tear. **Perfringo perfregi perfractum**, to break open. **Præfringo præfregi praefractum**, to break before. **Refringo refregi refractum**, to diminish. **Diffringo diffregi diffractum**, to break in pieces, to bruise.

Tango tetigi tactum, to touch.

The Compounds of tango change ta into ti: as,

Contingo contigi contactum, to reach to.

Attingo

of the Third Conjugation.

Attingo attigi attactum, to touch lightly.

Pango panxi, and **pegi pactum**, to fasten or plant. **Expango expegi expanxi expandum**, to ordain or appoint. So **Circumpango**, to set all about. **Depango**, to plant or set. **Oppango**, to fasten or join. **Repango**, to fasten again. **Compingo compegi compactum**, to put together. **Impingo impeggi impactum**, to dash or hit against, change pa into pi.

Pago pepigi pactum, to contract or make a bargain. **Pungo pupugi** and **punxi punctum**, to prick. **Repungo repupugi** and **repunxi repunctum**, to sting against. **Compungo compunxi compunctum**, to punish. **Dispungo dispunxi dispunctum**, to put out things written. **Mergo mersi mersum**, to drown. **Tergo tersi tersum**, to wipe or make clean. **Spargo sparsi sparsum**, to sprinkle. **Præspargo præsparsi præsparsum**, to strew or scatter before. **Prospergo prospersi prospersum**, to sprinkle all about; with the rest of the Compounds change spargo into spergo, and sparsum into spersum: as,

Aspergo aspersi aspersum, to cast upon. **Conspergo conspersi conspersum**, to strew. **Circumspergo circumspersi circumspersum**, to cast about. **Inspergo inspersi inspersum**, to cast upon. **Perspergo perspersi perspersum**, to scatter all over. And **Respargo Respersi respersum**, to cast water or other liquor.

Ho, xi, tum:

Traho traxi traſtem, to draw; Attra-
ho

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

ho, attraxi, attractum, to draw to. Contraho, contraxi, contractum, to bargain. Detraho, detraxi, detractum, to draw from. Distraho, distraxi, destractum, to draw asunder. Extraho, extraxi, extractum, to draw out. Pertraho, pertraxi, pertractum, to draw by force. Retraho, retraxi, retractum, to draw back. Subtraho, subtraxi, subtractum, to withdraw. Protraho, protraxi, protractum, to draw forth with violence, also to prolong. Veho, vesi, vectum, to carry. Conveho, convexi, convectum, to carry by ship. Eveho, evexi, evectum, to carry aloft, &c.

Lo.

Colo, colui, cultum, to till. Occulo, occultui, occultum, to hide. Consulo, consului, consultum, to counsell. Molo, molui, molitum, to grind. Alo, alui, alitum, and alrum, to nourish. Sallo, salli, salsum, to season with salt. Pello, pepuli, pulsum, to drive away. Vello, velli, and vulsi, vulsum, to pluck up by the roots. Avello, avelli, and avulsi, to pluck away. Revello, revelli, and revulsi, to pluck again, or pluck away clean. Fallo, fefelli, fallum, to deceive. Refello, refelli, to refute or reprove, lack Supineness. Excello, excellui, excelsum, to excel. Præcello, præcellui, præcelsum, to surpass, of the old ~~With~~ cello. Percello, perculti, percultum, to strike. Antecello, antecellui, to excel or surprise, wants the Supine. Tollo, sustuli, sublatum, to lift or set up. Extollo, extuli, elatum, to heave up.

Sustol-

of the Third Conjugation:

Sustollo, sustuli, sublatum, to lift on high.

Mo.

Emo, emi, emtum, to buy. Coemo, coemi, coemtum, to buy with others.

The rest of the Compounds of emo change e into i: ag,

Eximo, exemii, exemptum, to take away. Perimo, peremi, peremptum, to kill or destroy. Redimo, redemi, redemptum, to redeem or ransom. Como, comsi, comtum, to comb or trim. Promo, promsi, promtum, to draw. Sumo, sumsi, sumtum, to take. Premo, pressi, pressum, to prese. The Compounds change pre into pri: ag, Apprimo, appressi, appressum, to prese together. Deprimo, depressi, depressum, to weigh down. Com-primo, compressi, compressum, to refrain. Exprimio, expressi, expressum, to expresse. Expressum, to wring forth or expresse. Im-primo, impressi, impressum, to mark. Opprimo, oppressi, oppressum, to oppresse. Per-primo, perpressi, perpressum, to prese hard. Reprimo, repressi, repressum, to represse. Sup-primo, suppressi, suppressum, to supprese. Fremo, fremui, fremitum, to roar. Gemo, gemui, gemitum, to groan. Vomo, vomui, vomitum to vomit.

No.

Sperno, sprevi, spretum, to despise.

Sterno, stravi, stratum, to strew. Sino, sivi, situni

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

*Concerno, to
see clearly.*

situm, to suffer. Lino levi litum, to besmeare. Cerno, to see; wants the preterperfect tense and supines. But cerno, to enter upon or possess, crevi cretum, an old Herb. Decerno decrevi decretum, to judge. Discerno discrevi discretum, to know well and distinctly. Excerno excrevi excretum, to purge. Incerno increvi incretum, to try by sifting. Secerno secrevi secretum, to divide. Temno temsi tentum, and contemno contemsi contenitum, to despise. Gigno genui genitum, to get. Pono posui positum, to put. Cano cecini cantum, to sing. Concino concinui concentum, to sing in one tune; and the rest of the Compounds which change ca into ci, make the preterperfect tense in ui, and the supines in centum: as, Incino incinui incentum, to fain a small voice. Percino percinui percentum, to continue in singing. Accino accinui accentum, to sing to. Præcino præcinui præcentum, to sing before or foretel. Recino recinui recentum, to sing again. Occino occinui occentum, to sing together, or against. Succino succinui succentum, to make a soft noise.

Po.

Carpo carpsi carpum, to crop. The Compounds of carpo change carpo into cerpo, and carpum into cerptum: as,

Decerpo decerpfi decerptum, to pull or pluck off. Excerpo excerpti excerptum, to take and chuse. Discerpo discerpfi discerptum, to rent or tear in pieces. Concerpo concerpfi.

of the Third Conjugation:

cerpsi concerptum, to pull in pieces. Præcerpo præcerpsi præcerptum, to pick flowers. Serpo serpsi serpentum, to creep. Repo, repsi reptum, to creep or go softly. Scalpo scalpsi scalptum, to scratch. Sculpo scalpsi sculptum, to carve or engrave in metal. Rumpo rupi ruptum, to break. Strepo strepui strepitum, to make a noise.

Quo.

Coquo coxi coctum, to seeth or boil. Relinquo reliqui relictum, to forsake.

Ro.

Sero sevi satum, to sow, plant or set. * Præsevi præstatum, to sow before the time. The Compounds that give sevi in the sum, to set preterperfect tense, give situm in the superlatives: as,

Consero consevi consitum, to plant or subsero, to sow together. Insero insevi insitum, to plant under a or ingraft. Assero assevi assitum, to sow thing. or plant nigh. Circumsero circumsevi circumsitum, to plant about. Desero desitum, to sow or plant. Dissero sevi situm, to sow abroad. Intersero intersevi intersitum, to sow or plant between. Persero perservi persitum, to sow all over.

Sero in another signification gives serui, fertum.

Sero serui fertum, to approach, set by, or lay in order. Assero asserui assertum, to affirm. Conservo conserui consertum, to mingle.

Vitæ insere-gle. Desero, deserui, desertum, to leave.
re aliquem,^a to bring ² man to life. Insero, inserui, insertum, to bring into. Intersero, interserui, intersertum, to put between, to mingle. Differo, differui, differtum, to dispute. Exero, exerui, exertum, to put forth. Gero, gessi, gestum, to bear. Vero, verri, versum, to draw or pull away. Uro, ussi, ustum, to burn. Tero, trivi, tritum, to wear. Curro, cucurri, cursum, to run. Præcurro, præcurri, præcursum, to runne before. Excurro, excurri, excucurri, excusum, to run out. Procurro, procucurri, procursum, to run on. Decurro, decurri, and decucurri, to run down in hast. Accurro, accurri, accusum, to run to.. Concurro, concurri, concusum, to run together. Discurro, discurri, discursum, to run up and down. Recurro, recurri, recursum, to run again; with the rest of the Compounds cast away the reduplication. Quæro, quæsivi, quæsum, to seek.

The Compounds of quæro change quæ into qui: as,

Acquiro, acquisivi, acquisitum, to obtain. Conquiro, conquisivi, conquisitum, to search for. Exquiro, exquisivi, exquisitum, to search or try out. Inquiro, inquisivi, inquisitum, to examine. Perquiro, perquisivi, perquisitum, to seek carefully. Requiero, requisivi, requisitum, to seek again. Fero, tuli, latum, to bear or suffer.

So.

Viso, visi, visum, to visit or seek after. Lacesso, lacessivi, lacessitum, to provoke or stir.

fir up. Capesso, capessivi, and capessi, capessitum, to take in hand. Facesto facessivi and facessi facessitum, to goe about to doe. Arcesso arcessivi arcessitum, to call for, to go to call. Depso deplsui deptsitum, to knead dough. Pinsio pinsui pinsitum pinsum and fistum, to bray in a mortar.

To.

Mitto misi missum, to send. Verto verti versum, to turn. Peto petivi petitum, to ask. Meto messui messum, to reap or mow. Flecto flexi flexum, to bend. Necto nexi and nexui nexum, to knit. Plecto plexui, anciently, Plexi plexum to intangle. Pecto pexi and pexui pexum to kemb.

* Sisto stiti statum, to make to stand, an Active.

+ Sisto, steti statum, to stay, remain or appear, a Verb Neuter.

The Compounds of sisto, if they have the Supineness, doe borow's them of sto: as,

Consisto constitū constītū, to stand fast. terito atque Resistō restiti restitū, to withstand. Ob-supino. Composita à sisto obstiti obstitū, to resist. Assisto astīti astītū, to assist or stand by. Circumstō circumstītī circumstītū, to stītū faci-environ. Persisto persistī persistū, to a-unt: sed bide or continue. Desisto destiti destitū, satius est ab eo non usū. Existō extiti extitū, to be or to appear. Insisto institi instītū, to insist. Præsistō præstīti præsti-tū, to stand before.

Sub-

* In Active nulla gignit composita.

+ A bor-towed

pret. and Sup. of sto.

Caret enim proprio pre-

terito atque

resistū.

composita à

obstītū.

assītū.

circumstītū.

stītū faci-

environ.

persistū.

destītū.

existū.

instītū.

præstītū.

stand before.

Danes.

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

Subsistō substīti substītum, to abide or stay still.

Vo.

Solvō solvi solūtum, to loose. *Volvo volvi volutum*, to roll. *Vivo vixi victum*, to live. *Lavo lavi lautum*, sometimes *lautum*, to wash, unused in the third Conjugation. *Diluo dilui dilutum*, to rinse or make clean. *Abluo ablui ablutum*, to wash away or wash off. *Eluo elui elutum*, to wash out. *Prolao prolui prolatum*, to wash much.

Xo.

Texo texui textum, to weave. *Attexo attexui attextum*, to knit or weave with. *Extexo extexui extextum*, to unweave.

Cio.

Faciō feci factum, to do. *Calfaciō calfeci calfactum*, to make hot or warm. *Benefaciō benefeci benefactum*, to do well. *Malefaciō malefeci malefactum*, to do evil. *Olfaciō olfeci olfactum*, to smell out a thing, to suspect. * *Compendefaciō compendefeci*, to abridge. * *Commonefaciō commonefeci commonefactum*, to warne. *Floccifaciō floccifeci floccifactum*, to esteem of small price. *Naucifaciō naucifeci naucifactum*, to esteem little worth. *Satisfaciō satisfeci satisfactum*, to satisfy.

The rest of the Compounds of facio, nos
com-

* Ex. s. su.

of the Third Conjugation,

rounded of a *Noun*, *Verb* or *Adverb*, change *facio intn ficio*, and *factum* into *fectum*: *ag*, *afficio*, *affeci*, *affectum*, to affect. *Conficio*, *confeci*, *confectum*, to finish. *Deficio*, *defeci*, *defectum*, to lack or fail. *Efficio*, *effeci*, *effectum*, to effect. *Inficio*, *infeci*, *infectedum*, to defile or spoil. *Officio*, *offeci*, *offectum*, to hurt. *Perficio*, *perfeci*, *perfectum*, to perform. *Præficio*, *præfeci*, *præfectum*, to ordain or set over. *Proficio*, *profeci*, *profectum*, to profit. *Reficio*, *refeci*, *refectum*, to repair. *Interficio*, *interfeci*, *interfectum*, to kill. *Sufficio*, *suffeci*, *suffectum*, to suffice. *Jacio*, *jeci*, *jactum*, to cast.

The Compounds of jacio, change jacio into *jicio*, and *jactum* into *jectum*: *ag*, *abjicio*, *abjeci*, *abjectum*, to cast away. *Adjicio*, *adjeci*, *adjectum*, to cast or add to. *Conjicio*, *conjeci*, *conjectum*, to conjecture. *Dejicio*, *dejeci*, *dejectum*, to overthrow. *Ejicio*, *ejecti*, *ejectum*, to cast out. *Circumjicio*, *circumjeci*, *circumjectum*, to cast about. *Interjicio*, *interjeci*, *interjectum*, to mingle or cast between. *Præjicio*, *præjeci*, *præjectum*, to fling before. *Projicio*, *projeci*, *projectum*, to fling away. *Subjicio*, *subjeci*, *subjectum*, to lay under. *Superjicio*, & *superjacio*, *superjeci*, *superjectū* & *superjectum*, to lay upon. *Transjicio*, *tranjeci*, *transjectum*, to cast or ferry over. *Aspicio*, *aspexi*, *aspectum*, to behold or look on, in like manner. *Circumspicio*, to look about. *Conspicio*, to behold. *Despicio*, to look down. *Dispicio*, to look about. *Inspicio*, to look on. *Perspicio*, to see plainly. *Præspicio*, to look before. *Prospicio*, to spy afar off. *Respicio*, to look back. *Suspicio*,

The Pret. Tense, and Sup. of Verbs

to look up, also to honour and suspect, are all Compounds of the old Verb Specio.

Allicio allexi allectum, *to allure or entice.* Illicio illexi illectum, *to enduce by allurement.* Pellicio pellexi pelleatum, *to deceive with fair words.* Perlicio perlexi perlectum, *to allure or entice.* But elicio elicui elicitum, *to draw by fair means.* All Compounds of the unused Verb lacio.

Dio.

Fodio fodì fossum, *to digge.* Infodio infodi infossum, *to inter.*

Gio.

Fugio fugi fugitum, *to fly.* **So** confugio, *to fly for help.* Defugio, *to neglect.* Profugio, *to wander,* &c.

Io.

Meio minxi mictum, *to pissé, and commixi comminxi commictum, to pissé together.*

Pio.

Catio cepi captum, *to take.* The Compounds of capio change capio into cipio, and captum into ceptum: as, Accipio accepi acceptum, *to receive.* Concipio concepi conceptum, *to conceive.* Decipio decepi deceptum, *to deceive.*

so.**of the Third Conjugation.**

So Excipio, *to entertain.* Incipio, *to begin.* Percipio, *to perceive.* Recipio, *to receive.* Præcipio, *to command.* Suscipio, *to undertake.* Occipio, *to begin.* Rapiō rapui raptum, *to snatch.* The Compounds of rapiō change rapiō into ripio: and raptum into reptum: as, Arripio arripui arreptum *to take by force.* Abripio abripui abreptum *to take from.* **So** Corripio, *to lay hold on.* Diripio, *to rob or spoil.* Eripio, *to snatch away.* Præripio, *to catch before.* Proripio *to withdraw ones self.* Surripio, *to steal or take away.* Cupio cupivi cupitum, *to desire.*

Rio.

Pario peperi partum, *to bring forth young.* The Compounds of pario are of the fourth Conjugation, and change pa into pe.

Tio.

Quatio quasi quassum, which Preter Tense quasi is scarcely read.

The Compounds of quatio change qua into cu: as, Concutio concussi concussum *to move, to brandish.* Decutio decussi decussum, *to strike off.* Discutio discussi discussum, *to remove or to examine.* Executio excussi excussum, *to shake off.* Incutio incussi incussum, *to dash.* Percutio percussi percussum, *to smite.* Recutio recussi recussum, *to smite again.* Succutio succussi succussum, *to strike under.*

U O.

Induo indui indutum, to cloath. Exuo
exui exutum, to put off. Acuo, acui, acutum,
to whet. Arguo argui argutum, to reprove.
Imbuo imbui imbutum, to infect or to die
cloth. Minuo minui minutum, to diminish.
Suo sui sutum, to sow or stitch. Spuo, spui,
spurum, to spit. Statuo statui statutum,
to appoint.

The Compounds of statuo change sta
into sti: as,

Astituo astitui astitutum, to place by.
Constituo constitui constitutum, to deter
mine. Destituo destitui destitutum, to
forsake. Instituo institui institutum, to in
stitute, begin, ordain, or set in good order.
Prostituo prostitui prostitutum, to profis
tute or set open to every man that cometh. Re
stituo restitui restitutum, to restore. Sub
stituo substitui substitutum, to ordain in
place of another. Sternuo sternui sternu
tum, to sneeze. Tribuo tribui tributum,
to give. Ruo rui ruitum, to rush. Pluvo
plui, and of old, pluvi plutum, to rain. Luo
lui luitum, to pay, satisfy or purge; also to
suffer punishment. Fluo fluxi fluxum, to
flow. Struo struxi structum, to build.

Verbs

Verbs of the Third Conjugation
lacking the Preterperfect Tense
and Supines.

Præterito quacunque carent, careantque
Supino.

1. **V**ergo, to decline or bow. Sido, to settle
or sink. Attollo, to advance. Furo,
to rage or be mad. Glisco, to grow or increase.
Hisco, to gape. Fatisco, to chink, or chap.
Vescor, to eat. Liquor, to melt. Reminiscor,
to remember. Divertor, to turn aside. Præ
vertor, to get before or overtake. Ringor, to
grin or show the teeth.

Vergo, vergis, præterito caret, vergere,
vergendi, vergendo, vergendum, sine Supinis,
vergens, &c.

Divertor, diverteris vel divertere, sine
præterito, diverti, &c.

2. Verbs ending in sco, lack the Preter
perfect Tense and Supines, when they are de
rived of Nouns: as, Ditesco, to wax rich.
Sterilesco, to wax barren. Repuerasco, to
wax a child again, &c.

Verbs in sco descending or coming of
Verbs, borrow their Preterperfect Tense of
the Verbs, from whence they come: as, Te
pesco, to wax warm, hath the Preterperfect
Tense tepeui, from tepeo the Primitive Verb.

3. Passives whose Actives want Supines,
have no Preterperfect Tense: as, metuor, ti
meor, to be afraid, because the Preterperfect
Tense Passive is formed from the latter Su
pine Active.

Verbs

Verbs Deponents of the Third Conjugation.

Labor lapsus sum, to slide. Adipiscor adeptus sum, to get. Comminiscor, com-
mentus sum, to devise, Expergiscor ex-
perctus sum, & expergitus, to awake. I-
rascor iratus sum, to be angry. Nascor na-
tus sum, to be born. Nanciscor nactus sum,
to get. Obliviscor oblitus sum, to forget.
Paciscor pactus sum, to make a bargain.
Proficiscor profectus sum, to goe forward.
Ulciscor ultus sum, to revenge. Fungor,
functus sum, to exercise an office or duty. Fru-
or fructus sum, & fruitus sum, to enjoy.
Loquor, loquutus sum, to speak. Sequor,
sequutus sum, to follow. Queror, questus
sum, to complain. Amplexor amplexus
sum, to embrace. Complector complexus
sum, to comprehend or maintain. Revertor
reversus sum, to return. Nitor nitus &
nixus sum, to endeavour. Utor usus sum, to
use. Morior mortuus sum, to die. Pa-
tior passus sum, to suffer. Gradior gressus
sum, to go by steps. Retrogradior, to re-
coil or to return back.

The Compounds of Gradior change
gra into gre: as,

Agredior aggressus sum, to assail. Cir-
cumgredior circumgressus sum, to go about.
Congredior, to encounter. Digredior, to
go aside. Egredior, to go forth. Ingredior,
to go in. Prægredior, to go before, also to
page

passe by. Progredior, to proceed. Regredi-
or, to go back. Suggredior, to go by stealth. Tuor tuitus sum, to look or behold. Orior
ortus sum, to arise.

Orior hath the second person singular in <sup>Tuor cum
compositis
tertiae Co-</sup>
the Present Indicative of the third and ^{antiquum}
fourth Conjugation and the Infinitive ^{cujus loco}
Mood, atwages of the fourth, the rest of ^{succedit}
the Terminations follow the third Con- <sup>tuor cum
suis compo-</sup>
jugation. ^{sitis tertiae}

Orior orēris or orēre and orīris or orīre ^{Conjugatio-}
ortus sum vel fui, oriri oriendi oriendo ^{nis.}
oriendum, ortus oriens oriturus ^{Danes.} orien-
dus.

Potior potitus sum, to obtain, is usual-
ly if the fourth Conjugation, though some
Terminations are also of the third: as,
potitur and potūtur.

Potior potiris or potire, potitus sum or
potitus fui, potiri potiendi potiendo po-
tiendum potitum potitu potiens potitū-
rus potitus potiendus: Eido fisus sum, to
trust or to believe.

These Verbs seldom
or never retain the Su-
pine.

Hæc raro aut nun-
quam retinebunt
verba Supinum.

Lambo lambi, to lick. Scabo scabi, to
scratch or claw. Disco didici, to learn.
Posco poposci, to require. Psallo psalli,
to sing. Volo volui, to will. Nolo no-
lui, to nil. Malo malui, to be more wil-
ling. Strido stridi, to crash. Rudo, rudi,
to bray like an ass. Ango anxi, to trouble.
Clango clanxi, to sound a trumpet.

L

Ningo.

The fourth Conjugation.

Ningo nimxi, to snow. Tremo tremui, to tremble. Sterto stertui, to snort. Incasso incessi, to invade. Sapio sapui and Sapivi, to be wise, whose Compounds change sa into si: as, Desipio desipui, to be unwise. Insipio insipui, to dote. Resipio resipui, to be wise again. Renuo renui, to refuse. Annuo annui, to grant unto. Ingruo ingrui, to invade. Congruo congrui, to agree. Respuo respui, to refuse. Metuo, metui, to fear.

In the Fourth Conjugation:

IO, as, audio, is, Ias, audis, in the Present Tense, formeth the Preterperfect Tense in ivi, and Supine in itum: as, audiri, auditum.

Eo ivi itum, to go. Adeo adivi aditum, to go or come to. Intereo interivi interii interitum, to die utterly. Exeo exivitum, to go out. Prodeo prodivi and prodii proditum, to go forth. Redeo redivi and redii reditum, to return. Obeo obivi obii and obitum, to go about. Subeo subivi and subii subitum, to enter or go under. Ambio ambivi ambitum, to compass about. Cio civi citum, to provoke or move.

Venio, to come; sentio, to think; are excepted.

IO, is, in praesenti præteritum format in ivi, & supinum in itum: ut, audio audi divi auditum.

Excipiuntur venio
veni ventum; sen-
tio sensi sensum.

The fourth Conjugation.

Affo vincio vinxi vinctum, to bind. Fulcio fulsi fultum, to underprop. Sepio septi septum, to hedge. Haurio hauſi haustum, to draw. Sarcio sarsi sartum, to patch or amend. Farcio farsi fartum, to stuff. Infarcio infarsi infartum, to fill or pour in. The other Compounds whereof change far into fer: as, Refercio refersi refertum, to fill hard. Differcio differsi differtum, to fill. Impertio impertivi impertitum, and impartio impariti vi imparitum, to bestow. Dispertio, to give part to one, and part to another, Disperti vi dispertitum.

Bipertio bipertivi bipertitum, to part in two parts. Quadripertio quadipertivi quadripertitum, to part into four parts. Sancio sanxi sanctum, and sometimes Sancivi sanctum, to establish. Salio salii and salui, saltum, to leap.

The Compounds of salio change sa into si: as,

Exilio exilii, and exilii exultum, to leap out hastily. Dissilio dissilii, and dissilii disfultum, to leap down from off a place, or leap hither and thither. Infilio insilii, and insilii insultum, to leap upon. Profilio profilii, and profilii, to stream forth. Absilio absilii and absilii, to leap from, which two want Supines. Desilio desilii, and desilii desultum, to leap down. So assilio, to leap upon. Confilio, to leap together. Præfilio, to jump before. Resilio, to leap back. Subfilio, to leap or dance. Supersilio, to leap upon. Transilio, to leap over. Salio salivi salitum, to season with salt. Punio punii and punitus sum, to punish. Amicio ami cui,

Of the Fourth Conjugation.

cui, and sometimes amicivi and amixi animatum, to cloath. Sepelio sepilivi sepultum, to bury. Raucio rausi rausum, to be hoarse. Singultio singultivi singultum, to sob. Aperio aperui apertum, to open. Operio operui opertum, to cover. Comperio comperi compertum, to find out by trial. Reperio reperi repertum, to finde by adventure.

Verbs Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation.

Experior expertus sum, to try. Opperior oppertus sum, to tarry. Comperior, to know for a surety, by trial. Compertus, found out, proved, known assuredly. Assentior assensus sum, to assent, accord or agree with. Metior mensus sum, to measure. Ordior ortus sum, to begin. Fio, to be made, to become or grow, wants the Preterperfect Tense, for factus sum is of the old Verb facio.

Ferio, to smite, wants Preterperfect tense and Supines.

Legitur verno. Tac. I. 13. deinde veneo componeatur a eo at nullum verbum no. cam hoc ab eo derivatur. Dimes.

Verbs ending in urio called Meditatives, want the Preterperfect Tense and Supines. Except parturio parturivi, to travel of child-birth. Esurio esurivi, to be an hundred.

Gestio gestivi, to leap for joy, wants the Supine; and Veneo, to be sold; venii, for venum, to be sold, is a Noun.

Verbs

Verbs defective.

Verbs Defective.

1. Aio, to say or affirm.

Present Tense Indicative.

Sing.	{ 1 } Aio, I say.	Plur.	{ 3 } Aiant, they say.
2	Ais, thou sayest.		
3	Ait, he saith.		

Imperfect Tense Indicative.

Sing.	{ 1 } Aiebam, I said or did say.	Plur.	{ 3 } Aiebat, he said or did say.
2	Aiebas, thou saidst or didst say.		
3	Aiebat, he said or did say.		

Plur.	{ 1 } Aiebamus, we said.
2	Aiebatis, yee said.
3	Aiebant, they said.

Present Subjunctive.

Sing.	{ 2 } Aias, thou sayest.	Plur.	{ 3 } Aiant, they say.
3	Aiat, he saith.		

A Participle of the Present Tense.
Aiens, saying.

2. Inquam, I say.

Present Tense.

Sing.	{ 1 } Inquam, I say.	Plur.	{ 3 } Inquit, he saith.
2	Inquis, thou sayest.		
3	Inquit, he saith.		

Plur.	{ 1 } Inquimus, we say.
2	Inquistis, yee say.
3	Inquiunt, they say.

Verbs Defectives.

Imperfect Tense.

Sing. 3 Inquiebat, he said. Plu. 3 Inquiebant, they said.

Preterperfect Tense. Future Tense.

Sing. { 2 Inquisti, thou hast said.
3 Inquit, he hath said.Sing. { Inquires, thou { wilt
 { shall say.
Inquier, he { will { say.

Imperative Mood. 2 Inque or inquito, say thou.

3 Faxim, I will do or bring to passe.

Preterperfect Tense and Future Subjunctive.

Singulariter { 1 Faxim & Faxo, I have brought or will bring to passe.
 { 2 Faxis, thou hast brought or wilt bring to passe.
 { 3 Faxit, he hath brought or will bring to passe.

Pluraliter 3 Faxint, they have or they will bring to passe.

4 Aufim, I durst.

Preterperfect Tense Subjunctive.

Sing. { 1 Aufim, I } durst. Plur. aufint, they
 { 2 Aufis, thou } durst.
 { 3 Aufit, he } durst.

5 Quæso

Verbs Defectives.

5 Quæso, I pray or desire:

Indicative Mood Present Tense.

Sing. 1 Quæso, I pray. Plur. 1 Quæsumus, we pray.

6 Ave, all hail, be thou glad,
rest thou merry.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. { Ave, { 2 or { Ave, { be thou glad.
 { Averto, { Ayeto,

Plur. { 2 { Avertoe, { be.yee.glad.

Infinitive Mood, avere, to be glad.

7 Salve, God save you.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. { Salve { 2 { God save you.
 { Salveto, { SalvetePlur. { { God save.yec.
 { Salvetote,

Infinitive Salvete, to be saved, to be in good health.

Future Indicative, salvebis, thou shalt be saved.

Jacobum velim salvare jubeas, I would have you commend me to James.

Verbs Defective:

8. Apage, fie, fie away.

Apago illam hostilitatem, away with
that hostility.

Imperative Mood.
Sing. 2 Apage. Plur. Apagite, fie away.

9. Cedo, say, give or reach forth.

Imperative Mood.
Sing. 2 Cedo. Plur. 2 Cedite or certe.
Cedo manum, give me thy hand. Cedo aquam
manibus, give me water for my hands. Cedo
coram ipso, say it to his face.

10. In sic, he began, or he said.

11. Odi, I hate, or I have hated.

Coxpi, I have begun or taken in hand.
Memini, to call to mind, or to remember,
have the Preterperfect, and all Tenses
which descend of the Preterperfect Tense: ag,
Odi, eram, erim, issem, ero, isse.
Coopli, eram, erim, issem, ero, isse.
Meminli, eram, erim, issem, ero, isse.
Imperative Mood. Sing. 2 Memento, re-
member. Plur. Mementote, remember ye.

12. Ovo, to rejoice with noise:

Indic. 3 Ovat, he rejoiceth, and the Parti-
ciple ovans are only in use.

13. Dor

Verbs Defective:

I 3.

Dor of do, and for the first persons in
the Present Indicative; neither der nor
fer, the first persons in the Subjunctive
Mood, are in use. But we read in the
Compounds of for. effer: ag, Quid sit quod
horres effer, Sen. Trag. Thier. act. 4. ve. 537.

Verbs derived, are,

1. Inchoatives, ending in sco : ag, inge-
misco.
2. Frequentatives, in to, so, xo, co, tor.
3. Desideratives or Meditatives in urio.
4. Diminitives, in illo and isso.
5. Imitatives, in isso or. Bacchor.

Finis Libri Quarti.

L 5. THE



THE FIFTH BOOK.

Syntax, or the right composition or putting together of the parts of Speech amongst themselves, is either in Concord, or Government.

Concord is twofold:

{ 1 Plain.

{ 2 Figurative.

Plain Concord.

Rule 1.

A Verb Personall agreeeth with his Nominative case in number and person: as,

* Labor omnia vincit, labour overcometh all things.

Auris bona esto, * quæ libenter audit utilia, it is a good ear which willingly heareth things profitable.

Read the Observations perfectly, and examine as time will permit.

1. The little star hebeth which words some of have in them the vertue of the Rule, them with which would be examined by parsing every part.

Verbum Personale coheret, cum Nominativo numero & persona.

Observations.

2 Learn

Concord Plain.

2 Learn the art to find out the Verb in the sentence by the English;

1. Of the Persons, I, thou, he, we, yee, they; or,

2. Or signs of the Tenses, L. i. p. 46, 47.

For example: Labour overcometh all things, that ending in eth, hebeth the word overcometh, to be the Verb; and in the other sentence heareth, eth a sign of the Present Tense Active.

3. The Nominative case is found by the answer to the question, who or what? whether it come before the Verb, (as it usually doth) or be set after the verb, as it is sometimes (videlicet.) 1. When the verb is of the Imperative Mood. 2. When a question is asked: as, said he so? 3. When the signe (it) or (there) cometh before the Verb: as, auris bona est, it is a good ear, or an ear is good.

4. By agreement in number understand, that if the Nominative case be of the singular number, the verb must be of the singular number; but if plural, the verb must be plural.

To agree in person is, if the Nominative case be of the first person, the verb must be of the first person; if of the second or of the third, the verb must be of the same person.

5. A Verb Impersonal hath no Nominative case before it in the Latine; though it sometimes seemes to have in the English: as, I must, me oportet. Thou maist, tibi licet.

The

Concord Plain.

The Adjective agreeeth with the Substantive, in Gender, Number, and Case, be it a Noun Adjective, Pronoun, or Participle.

* Neglectis * urenda * fix innascitur
* agris. Fearnbrake to be burnt, growtheth in fields, lightly regarded or untilled.

* Verus * amor, * nullo * fuko, verum amat, True love, loueth truth without painting.

Observations:

To finde which word is a Substantive, note that all things are Noun Substantives: *e.g.*, a Book, a hat, &c. Other notes you have, l. i. p. 2. but in this Rule whatsoever answereth to the question who, or what? is for the Substantive to the Adjective: for an Adjective put in the Neuter Gender will in all respects supply the place of a Substantive: as in Concord Figurative, Rule 2. and Rule 3.

The Adjective agreeeth in Gender, Number and Case, that is, If the Substantive be of the Masculine Gender, the Adjective must be Masculine. If the Substantive be Feminine, the Adjective must be Feminine. If Neuter, the Adjective must be Neuter.

2. If the Substantive bee of the singular number, the Adjective must bee singular; but if of the plural, it must be plural.

3. To

Concord Plain.

3. To agree in Case, the Adjective must be the same Case with the Substantive: Canse the ag, Neglectis agris, the Ablative case, the decline Plural Number, and Masculine Gender. the Sub- Urenda filix, the Nominative case, the stantive Singular Number, and Feminine Gender, and Adje- ctive toge- ther

The Relative qui agreeeth with the Sub- stantive going before it, in Gender and in Number.

* Foelix * qui potuit boni fontem vi-Home. sere lucidum; he is happy which could go to see the clear Fountain of goodness.

Nemo est qui non velit pacem, sed non omnes volunt operari justitiam; There is no man who willeth not peace; but all will not work righteousness.

If a Nominative case be put between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall bee such case as the Verb, or fol- lowing word requi- reth.

Si Nominativus Rule 4: Relativo & verbo interponatur, Relati- tivum, ejus erit casus, quem ver- bum sequens po- stulat.

* Quos * amamus, nunquam morsu petimus, whom we love, wee never assault or smite with backbiting or slander.

Gratia.

Concord Plain.

Gratia ab officio * quod * mora * tardat abest, *Thanks is wanting from that good turn which tinging delayeth.* Cui benedixit unquam bono? *What good man hath he at any time said well of?*

Quis, who : qualis, of what sort: quantus, how much: quot, how many: quotus, of what number: uter, which, or whether of the two, come under the same rule with the Relative.

Quis, qualis, quantus, quot, quotus, uter, &c. rationem eandem cum Relatio subeunt.

* Quot * amicos, * quotque * inimicos * habeas res adversæ docent. *Adversity teacheth how many friends, and how many enemies thou hast.*

Rule 5.

Observations:

1. The Relative by an Hellenism or Greek propriety of speech, is put sometimes in the same case with the Antecedent Substantive: as, *Cum scribas, aliquid * eorum * quodcumq[ue] consuevisti gaudeo.*

2. Not only the Relative but the Substantive joyned with it, belongeth to Rule 4. as, *Quem librum legis? Quantam iram putas? Tantas blasphemias evomit, quantas repetere & scribere extorresco, quas copiolas colligimus, refundimus, what riches? &c.*

3. The way to finde upon which word the Relative depends, is, i. By repeating

Concord Plain.

ring the Antecedent Substantive. 2. By putting for the Relative hic, hæc, hoc, and repeating it with the Substantive. 3. Join the words together according to order of Speech, and you shall easilie finde the word on which it doth depend: as,

Utere virtute, quâ nihil est melius quâ virtute, changed thus, hâc virtute; ordered thus, nihil est melius hâc virtute, wherebyt it appears quâ dependeth on melius, and trucidatis quos placitum esset, Suet, li. 1. sec. 9.

4. The Antecedent Substantive is sometimes repeated with the Re at the: as, *diem scito esse nullum, quo die non dico pro reo, know that there is not a day, in which day, &c. Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas, that is, fabulae quas fabulas fecisset, &c.*

A Substantive will agree with a Substantive of the same thing or person in case: a, an, the, being, or no

sign coming next after the latter of two Substantives, is a sign of apposition.

*Eruitur * ferram * instrumentum, * aurum * precium sceleris. Iron the instrument, Gold the price, or reward of wickednesse, is digged out.*

Substantivum cum Rule 6.
Substantivo ejusdem
rei aut personæ con-
veniet casu.

Observations:

Grammarians call this agreement of Sub-

Concord Plain.

Substantive with Substantive, Apposition and Epexesis: to which there belongeth eight Observations.

1. That the latter Substantive agreeth with the former in number also, unless one of the Substantives bee a Collective, that is, a Noun in the singular number which signifieth a plural: as, *turba luxuriosa *proei.

2. If the latter of the two Substantives bee moveable, that is, admit of a Masculine Termination and Fœminine: as, Magister, Magistra, herus, hera, then the latter Substantive shall bee of the same Gender also with the former: as, *venter *magister artis, the belly-master of art. Et genus & formam *Regina *pecunia donat.

3. If the former Substantive bee the Epicene, or Neuter Gender, then the latter if it be changeable is the Masculine: as, *Aquila *Rex avium, an Eagle the King of Birds. *Tempus stultorum *magister, &c. Time a teacher of fools.

4. If the latter Substantive bee unchangeable, then there is no respect had to the Gender: as, *vultus *imago animi: Magnum *pauperies *opprobrium: jubet quidvis facere & pati,

5. Two or more singulars are accounted for a plural: as, *odium & *metus pessimi ad diuturnitatem *custodes.

6. If the first of the two Substantives signifieth a thing with life, the Adjective or Verb agreeth with it: as, *Tulliola *deliciæ nostræ *agitat.

7. If

Concord Figurative.

7. If both the Substantives bee of things without life, the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the latter Substantive: as, Fama malum quo non aliud velocius ullum.

Lastly, if one of the Substantives be the name of a place, the Adjective or Verb agreeth with the common Noun, rather than the Substantive proper. *Ludos *Consualia simulavit ad *quos.

If the two Substantives belonging to this rule differ in case, it is rather to be observed then insisted: as, In oppido Antiochiae.

Concord Figurative.

Ellipsis.

The Nominatives
Ego, I : tu, thou:
ille, hee : nos, wee :
vos, yee : illi, they :
homines, men : are
very seldom expressed,
except to put difference
or to speak something
more earnestly.

Quicquid dicunt laudo; id rursum si negant: laudo id quoque. I commend whatsoeuer men say. If again they deny, I also praise that.

Etsi

Nominativi ego, Rule 1.
tu, ille, nos,
vos, illi, homines
raro exprimuntur,
nisi ad distinguendū,
aut vehementius aliquid efferendū.

Concord Figurative.

Etsi * ego (Domine Jesu) commisi unde
me damnare potes; * tu non amisisti unde
servare soles. Although (O Lord Jesus), I
have committed whereby thou maist condemn
me, yet thou hast not lost, whereby thou art
wont to save.

Observations.

All sentences or single words, as dicunt, ferunt, aiunt, &c. wherein some word is understood or left out, may be referred to this rule for Ellipsis, signifying a leaving out: as, the Verb substant. Sunnit, and in tonat, pluit, ningit, it thundreth, raineth, snoweth, understand Deus: as, Deus tonat, or cœlum, or aer: again, lucefecit, dierit, it is bright, it is day; that is, dies oritur, the day springs, and in Proverbial speeches: as, fortuna fortis, understand adjuvat, and ad * constitutum Paulo ante vesperam veniebam, i. e. * locam.

Enallage, or Immutation.

Rule 2.

1. Sometimes a Verb of the Infinitive Mod.
2. An Adverb.
3. A part of the sentence.
4. Or a word put artificially (i. e.) for it self, supplieth or taketh the place of the Nominative case or Substantive.

Aliquando verbum infinitum, adverbium membrum orationis, aut dictio artificialiter posita supplet locum Nominativi aut Substantivi.

*Velle

Concord Figurative.

* Velle * suum cuique * est, nec vno vivitur uno, his own will is to every one, or each hath his own will, nor doe men live with one desire.

Observations.

1. Words put in stead of a Nominative case, or Substantive, are esteemed as Neuters, of the third person; wherefore suum is the Neuter Gender, and est the third person; and according to the old rule, 2 clauses or more require a plur. as, 1. Tu multum dormis, 2. Et sape potas, * quæ ambo * sunt corpori inimica, thou sleepest much, and drinkest often, both which things are naught for the body. Valla saith, that the Infinitive Mood is not put for a Noun, except in the Nominative and Accusative case. Non dicimus, pro posse nemo &c.

Adjectives put absolutely, (i. e.) without Substantives, supply or take the place of a Substantive, of which many are put in the Neuter Gender.

Adjectiva absolute, sine Substantivis posita, supplement locum Substantivi è quibus multa redundunt in Neutro Genere.

* Amicus certus, in re incerta cernitur, a sure friend is tried in a doubtfull matter.

Omnia sunt hominum tenui pendentia filo. All things of men are hanging on a slender thred, or mans state or condition, is easily changed or broken.

Obser-

Concord Figurative.

Observations.

1. The Adjective in the Masculine Gender hath homo, or man: as, Rusticus for Rusticus homo: Amicus for Amicus homo.

2. The Adjective in the Neuter Gender hath res or negotium. opus or quid, or quiddam understood, Vid. li. i. pa. 27. as, omnia for omnes res, or omnia negotia, opera, &c.

Rule 4.

Substantives are sometimes used for Adjectives.

Heroas sensus for Heroicos sensus, noble or heroical arguments, reasons or verses. Mārem strepitum for masculum strepitum, a manly noise. Juvenes jocos for juveniles jocos, youthful sports, &c.

Zeugma.

Rule 5.

When a Verb answereth to two or more Nominative cases. Also an Adjective to many Substantives, coupled together with a Conjunction or a comma, they agree with the nearer expressly or manifestly, with the other or rest by addition.

Quum verbum duobus aut pluribus nominativis respondet. Adiectivum itē pluribus substantivis conjunctione aut commate nexionis: cum viciniorē conveniunt expressē, cum altero vel reliquis per supplimentum.

Ut

Concord Figurative.

237

Ut * probus absentes amicos suā operā; itā * improbus suā incuriā prosequitur, as an honest man defends his absent friends; so a dishonest man forsakes (them.)

In comparison the Verb or Adjective agreeth with the Nom. case or Substantive farther off: as, Nihilominus ego quam vos Christum amantes diligo.

An Apposite will agree with the more digniore supposito Rule 6. worthy Supposite. Appositum cum Danes. quadrabit.

Neque * ego, neque * tu * fecimus hoc &c. Neither I, nor you have done this.

Observations.

1. By Apposite, is understood a Verb or Adjective; and by Supposite understand a Nominative case or Substantive, as the Apposite or Verb fecimus agreeth with the more worthy Supposite or Nominative case Ego.

2. The Masculine Gender is more worthy than the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy than the Neuter in things having life: as, Mars venusque capti.

3. The Neuter Gender is most worthy in things without life, of what Gender soever the Substantive bee: as, divitiae, decus, & gloria in oculis sita sunt. Riches, honour and glory, are set before you. Quorum

Concord Figurative.

Quorum nomina & virtutes sunt æque clara, yet sometimes when the *suppositæ* are all *Masculine* or all *Feminine*, the *apposite* is also *Masculine* or *Feminine*.
** Linea* & ** superficies* ** dividuæ* sunt.

Sometimes the *apposite* agreeth with the neuter *Masculine* or *Feminine*, and not with the Neuter: *as*, *Concilia* ** cœtusque hominum* *jure* ** sociati*.

Sometimes also with the *supposite* farthest off: ** Amor tuus* *ac* *judicium* *deme*, *utrum mihi plus dignitatis* *in perpetuum* *an voluptatis* *quotidie* *sit* ** allaturus*, non facile dixerim.

4. The first Person is more worthy than the second, and the second than the third.

Syllepsis.

Rule 7.
Danes.

Two or more singulars are accompanied for a plural. *Duo vel plura singularia* *habentur pro plurali*.

Nulla *sors longa*, ** dolor*, *ac* ** voluptas* *invicem* ** cedunt*, *No condition (is)* continual, grief and pleasure by course give place.

Observations.

By singulars understand *Nominative cases*: *as*, *dolor* and *voluptas*, which have *cedunt*, a *Verb* plural.

2. Two or more *Substantives* singular, which will have an *Adjective* plural: *as*, *Stolidus* ** amator* & *liber* ** captivus*, *sunt avi, inclusæ* ** similes*. ** Pater* & ** Mater* ** religiosi*.

i. Some-

Concord Figurative.

1. Sometimes singulars are content with a singular: *Si* ** quercus* & ** ilex* *multâ fruge pecus*, *multâ dominum* ** juvet* *umbrâ*. *Hor. lib. i. Ep. 16.*

Meretrix & *materfamilias erat* *unâ* *in domo*.

2. When the *Preposition* *cum* is put instead of the *Conjunction* *Topulative*, it is usually singular: *as*, ** Occisus* ** est* ** cum* ** liberis* ** Marcus Fulvius consularis*, for *Marcus* & *liberi* *occisi sunt*.

3. If a *Conjunction* *disjunctive* come between the singulars, the *Verb* may be singular: *as*, ** Lectalus* ** aut me* ** perticus exceptit*, *Hor. Sat. 4.*

Non vides, *si quando militum animos* *vel prædæ promissæ* ** magnitudo*; ** vel* *formidatae victoris* ** crudelitas*; ** vel* *opprobriæ* ** pudor ignaviæ*; ** vel laudum* *denique* ** cupidio* ** stimulat?*

Prolepsis is when a plural word containing the whole, is afterward divided into parts in the singular number, and the *Verb* agreeth with the whole, not with the parts, but by *Syllepsis*: *as*, ** Curemus* *æquam uterque partem*, ** tu alterum*, ** ego item alterum*; *Let us both look unto his part alike, thou the one (son) I likewise the other*. *Curemus*, the plural, doth not agree with *tu* and *ego*, &c. the parts, but by Rule 7. yet are understood to the parts: *as*, *tu, cura ego curabo*. *Prolepsis* is *implicite*, when one of the parts is understood: *as*, *Alter in alterius iacentes, lumen vultum, querebant taciti noster ubi esset*

Concord Figurative.

eslet amor: *The one casting his eyes on the face of the other, holding his peace, did seek where our love should be.* It may be resolved thus: Utique jactantes lumina in alterius vultum, alterjactans lumina in alterius & alter in alterius vultum quærebant, where the Verb quærebant, and the Participle jactantes are plural. For that two or more clauses singular, are accounted for a plural.

Synthesis.

Rule 8.

Synthesis, is the composition, or ordering of words agreeing in sense, not in word.

Danes,

A Noun of multitude singular, is sometimes joined to a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural.

Pars abiere, uterque deluduntur dolis: Part are gone; both are mocked with deceit.

Synthesis est vocum structura congrua sensu, non voce.

Nomen multitudinis singulare, quandoque apposito jungitur plurali.

Observations.

1. By a Noun of multitude understand a Noun in the singular number comprehending a plural: as, 1. Gens, turba, pars, vulgus, populus.

2. Participles singular joyned to a plural, belong to this rule: as, Quis, quisq; aliquis, neuter, uter, omnis cuncts, alter, solus, quidam reliquus, uterque valemus; both

Construction of the Nom. case.

both are in good health. Alius, alium, expectate, one tarry for another. Aperite aliquis ostium, some body open the dore.

3. Substantives put for Adjectives: as, ubi illic scelus est, for sceleratus or sceleratus.

4. When homines, men, is understood, or some other Substantive, as cives, &c. which the sense will easily suggest: as, duo millia crucibus affixi understand homines.

1. Verbs Substantives.

2. Verbs Passives.

3. Verbs Neutrals, of demeanour or behaviour, passe over into a Nominative case with

a, or an, or no sign, or the before it: as, Nemo minus religiosus, quam qui sibi videtur religiosus, No man is less religious than he who seems to himself religious.

1: Verba Substan- Rule 1.1 tiva.

2. Passiva.

3. Et verba gestus Neutra in Nomina- tivum transiunt:

Observations.

To understand this rule: note,

1. Verbs Substantives are, sum, I am; existo, to be; forem, I might or should be, and fio, I am made or become.

2. Verbs Passives: as, dicor, I am said, And *Audire* vocor, I am called: and well nigh all Verbs Passives, except these four, rogior, I am asked: exorior, I am intreated: poscor, I am required: doceor, I am taught, which retain the Accusative case of the thing: as, cogantur sententiam. M 3. Verbs

Construction of the Nom. case.

3. Verbs of Gesture, or behaviour : as, eo, I goe : incedo, I walk : venio, I come : cubo, I lie down : sedeo, I sit : evado, to prove or become : dormio, to sleep : maneo, to tarry, have a Nominative case after them, with a, or an : as, puer sum, I am *a boy : forem discipulus, I might be *a scholar : nemo nascitur antifex, no man is born *an artist.

4. All Verbs admit of a Nominative case after them, of an Adjective, especially if it be put adverbially ; and then before the case of the Adjective the sign is lost. Scribo epistolas rarissimus for rarissimè, I write Letters very seldom : and often before the case of Substantives : as, multi videntur veri cultores Dei, many seem true worshippers of God.

5. The, also after sum, and Verbs of calling : as, dicor appellor, is a sign of the Nominative case : as, tu vir ille es, thou art *the man : Deus appellatur Deus pacis, God is called *the God of peace.

6. The Particles of Verbs belonging to this rule, are in like manner construed : factus habitus, &c. as, facta videbor a-nus.

7. Verbs Substantives, and the Particles of Verbs of calling and esteeming : also and the Relative qui, sometimes agree with the latter supposic, instead of the former. Note this rather then use it : as,

Non omnis error stultitia dicenda est; or dicendus, usually. Not every error is to be called folly.

Construction of the Nom. case. 243

En, behold ! and En & ecce, No. Rule 2. ecce, behold ! re-minativum aut Ac-quire a Nominative accusativum adscis-or an Accusative case. cunt.

Audiat hæc tantum, vel qui venit, *ec-ce * Palæmon, Only at least let him that comes, hear these. Behold, Palæmon.

Observations:

1. In the Nominatives est is understood : as, ecce agnus Dei, for ecce est, &c.

2. In Accusatives, video is understood : as, ecce alterum for ecce video alterum.

3. The Dative case tibi, is oftentimes added : ecce tibi ejusmodi sortitio, Behold a lotting of the same sort for thee.

O an(Interjection) exultantis, col-
of rejoicing, of prai- laudantis, aut etiam Rule 3.
sing, and also of scor- deridentis, & heu-
ning, or mocking, and Nominativo præpo-
heu are put before a nuntur.
Nominative case.

O magnus post hæc inimicis risus! O great laughter for our enemies hereafter! Heu pietas, heu prisca fides! O the godliness! O the ancient fidelity!

for the Voc. and Accus. after O, see Rule 5. p.300. &c.

A Substantive or an Substantivum aut Rule 4.
Adjective put Sub- Adjectivum Sub-
stantively, governs a stantivè positum
Genitive case of a di- regit Genitivum di-
vers thing. versarei.

Construction of the Nom. case.

Of, before the latter of two Substantives, is a sign of the Genitive case.

Major * famæ * sitis est quam virtutis,
there is a greater thirst of glory, than of virtue.
Illius ergo venimus, we come for his sake.

Observations.

This Rule is divided into two parts,
1. Substantives. 2. Adjectives put Substantively.

Substantives.

1. The latter of two Substantives having
to before it is a Dative.

Urbi pater est urbique Maritus, he is a
Father to the City, a husband to the City. See
Rule 1.p.271.

2. When the latter Substantive signifies
the matter of the former, then it is made
in Latine by an Adjective Possessive, derived
of the latter Substantive. Annulus æ-
neus, a brass ring, or an Ablative case with
ex, after a Noun beginning with a vowel
or consonant: as, Annulus ex auro, ex
marmore: but after a Verb the matter is
put with e or ex, as, factum est ex lapide
or factum est è lapide.

3. When the latter Substantive is the
proper name of a place, the Genitive case
is changed into an Adjective, derived
of the latter Substantive: as, a London
Merchant, or Merchant of London, Mer-
cator Londinensis. Chaldaæam, Arabi-
cam, Punicam, Æthiopicam, Persicam, Sy-
riacam, Medicam edicere linguam.

Construction of the Gen. case.

4. If the former Substantive signifies
the possessour of a place, then the latter
Substantive is put in the Genitive case: as,

Rex Angliæ, } The Genitive of the possessour is
elegantly changed into the
Adjective possessive: as, pa-
tris domus, paterna domus.

5. If the latter Substantive signifying
the name of a place, be an Appellative, or
common Noun, it is made into Latine either
by the Adjective possessive, or Genitive case:
as, mos patriæ, or mos patrius.

6. Proper names of men, are usually tur-
ned into Adjectives, derived of them, and
joyned to Substantives common: as, Ho-
ratiano verbo libenter utimur. Tullianus
Sermo. Socrateo melle depluit totus.
Catoniana sententia. Demosthenica ora-
tio. Homericum carmen. Euripideum
carmen. Versus Ennianus. Fons Pegaseus,
and Oscurum lingua. Gallica vox.

7. Some Substantives have a Genitive
or Ablative with de: as,

Misericordia, solicitude, pudor, certa-
men, opinio, mentio: as, certamen glo-
ria, or de gloria. Also of, after locutio,
colloquium, loquela, is made by de. M. Bird.

8. Of, before the subject of a book,
may be Englished concerning: as,

Ovid; of the Art of loving, and is made
by de, and of, before the place or pedi-
gree of a man, is made by de, è, ex.

Construction of the Gen. case.

Concerning Adjectives, observe,

1. *Adjectives put Substantively* are, hoc temporis, id temporis: so multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, summum, extremum, dimidium, ultimum.

2. *Adjectives put Substantively*, habita non the Genitive case of Adjectives of the Third Declension after them; but of the second we must not say, aliquid utilis, but ali- quid commodi; nor aliquid suavis, but ali- quid jucundi, and aliiquid boni.

3. *Adjectives of quality*: *as*, qualis talis are not put Substantively.

4. *Adjectives of quantity* put Substantively, have a Genitive case after them of all Nouns Substantives denoted; but of Adjectives only of the second Declension as aforesaid: *as*, quantum pecuniae, &c. and of the singular number.

5. Where you read *Adjectives* of the second or third Declension in the plural number put Substantively with a Genitive case, they are examples not to be imitated, but permitted to Poets and Historians: *as*, Telluris opera, opaca locorum, amara curarum, cuncta terrarum, acuta belli, inania famae.

<p>1. Sufficiens we use <i>satis</i>: <i>as</i>, <i>satis periculi.</i></p> <p>2. Majus, we use <i>plus</i>: <i>as</i>, <i>plus periculi.</i></p> <p>3. Nullum, we use <i>nihil</i>: <i>as</i>, <i>nihil periculi.</i></p> <p>4. Magnum, we use <i>multum</i>: <i>as</i>, <i>multum periculi.</i></p> <p>5. Parvum, we use <i>parum</i>: <i>as</i>, <i>parum periculi.</i></p>	<p>6. <i>for</i></p>	<p>7. <i>Me-</i></p>
--	----------------------	----------------------

Construction of the Gen. case.

7. Medium and dimidium, are used Substantively, and *Adiectively*: *as*, dimidi- um facti, dimidia pecunia, and dimidium pecuniae, in medio coelo, and in medio coe- li, in the midst of the Heaven.

Pronoun.

8. These Pronouns *Meus*, *Tuus*, *Suus*, *No-
ster*, *Vester*, are used in Possession; *est liber
meus*, it is my book.

But *mei* the Gen. of *ego*: *tui* the Gen. of *tu*: *sui* the Pronoun Substantive; also *nostri* and *vestri* Genitives plural of *nos* and *vos*, are used when passion is signified, and in which others are active: for example,

Favor noster, is that favour which is in us towards others: but *favor nostri*, is that fa- vour which others have to us: *cura mea*, is my care: *cura mei*, is another's care of me: *pars tua*, is that part which is due to thee: but *pars tui*, that is a part of thee, be it hand, foot, body, soul, &c. *imago nostra*, that is the image which we posse: but *imago nostri*, that is the image which representeth us.

9. *Sui*, and *suus*, *sua*, *suum*, are called Reciprocals, because they look back to the Nominative case of the foregoing Verb. **Petrus nimium admiratur *se*, *parcit erroribus *suis*, Peter loveth himself too well, &c.

1. If *suus* have respect to the case that cometh after the Verb, it for the most part signifieth proprius, proper, and may be turned according to the order aforesaid: *as*, *trahit *sua quemq; *voluntas*, that is pro- pria, and it is resolved passively, *quique trahitur à voluptate suâ*.

Construction of the Gen. case.

2. If many third persons meet together in one word, for plainness sake, and to take away doubt: ipse, is, ille, iste, are used for sui or suis: as, "omnes boni, quantum in * ipsis fuit occiderunt Cæsarem.

The use of inter se, and inter ipsos,
amongst themselves.

3. When the relation is to the Nominate or Accusative case, we use sui, sibi, se: as, delectat hoc ipso quod inter se omnes partes corporis quodam lepore consentiunt. Damonem & Pichiam inter se suisse.

2. If the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative case go before, then ipse is used: as, a doctis inter ipsos nec mihi cæterorum judicio videtur solum sed etiam ipsorum inter ipsos consentiunt.

Hic, ille.

Hic is usually referred to the latter and nearer suppositum; ille, to the more remote, or farther off.

Esse debet unde aliquid fiat; deinde à quo fiat, hoc causa est, illud materia Sen. Fp. 65.

Oratio Deum lenit, sed lacryma cogit, hæc ungit, illa pungit.

Rule 5.

The former Substantive is sometimes concealed or under-
flood.

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observations.

1. Of relation betwixt the father and child: as, Deiphobe Glauci, for filia Glauci. Deiphobe, daughter of Glaucus.

2. The former Substantive of place, (i.e.) a holy place or temple: as, ad Dianæ, for ad ædem Dianæ, to the Temple of Diana, and so ad Opis, and ante Castoris, for ad ædem Opis, and ante ædem Castoris.

3. The former Substantive of time: as, Tertio Calendarum, for tertio die Calendarum, the third day of the Calends.

4. The former Substantive Causâ is sometimes understood: as, Jusjurandum rei servandæ, non perdendæ conditum est, for causâ rei servandæ, a solemn Oath was framed for the cause of preservation, not destroying our substance.

5. The Pronoun Primitives mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, are often included or understood in the Possessives: as, Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest, for meum peccatum mei solius, my sin only cannot be amended.

Tuum hominis simplicis pectus vidi-
mus, for Tuum pectus tui hominis, &c.

Et flesi & nostros vidisti flentis ocellos.
Valla saith, this is not tolerable in prose,
for if the Primitive be express, one number
will be put for another: as, vidisti
ocellos nostros, nostrum flentium. M. Far-
naby saith, there is Synechdoche numeri,
and thus resolveth it.

Nostros ocellos flentis, for meos ocellos
mei flentis.

Construction of the Gen. case.

6. Hitherto may be referred that rule in Lilly. *Hæc possessiva meus, tuus, suus, noster & vester* hos Genitivos post se recipiunt, ipsius, solius, &c. and the Genitive case of Particles of the Present Tense: as, clamantis loquentis; and note that to these Genitives you must not adde Substantives; you may say, *audio verba tua docentis*, but not *docentis magistri*, &c. but rather *qui es magister*.

Rule 6,

Sum, requireth a Genteive case as often as it signifieth possession, prop-
erty, or duty. Of after Sum, is a sign of the Gen. case.

Sum genitivum postulat quoties possessionem, proprietatem aut officium significat.

Boni pastoris est tondere pecus non de-
glubere. It is the duty of a good Shepheard to
shear his sheep, not to pull off the skin.

Observations.

1. This rule may be referred to the former (i. e.) Rule 5. for the former Substantive is no lesse understood before the Genitive case: as, *Hæc vestis est Patris* (i. e.) est vestis Patris, or munus, proprium, officium, pars, duty, property, office, or part, is understood: as, officii mei sum arbitratus, I thought it part of my office. Jam me Christi torum esse scis, &c. for totum proprium, the whole peculiar, &c.

2. These Pronoun Adjectives, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, and Adjectives Possessives,

Construction of the Gen. case.

251

seffives, humanum, of a man: belluimum, of a beast: regium, of a King, and such like, are used in the Neuter Gender and Nominative case; officium proprium, &c. being understood, which also at your pleasure may be expressed.

Humanum est errare, belluimum verò per-
severare in errore, it is a mans part to erre,
but the part of a beast to persevere in an error:
Nostrum officium est commissa plangere,
non plangenda committere, it is our part to bewail things committed, not to commit things bewailed.

The praise or dis- Laus & vituperi. Rule 7.
praise of a thing is um rei frequentius
commonly uttered or in Ablatiyo vel Ge-
used in the Ablative nitivo effertur.
or Genitive case with
of before it.

Ut quisque contemptissimus est, ita ple-
runque est * lingua * solutissima, as any
man is most base, so is he commonly of a most
lavish tongue: eo animo sum, I am of that
mind.

Observations.

1. When the praise or dispraise is put after a Noun or Verb Substantive sum es fui, in the Genitive case homo, man, or res thing, may be understood before it; but before the Ablative of the praise or dispraise, prædictus or imbutus, induced or furnished, may be understood: puer virtute satis eminenti, i. e. prædictus: est lingua solutissima, i. e. imbu-
tus

Construction of the Gen. case.

tus lingua, &c. est fronte caperata sed calido ingenio, he is of a lowring look, but a cunning wit. Exilis est animi, he is but of a shallow brain, id est, puer, or homo exilis, &c.

Danes.

2. Some phrases are always Ablative: as, Bono animo esto, be of good courage. Nunc si es animo vacuo expono nobis quod querimus. Others are always in the Genitive: as, Non multi cibi hospitem accipies sed multi joci, Concerning others let not the scholar much trouble himself, but use either the Ablative or Genitive at pleasure, if homo may bee understood in sense before the Genitive, or praeditus before the Ablative, for it wil be hard to prove that all Authors have used such a phrase in the Genitive or Ablative onely, because some have, for as few have read all Authors, so all Grammarians do not limit the Rule.

3. For homo bonæ frugis, a thrifty man, we read homo bonæ frugi, and nulli rei erimus, before which, if Datives, we may saith Mr. Farnaby, understand deditus utilis, or idoneus, given or bent, profitable or fit: as, deditus bonæ frugi.

Rule 8,

Nouns severing or dividing into parts, and put dividingly, Comparatives, Superlatives, Nouns asking questions, and certain Nouns of number, de- flict in, or require a Genitive plural, having the sign of before it.

O

Construction of the Gen. case:

O * major * juvenum, in quacunque hominum verseris frequentia, Cave alienæ conversationis esse aut curiosus explorator aut temerarius judex, O thou the elder of the young men, in whatsoever company of men thou art conversant, beware to be a curious searcher, or rash judge in another's conversation.

Nouns partitives, are

Aliquis, some one. Alius, another or some. Alter, another, or one of the two. Uter, which, whether, or either of the two. Neuter, neither the one, nor the other. Utterque, both the one and the other. Ullus, any. Nullus, none. Solus, onely one. Quisque, every one. Quicunque, whosoever. Quidam, some one. Quilibet, every one, or whomsoever thou wilt. Quispiam, some body. Uniusquisque, every one. Quotusquisque, how many. Multi, many. Pauci, few. Omnes, all, or every, &c. Partim, in part, or some. Unus for solus, only.

Observations.

First, note that the Substantive coming after the Adjective, put partitively, is understood in the same case of the Adjective, which also agreeth therewith: as, multæ istarum arborum, for multæ arbores istarum arborum; or else, è numero is understood before the Genitive case: as, è numero istarum arborum.

Secondly, an Adjective put partitively in some examples, agreeth with the Nom. case to the Verb: as, Leo animalium fortissimus, a Lion is the stoutest of living creatures; for Leo est fortissimum animalium, i.e. fortissimum animal, or fortissimum è numero animalium.

3. Ch:

Construction of the Gen.case.

3. The Genitives nostrūm and vestrūm, not nostri and vestri are used after Partitives: *as*, nemo nostrum; and note that nostrum not nostri is always used if a Genitive case plural be added to it: *as*, contemptor nostrūm duorum.

4. The Genitive case after Partitives is sometimes turned into an Accusative, with inter or ante, or into an Ablative with de è or ex. Non unus è multis sed è multis singularis. Vir bonus è magistratibus, est unus de milibus. Primus ab Hercule belongs not to this Rule, but to the Rule of Prepositions.

Rule 9.

Adjectives which signify, 1. Desire: cupiditatem: scientiam: memoriam: curam: metum: atque iis contraria significant Genitivum adsciscant.

* Nescia mens hominum *fati, fortisque futuræ, mans understanding is ignorant of fate and future fortune.

Words belonging to this Rule.

Scio te
quamdiu
viveret E.
rasmi per-
studiosum
fruisse,

1. Adjectives signifying desire: *as*, cupidus, desirous: avidus, greedy or desirous: studiosus, studious or desirous, perstudiosus: *as*, studiosus nobilitatis, one that favoureth the State of the Nobility: ab aliquo Ciceronis studio, by one of Cicero's Scholars: candidatus, desirous, or one that endeavoureth to obtain any thing: *as*, candidatus eloquentia,

Construction of the Gen.case:

1. Student of eloquence. 2. And neglect: *as*, socors futuri, nothing regarding that is to come.

2. Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, which admit of the sign in before the Genitive case: *as*, peritus antiquitatis, skilful in antiquity: gnarus, expert or skilful: prudens, skilful: callidus, crafty or skilful: solers, witty or crafty: solers cunctandi, wise in using delays: providus, foreseeing: multorum providus, that considereth many things before hand: docilis, easily or quickly taught: docilis pravi, quickly taught that which is not good: Praeficius, foreseeing, or perceiving afore hand: præsagus, one that gheffeth or divineth: divinus, one that gheffeth or foreseeth: certus, assured or determined: *as*, exitii certus, sure to die: futuri certus, assured of that should come: utinam tui consilii certior factus essem, I would I had better known your mind or purpose: non incautus, not uncircumspect or not unprudent: imperitus, unskilful: imprudens, unskilful: ignarus, ignorant: rufus, ignorant: also with an Ablative: *as*, rufus es certè Rudes de in historiâ, thou art doubtlesse ignorant in hi- morte, con- story: inscius, ignorant: incertus, undetermined: cerning coecus, ignorant: devius, swerving from death, or ignorant: dubius, doubtful.

3. Adjectives of Care and Carelessness: *as*, anxious, careful: solicitus, careful: curiosus, careful: securus, carelesse or negligent: incuriosus, carelesse: socors, negligent: incautus, unwary, not foreseen, are also used with the Preposition de and a: *as*, de verbis solicitus, careful of his words; and to after insuetus, unwont, a Genitive.

4. Ada

Construction of the Gen. case.

4. Adjectives of fear and confidence: *as*, Timidus, fearful. Trepidus, fearful. Pavidus, fearful. Impavidus, fearless. Inte-
ritus, not abashed, without fear. Fidens, bold.

So Compos, part. Sic Compos, Im-
ker. Impos, void. pos, Particeps, Ex-
Particeps, partaker. ors, Consors, Geni-
Exors, not partaker. tivo gaudent: *as*,
Consors, partaker, Impos animi, one be-
govern a Gen. case. sides himself.

Nunc me * compotem * voti facis, Now
thou makest me partaker of my wish.

Observations.

Compos, *is* sometimes read with an Ablative case: *as*, Immortalitate compos, Heins Orat. I. prædâ compotem, Liv. l. 3. we also read Participem studiis, Ovid. de Ponto l. 2. El. 7.

Rule 10. Nouns ending in *ax*, Verbalia in *ax*, derived of Verbs, and & participalia quæ some Participles of the dam præsentis & Present, and Preteri præteriti temporis, Tense, changed into Genitivum postu- Nouns, require a Gen. lant. case.

Tempus * edax * rerum, Time a con-
sumer of things.

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observations.

1. Nouns ending in *ax*: *as*, edax, a great eater, or devourer, of edo. Edaces multi cibi, devourers of much meat. Capax that taketh or containeth, of capio. Capax amicitæ, that can consider what friendship is. Invidiæ capax, able to defend himself against envy: and with the Preposition ad: *as*, præcepta capax animus, a minde apt to take instruction.

Ferax, fertile or fruitful, of fero. Fugax, that fleeth, or one that escheweth, of fugio. Sagax, that perceiveth, and foreseeth quickly, of sagio, to perceive quickly.

Rapax, greedy, or devouring, of rapio. Tenax, that holdeth fast, and pertinax: *as*, pertinax recte, that will not depart from right and honesty. Spernax, that contemneth, or despiseth. Petax, one that asketh. And also in the degrees of comparison: *as*, mentisque capacius altæ.

2. Participials, or Participles changed into Nouns which are easily discerned, because the Participle endeth in *ing*, and governeth the case of the Verb; but the Noun is commonly Englished with (that) before it, or (one that) *as*, Cupiens, a Participle englished coveting. Cupiens, a Noun, one desirous, or that loveth. And so experiens, one that tryeth or proveth. Sitiens, one that thirsteth after, or desireth. Amans, one that loveth, or fauoureth. Negligens, one that is careless. Metuens, one afraid of. Observans, one that observeth.

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observantior, one that doth more diligently observe. Omnia officiorum observantissimus, he doth observe all occasions possible to doe his friend a pleasure. Reverentior, one that hath more fear and reverence. Sciens, one cunning or skilful. Insolens, not accustomed. Bellorum insolens, not accustomed to warre. Servantissimus, one that observeth greatly. Aequi servantiissimus, a great observer of equity and justice.

3. Particles of the Preterperfect Tense: as, Eruditus, cunning. Eruditissimus, very well Learned. Expertus, skilful, or one that hath tried. Consultus, skilful and cunning. Consultus eloquentia, very eloquent. Insuetus, not accustomed. Insuetus laboris, not wanted to labour. Insuetus contumeliam, not used to taunting or reproach. Insolitus, not accustomed. Insolitus rerum bellicarum, not accustomed to war.

The reason why these and many more govern a Genitive case, is (saith Learned Master Farnaby) by reason of the affinity or agreemente of their signification to Adjectives of knowledge, desire, care, fear, or their contraries.

M. Danes giving the reason why these Particles of the Present Tense govern a Genitive case, saith, that because for the most part they are Englished like Substantives in to or trix: as, amans for amator Masculine, and amatrix Feminine: and moreover proceedeth to shew the difference betwixt the Participle and the Noun-Participle in this manner.

1. Patiens inediā, which is a Participle,

Construction of the Gen. case.

is spoken of one who now already suffereth want at that present time. But patiens inediā, which is the Noun-Participle, is spoken of him who can easily suffer want, although peradventure he be now fed to the full.

2. So Doctus Græcam linguam, is spoken of him who hath learned the Greek tongue, neither is it now a matter, whether he knoweth the tongue or not, it being a Participle of the Preter Tense. But Doctus græca lingua, is not spoken but of him who now knoweth the Greek tongue or is skilful therein.

Satago, to have enough to doe, or to bee busie about a thing.	Satago. Misereor. Rule 11.
Miseresco. Miseret.	
Miserescit. Poeniter.	
Tæder. Pudet. Pi-	
to have pity or compas-	get, Genitivum ad-
Miseresco, to be	mittunt : ut,
moved with pity, or to	
have pity or compassion.	Miseret, it pitieith.
Miserescit, it pitieith.	Poeniter, it repenteith.
Tæder, it wearieth, or irketh.	Pudet, it shameith.
Piget, it irketh or grieveth, receive a	
Genitive case.	

* Rerum suarum *satagit, he hath enough to do about his own busynesse, or of his own matters.

Observations.

To understand this Rule observe,

1. That these Verbs Poeniter, tæder, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget, govern an Accusative case of the person, and a Genitive of the word following of: as, *tæder omnes

Construction of the Gen. case.

omnes * nos * vitæ, verbatim, it wearieth us all of life.

2. That there may be another Accusative case of the thing in the Neuter Gender: as,

* Nil * me * pœnitentiam sanum Patis hujus, Hor. Sen. 6. l. 1. and sometime two Accusatives, whereof one should bee Gen. as, Non te hæc pudeat? Ter. but then understand a Preposition: as., ob hæc, Menedem, vicem miseret me(i.e.) Job vicem.

3. The Infinitive Mood sometimes supplants the place of the Genitive case: as, Piget respondere maledictis criminacionis adeo ineptæ, quem pœnitit peccasse pene est innocens.

4. Miserescit hath sometimes a Dative case: as, miseresce malis.

5. Sometimes the Genitive case after pœnitit, is changed into the Preposition de: as, de matrimonio pœnitere.

6. In English the Nom. case is often set before the Impersonals, and then you must change your speech by (it:) as, I repent, (i.e.) it repenteth me. Art thou ashamed, (i.e.) doth it shame thee? Pertensus, hath a Gen. or Accu. case, pertensus ignaviæ, or ignaviam.

7. Add hereto erubesco: as, erubesceret fortunæ; also erubescere in re aliquâ, and erubescere malis alterius: see Obs. upon Rul. 18.

Interest, it is profit-table or belongeth, and Genitivum sibi subjiciunt, exceptis meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ cujâ

Rule 12.

Construction of the Gen. case.

261

a Gen. case. These Ablat. excepted, meâ, tuâ, suâ nostrâ, vestrâ, cujâ.

* Nullius non * refert bene vivere, it behoveth every one to live well.

Faciendum aliquid, quod illorum magis quam suâ retulisse videretur, something is to be done which might seem more for their profit, then for his own.

Interest meâ, it toucheth or concerneth my profit. Interest tuâ, it concerneth thy profit. Interest suâ, it concerneth his profit. Interest nostrâ, it concerneth our profit. Interest vestrâ, it concerneth your profit. Cuja interest, whose profit doth it concern.

Observations:

1. The best reason I meet with why interest, and refert, have after them a Genitive of Substantives, and an Ablative of the Adjectives meâ, tuâ, suâ, and is this. Interest is thus compounded, in, re, est; and refert thus, re, fert, not with the Preposition, but the Ablative of res; so that the Genitive after interest, is the latter of two Substantives: as, interest magistratus, i.e. in re est magistratus, it pertains to a Magistrate, and the Ablative cases meâ, tuâ, suâ, &c. agree with re, in case, gender, and number: as, Plautus utrumque veniat necne nihil in re est meâ.

2. Interest and refert have a Gen. case not only of the person, but also of the thing: as, Plurimum *refert *compositionis, quæ quibus anteponas, it much mattereth in composition, to know what words are to be placed before others.

3. The

Construction of the Gen. case.

3. The Genitives of the value, are put after interest and refert, without Substantives (viz.) tanti, so much: quanti, how much: magni, much: permagni, very much: parvi, little: pluris, more: and also Adverbs: as, multum, much: plurimum, very much: parum, little: minimum, very little: paululum, very little, or somewhat: infinitum exceedingly much: vehementer, greatly: quantum, how much: tantum, so much: multum, much: nihil, nothing: pauxillum, very little: nunquid, whether: facile, without doubt or controversie: aliquid, something: magis, more: minus, lesse: maxime, most: minimè, least: paulum, little.

As Rule 5. tives, unius, solius, ipsius, ipsorum, paucorum, p. 251.
meā, unius interest, vestrā paucorum interest, tuā solius refert.

5. Sometimes they admit of a Preposition, interest ad decus & laudem civitatis.

Rule 13.

Verbs of esteeming or regarding, have an Accusative case of the thing esteemed, and a Genitive of the value.

Verba estimandi cum accusativo rei estimatæ habent genitivum estimacionis.

* Plurimi passim * fit pecunia, mony is every where esteemed very much.

* Maximi debemus * estimare * conscientiam. Wee ought to esteem conscience most.

Obser-

Construction of the Gen. case.

Observations.

1. *Æstimo* is construed as well with an Ablative as Genitive case: as, qui magni æstimat libertatem, * parvo omnia gala * æstimat, he that esteemeth liberty much, esteemeth all other things little: so nonnihil estimare.

2. Verbs belonging to this Rule when they are Englished to esteem: Pendo, to esteem. Habeo, to esteem. Duco, to esteem. Puto, to esteem, prize, value or account. Est se æstimatur, it is valued: as, Pluris est oculatus testis unus; quam auriti decem, one eye witness is of more account then ten ear witnesses; but in another sense they have another construction: as, ducere uxorem, to marry a wife, which also is to be carefully looked unto in other Rules.

3. These Genitives of the value, are put without Substantives. Tanti, so much. Quantii, how much. Maximi, most. Parvi, little. Minoris, less. Plurimi, more, or of more account. Plurimi, most, or of most account. Nihili, as nothing. Flocci, as a lock of Wool, or as little worth. Pili, as a hair. Nauci, as the shell or pill of a nut. Assis, as a farthing. Hujus, as thus much. Terruncii, as a farthing; to which, Genitives being put alone, understand rei, æris, or pretii.

4. Note these as elegant phrases:

Æqui boni facio, { I take in good
Æqui boni consulo, } part.

Pro

Construction of the Gen.case.

Pro nihilo { habeo,
duco,
puto, } I esteem as nothing.

In minimis res nostras ponere, to esteem our own affairs lightly. In magnis viris est habendus, he is to be accounted as a great man.

Rule 14.

Adjectives of guiltiness, and Verbs of accusing, condemning, and absolving, besides the Accusative case of the person require a Genitive case, which signifieth the fault or punishment. Some of these require an Ablative case with or without a Preposition. with the sign of,

Qui * alterum * incusat * probri, ipsum se intueri oportet, he that accuseth another of a reproachfull act, ought to look into himself.

Observations.

1. Adjectives of guiltiness. Reus, accused. Conscius, guilty, which hath sometimes a Genitive, and sometimes a Dative, and sometimes a Dative of the thing, but hath always a Dative of the person: as, * Conscius * sibi * culpæ, knowing himself faulty. Conscius alicui in privatis rebus, that knoweth ones private affairs. Manifestus, convicted or proved openly. Mendacit' convi-

ctus

Construction of the Gen. case.

ctus, openly proved a lyar. Manifestus delicti, manifestly convicted of an offence. Affinis, accessory or partaker, guilty or privy to. Affinis alicujus culpæ, and affinis alicui culpæ, partaker of any mans fault. Affinis sceleri, and affinis sceleris, guilty of wickednesse. Popularis, a companion, fellow, or confederate of the same Town, City, State, or condition. Populares conjurationis, companions in the agreement. Compertus, convicted or found guilty. Flagitii compertus homo, a man convicted of some bainous offence. Compertus in stupro, taken in adultery. Innoxius, guiltlesse. Insens, guiltlesse, not partaker. Fraternali sanguinis insens, not guilty of his brothers death. Suspectus, mistrusted. Criminum capitalium suspectus, suspected guilty of an offence worthy of death.

Verbs of accusing, &c.

Accuso, to accuse or blame. Accusat me id, i.e, ob id accuso * te illi, or apud illum, or coram illo * sceleris accuso te magni sceleris, or de magno scelere, or crimine aliquo.

Ago, to sue or accuse, is construed with the Preposition cum: as, Egit cum servo, he accused his servant. Ex syngraphâ cum aliquo agere, to sue or bring an action upon an obligation.

Appello, as, to commence an action against one. Appellare aliquem de pecuniâ, to call upon any one for debt; and appellari magnâ pecuniâ, to be sued for great debt.

Arcesso, to accuse. Judicio capitis aliquem arecessere, to accuse of a deadly offence. Arguo, to accuse or blame. Arguere aliquem sceleris,

Construction of the Gen. case.

*sceleris, crimine and decrimine, to accuse or
apeach of wickednesse.*

*Alligo, to accuse or apeach. Alligare se
furti, to charge himself with theft. Alligare
se scelere, to shew himself guilty of a mischie-
vous act.*

*Astringo, to be guilty of, or accuse. Astringere
se furti, to commit felony. Astringere
se scelere, to commit some wicked fact.*

*Defero, to accuse or apeach. Impietatis
deferriri, to be accused of unnaturalnesse. De-
ferre noinen alicujus, to accuse and complain
upon one. Deferre sermones de aliquo ad
alterum, to bring tales and reports to one an-
other.*

*Incuso, to accuse or blame. Incusabo re
probi, I will lay dishonesty to thy charge.
Quid me incusas, for ob or propter quid,
wherein dost thou finde fault with me.*

*Infamo, to defame or report ill of. Infama-
re aliquem parricidii, to slander one of mur-
thering his Father.*

*Insimulo, to note or accuse. Herum avari-
tiae insimulare, to lay covetousnesse to his Ma-
sters charge.*

*Postulo, to accuse or sue. Postulare ali-
quem injuriarum, to sue in an action of tres-
passe, or of the case.*

*Convinco, to vanquish, to prove manifestly, or
to confute. Convincere aliquem falsi, to
prove a man a falsifier. Male administrata
Provinciae urgeri.*

*Damno, to condemn. Damnari capite, to
be condemned to die. De pecuniis repe-
tundis damnari, to be condemned of extorti-
on. Damnatus longi laboris, condemned to
long*

Construction of the Gen. case.

*long labor. Damnati coecitate, vos vero fortu-
na, tam luxurioso sumptui non damnavit.
Barcl. Euphor. par. 4.*

*Teneor, to be guilty or convinced. Teneri out, bus
de vi, to be guilty of violence or murther. uot with
Plecti capite, to be beheaded. Condemno, to de-
condemn. Sponsionis condemnari, to be cast
in the wager.*

*Solvo, to acquit, cum famulis operum
solutis, Hor. 17. l. 3.*

*Absolvo, to quit or discharge. Belli, bello
de bello. Libero, to free or quit. Liberare
aliquem metu, to put out of fear. Purgo, to
clear, de re aliqua, construed with de libe-
ro, is commonly used with an Ablative: as,
pericolo liberare.*

*These Verbs following habe commonly
an Accusative of the fault, and a Genitive
of the person, except in Possessives, &c.
where the Adjective agreeeth with the Sub-
stantive, denoting the crime.*

*Reprehendo, to blame or reprove. Repre-
hendo illius negligentiam, I blame his negli-
gence. Reprehendo tuam negligentiam, I
reprove thy negligence. So Peccata alicujus
corripere, to reprehend ones faults. Consili-
um alicujus vituperare, to blame ones coun-
sel. Ignaviam tuam culpare, to blame thy
sloth. Vitium aliquod notare, to reprehend
or reprove some vice. Increpas meam igna-
viam, dost thou blame my sloth. Excusare tar-
ditatem literarum alicujus, to excuse ones
slownesse in sending Letters. Traducere car-
mina manifesto facto, to note ones verses to be
stolen out of others. Suggillo, to defame, de-
tract or reprove. Morte multicare, to punish
by*

Construction of the Gen. case.

by death. Familiari multare, usque ad mortem, to beat a family to death.

Uter, both. Nullus, none. Alter, another. Neuter, neither of the two. Alius, another. Ambo, both, and the Superlative degree are not put to Verbs belonging to this Rule, except in the Ablative case, accusas furti, an stupro, an utroque, or de utroque.

Rule 15.

Verbs of remembrance, & obli-
brance, or forgetting, vionis verba, Geniti-
desire a Genitive or vum aut accusativum
Accusative case, Ad- desiderant, Adjectiva
jectives a Genitive, Genitivum.
following the sign of.

Vive *memor *lethi, live mindful of death.

Observations.

1. Verbs signifying remembrance, or forgetting, require a Genitive case, or an Accusative of the thing : as,

Obliviscor, { Lectionis, } oblitus pub-
or licæ salu-
{ Lectionem, } tis,

But they require a Genitive case of the person only, and not an Accusative : as, obliviscor fratris; not fratrem.

2. Adjectives signifying remembrance or forgetting, require a Genitive case only of the thing or person.

3. Memini, to make mention, or speak of, is construed with an Ablative case with de, and sometimes a Genitive, and so is in mentem venit, in mentem venit potestatis, or de potestatis. Yet memini is construed

Construction of the Gen. case.

construed with a Genitive, not an Accusative case of Pronoun Primitives : as,

Meminisse { mei } { me. }
tui not te.
sui se.

Moneo, and admo. Admoneo, com-
neeo, to warn, or put in moneo, commonefa-
mind. Commoneo, cio, cum accusativo
commonefacio, with habent genitivum,
an Accusative have a aut ablativum, cum
Genitive or Ablative Præpositione de:
with the Preposition de. The person warned is Accusative, and the
thing whereof he is warned, is Genitive, follow-
ing of.

Putavi eā de re, admonendum esse te, I
thought that thou wert to be put in mind of that
matter. Ad his commodis admonitus cala-
mitatis meæ.

Observation.

If the thing whereof one is put in mind, be an Adjective put Substantively, it is put in the Accusative case also: as, * illud * me *admonuisti. Multa admonemur ab amicis, such Adjectives are these, quod, quid, hoc, istud, illud, id, idem multa pauca. Unum, duo, tria, &c. and sometimes of the thing in other Nouns: as, moneo te hanc rem, &c.

Many Adjectives have a Gen. case after them, when causâ gratiâ, or ratione, are un-
derstood: as, egregius, impiger, ferox, perva-
cax, saucius, fatigatus, floridus, maturus, in-
glorius, fessus, lassus, integer, rectus, serus, fe-
stinus, invictus, trepidus, &c. as, floridus &
vi, i.e. ratione avi.

Construction of the Gen. case.

By Greek constru- Per Hellenismum
tion these require a hæc Genitivum po-
Genitive case. stulant.

1. Verba desinendi, Verbs of ceasing or leaving off: ag, define querelarum, for desine à querelis, leave off complaints. Desistere pugnæ, for pugnâ, oꝝ de pugnâ, to leave off fighting. Abstinere rixæ, for rixâ, oꝝ a rixâ, to leave off brabbling.

2. Verba imperandi, Verbs of ruling: ag, Regnavit populorum, for populos, and do minor.

3. Verba admirandi, Verbs of wondring: ag, miror.

4. Verbs signifying a passion of the mind; ag, Induleo, to be sorry. Invideo, fastideo, crus besco, furo, vereor.

5. Verba participandi, Verbs of partaking: ag, participo.

6. Verbs of caring: ag, curo, studeo.

Rule 17. Some Adverbs of place and time receive a Genitive case after them. Quædam adverbia loci, & temporis Genitivum post se recipiunt.

Piè vivite, * ubicuuque * locorum vi-
vitis, live godly, wheresoever ye live.

Observations.

Adverbs of place belonging to this Rule.
Ubi terrarum, where or in what place? Ubi-
nam gentium sumus, in what Country be we?
Ubivis gentium, in any place, in what place
you

Construction of the Gen. case.

you will. Nusquam gentium, in no place. Eò loci, in that place. Eò magnitudinis, to that bignesse. Quò gentium fugiam, to what corner of the world shall I fly? Huc vicinæ, here in this street by us. Huccine rerum venimus! Is the matter come to this passe?

Adverbs of time: Nunc dierum, nowadays. Tunc temporis, at that time. Inter ea temporis, and interea loci, in the mean while. Pridiè, on the day before. Postridiè, on the day after. Minimè Gentium, in no wise.

When pridiè and postridie, are construed with an Accusative case, after pridiè understand ante, and after postridie understand post: ag, pridie idus, for pridie ante idus.

Construction of the Dative case:

Nouns and Verbs require a Dative case of the thing, or person, to whom any thing is gotten, or taken from, following this sign to or for, and sometimes into, to, or upon. **N**omina & ver. Rule 1. ba, Dativum case of the thing, or person, cui aliquid acquiritur aut admittitur.

* Debemur * morti nos nostraque, wee and ours are due to death.

Observations.

1. This Rule is so general, that it comprehendeth not only Nouns Substantives, and Adjectives, but all kinds of Verbs, Active, Passive, Neuter, and Deponent. Hitherto are referred those phrases, where the Primitive is put in the Dative case for the Possessive: *as*, illustravit mihi oculos, *for* meos oculos. *Caret tibi pectus inani ambitione*, Hor. ep. 10. p. 294. *sue sibi hunc jugulo gladio.*

2. *On or upon*, are signs of the Dative (by vertue of the composition) after Actives: *as*, injectit ignem ædibus, *he set or cast fire on the house*. Attineo, pertineo, specto, have an Accusative with ad.

Rule 2.

Adjectives and Adjectiva & Verbs, signifying profit, or disprofit, govern a Dative case. *admodum*, *aut incommodum*, *significantia*, *regunt Dativum.*

*Nulli *rei *utilis, good for nothing.*

Observations:

Adjectives belonging to this Rule: *Commodus*, *profitable*. *Bonus*, *good*. *Fœlix*, *favourable, or profitable*. *Prosper*, *prosperous, or lucky*. *Salutaris*, *wholesome, healthful, or profitable*. *Incommodus*, *unprofitable*. *Inutilis*, *unprofitable*. *Malus*, *ill*. *Infœlix*, *unhappy, unlucky*. *Exitiosus*, *deadly, dangerous*. *Perniciosus*, *deadly, dangerous*. *Lethalis*,

thalis, *deadly*. *Damnosus*, *hurtful*. *Periculosis*, *dangerous*, &c.

To or for after these Adjectives, is a sign of the Dative case, but seldom the Accusative with ad.

Verbs belonging to this Rule: *Commodo* to profit. *Officio*, to hurt. *Incommodo*, to disprofit. *Noceo*, to hurt, and Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*: *as*, *satisfacio*, *benefacio*, *malefacio*.

Note here and diligently remember, for it is profitable to all who would not mistake, what Verbs have after them per se, or immediately the case of the Rule, 1. Of the thing. 2. Of person. 3. Of both, and which govern a case beside the case in the Rule. For example: *Officio* hath a Dative case immediately (i. e.) (no word coming between) of the thing or person: *as*, *Lætis frugibus officere*, *moribus officere*, *lucris offecuram*: and *noceo*, *nemini nocere*, *reipublicæ nocere*, without the sign to or for: and the like of Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, and *benevertio*, to profit, is construed with a Dative: *as*, *hoc tibi bene vertat*, which Observation is to be looked into in all the following Rules.

These Verbs *juvo*, *adjuvo*, to help. *Ledo*, to hurt. *Offendo*, to hurt, have an Accusative case immediately, because they are Actives.

Construction of the Dat. case.

Words which signify pleasure and grief, & dolorem signifi. delight in a Dative cantDativo gaudent. case.

Turba * gravis * paci, a rabble or rout, But denous, or grievous to peace.

Observations:

Adjectives of pleasure and grief, are Dulcis, pleasant. Jucundus, pleasant. Amarus, grievous. Acerbus, grievous or unpleasant. Ingratus, unpleasant. Injucundus, unpleasant. Molestus, grievous. Gravis, grievous, which habe a Dative case with the sign to or for before it.

Verbs belonging to this Rule: Placeo, to please. Sedeo, Englished to please. Displi- ceo, to displease. Doleo, to be grieved, which sometimes admitteth an Accusative of the thing before which you may understand propter: as, tu tua damnatio dolo, for propter tua damnatione: also with de: as, sum miseri & de me quod doluere nihil: after these Verbs put a Dative immediately, although before it there be not the sign to or for: as, Cujus enim * malis non * in- dolesco perinde ac meis. Qui * sibi * dis- plicet in vitis * Deo * placer.

Words which signify help, favour, vorem, atque his and the contrary to contraria significant, these require a Dative Dativum adsciscunt. case.

Bonis

Construction of the Dative case.] 275

Bonis nocet quisquis pepercit malis, he hurteth good men, whosoever hath spared bad.

Observations.

Adjectives appertaining to this Rule; Amicus, favourable. Benevolus, friendly or favourable. Blandus, gentle or friendly. Cherus, dear, or favoured. Familiaris, a friend. Intimus, a dear friend. Socius, a mate or fellow. Propitius, favourable. Praesto, ready at hand. Praesto esse alicui, to help, or lend one his help. Ad nutum tuum praesto est, he is ready at your beck. Inimicus, hurtfull. Infestus, hateful, or hurtful. Infensus, displeased, or unfavourable. Odiosus, hateful or grievous, unpleasant. Invisus, hated, or odious.

To σ with after these Adjectives, is a sign of the Dative, infensus mihi.

Verbs belonging to this Rule; Auxilior, to help. Opitulor, to aid or help. Patrocinor, to defend. Indotatis patrocinari modeor, to heal. Ruta medetur venenis, orationis tenuitati atque inopia nulla ratione mederi queas. Faveo, to favour. Grator, to give thanks to. Gratulor, to be glad and rejoyce in ones behalf. Gratulor tibi hanc rem, gratulor tibi de hac re, gratulor tibi in hoc, I rejoyce in your behalf for this thing. Gratulari fortunis alicujus. Opem fero, to help. Subvenio succurro, to help. Plaudo Tu pro sim to flatter. Suæ plaudit suaviter prudentia. galari iuâ Parco, to spare or forgive. Parcere seni. humanitate Indulgeo, to favour. * Indulgere labori. venium in dulge Mr. Parcè tamen hæc tibi indulgeas. Fautria Farn. autoritati. You see these are usually con- structed.

Construction of the Dat. case.

Stued with a Dative case immediately, although before it there be neither the sign to nor for.

Rule 5.

Adjectives of likeness and unlikeness: also, Communis, common. Proprius, proper: and superstes, a survivor, are joyned usually to a Dative, and sometimes to a Genitive case.

Adjectiva simili- tudinis, & dissimili- tudinis, communis, item proprius & superstes Dativo usita- tius, nonnunquam & Genitivo adjun- guntur.

Aranearum * similes leges * cassibus,
Laws like to Spiders webs.

Observations.

Adjectives of likeness: similis, like: par, like: æmulus, like: labra æmula roris, lips in a manner as red as roses: æquus, alike: geminus, equal: germanus, very like: idem, like.

2. *Some Compounds of con: as, concors, agreeable, or alike: coævus, of the same age: coætaneus, which is of one time and age: consentaneus, agreeable: cognatus, agreeable, very like.*

Adjectives of unlikeness: dissimilis, unlike: dispar, unlike: diversus, contrary: alienus, contrary: inæqualis, unequal, not even: ini- quis, not indifferent, or just, unjust.

Alienus, governs a Dative or Ablative alone, or with the Preposition a, or ab, and sometimes a Genitive.

Alienum.

Construction of the Dative case.

*Alienum arti, not agreeable to art.
Alienum suâ Majestate, not meet for his Majesty.*

Alienum à sapiente, not meet for a wise man.

3. *Commonly Adjectives when they sig- nifie likeness, or unlikeness, in manners, learning, &c. have a Genitive, sape solet similis filius esse Patris, but likeness in form, age, fortune, &c. a Dative.*

4. *A after Adjectives of likeness, hath to understood before a: as, like a man, for like to a man, and to before the: as, like the man, for like to the man.*

Verbs of comparing Verba comparandi require a Dative case Rule 6. Dativum requirunt. following to or with.

Necesse est sibi nimium tribuat, qui * se * nemini * comparat: It is necessary that hee attribute too much to himself, who compareth himself to no man.

Observations.

1. *Verbs of comparing, have an Accusa- tive case of the thing compared, and a Dative of the thing to which it is com- pared.*

2. *This Dative case is sometimes turned into the Accusative, with ad: as, si ad eum comparatur, and sometimes into the Ablat. with cum comparo Virgiliū cū Homerō.*

3. *Verbs of comparing are compono, to com- pare: comparo, to compare: confero, to com- pare: æquo, to compare: adæquo, to compare: æquipero, to compare: contendō, to compare.*

Words.

Construction of the Dative case.

Rule 7.

Words which signify fitness or the contrary, choose to themselves a Dative case with to aptant. Quæ aptitudinem significant aut contra Dativum sibi ad-aptantur.

Aptus alliciendis foeminarum animis, fit to allure womens mindes.

Observations.

1. *Adjectives belonging to this Rule.* Aptus, idoneus, habilis, opportunus, ineptus, all Englished fit, unfit, and the Verb apto: ag, Sublatus impedes, & vertice humanissimè aperto, me orationi aptabam.

2. Sometimes they admit an Accusative with a Preposition: ag, inepti ad magna.

Adjectives of neer-ness, delight in a Dative case, with the sign to. Propinquitatis adjectiva Dativo gaudent.

Vicinus illi, very like unto him.

Observations.

1. *Adjectives belonging to this Rule:* Vicinus, near, next. Propinquus, near. Proprior, nearer. Proximus, next. Finitimus next. Confinis, next. Conterminus, nigh. Contermina ripæ, nigh to, or close upon the bank. Contiguus, very near. And propinquo poetice.

2. Though this be the usual constru-

Construction of the Dative case.

tion, yet sometimes they admit of a Preposition ad. Proximus, ad dominum nullo prohibente sedeto, and qui te proximus est fog ad te.

Words which signify easiness and the contrary, will have a Dative case, with the sign to. Quæ facilitatem significant contra volunt.

Nil mortalibus arduum est, nothing is difficult to mortals.

Observations.

Adjectives belonging to this Rule. Facilis, gentle. Mitis, meek or mild. Obvius, gentle or easie: ag, obvia urbs inimicis, a City easie to be taken. Also obvius, to meet: ag, se mihi obvium dedit, he met me. And also the Adverb obviam, to prevent, stop, or resist: ag, Itum est obviam superbia nobilitatis, bee met with, or stop the pride of the nobility. Pervius, easie to bee passed. Pervia domus ventis, a house open to all windes. Perspicuus, easie, or evident. Dubius, doubtfull or difficult. Difficilis, hard, Durus, hard. Arduus, hard. Invius, hard. Laboriosus, hard.

Verbs: ag, Liber, it liketh. Si * libitum tibi erit, if it shall like you. Non est in iustitia in consilio Dei aeterno de iis * quos * libuit perdendis. Licet, it is lawfull. Liquet, it is clear. Expedit, it is needful, they are usually construed with a Dative case, having to or for before it.

Construction of the Dative case.

Præceps ad iram, inclined to anger. Pronus ad vitia, inclined to vice. Proclivis à labore ad libidinem, ready to fall from labour, to unlawful lust. Constituted with the Preposition ad.

Rule 9.

Verbs, or Adjectives derived of verbs ending in bilis, delight in a Dative case, with of before it.

Meretrix * cuivis * mercabilis. Ovid. A light housewife that may be bought of any one.

Rule 10.

Words which signify faithfulness, or unfaithfulness, require a Denotant Dativum postulant.

Vercor nè * cui de te plus quam * tibi credas, I fear lest thou believe any man of thee, more than thy self.

Observations.

1. Adjectives pertaining to this Rule: Fidelis, faithful. Fidus, trusty. Credulus, light, or rash of belief. Infidus, unfaithful. Maleficus, unfaithful: To after them is a sign of the Dative case.

2. Verbs: Credo, to believe. Fido, to trust. Diffido, to distrust. Fidem habeo, to believe. Confido, to trust, or put trust in. Fidem facio: as, Fidem Pedoni apud me faciebat, he made me believe Pedo, they have usually a Dat. immediately, or per se.

3. Sometimes they admit of an Ablat. case,

Construction of the Dative case. 281

case, before which you may understand a Preposition: as, anni tempore confise.

4. Credo, to commit, hath an Accus. case, at nemo ex vobis audet se credere pugnare.

5. Although these and many other verbs have after them a Dat. yet the Relative quod or quid, Adjectives put Substantively, Rule 3. in Concord Figurative, which by the rule of the Relative, Rule 4. in Concord plain, should be such case as the Verb governs, are notwithstanding put in the Accus. as, de irrisione quid respondeas, non ignoro illud.

Si quid monitoris è gestu, ut aliquid responderet.

Si quid mihi credas, si quid sub te proficerit ei libebit quod non licet, cum perieulo custoditur quod multis placet. It is otherwise with the person: as, Est Deo gratia, habet quibus tutò possit fidere & quibus maxime fudit, and with a Substantive joined to the Relative. Si cui flagitio succumbas.

Words of obeying, Obediendi, &c re. Rule 11. resisting, or withstandi voces datus, require a Dat. vum adsciscare.

* Diabolo si * resistatur est ut formica si * obediatur ut leo, if we resist the Devil, he is as a pismire, if we obey him as a lion.

Non bene crede mihi, servo servitur amico.

Observations.

1. Adjectives belonging to this Rule, supplex, humble or suppliant: morigerus, obedient. Dicto

Construction of the Dative case.

Dicto audiens, obedient. Obnoxius, subject or obedient. Rebellis, rebellious, or disobedient. Pugnax, stubborn, contentious, or contrary. Adversus, opposite, or contrary to, which habe a Dative of the word following the sign to.

2. Verbs Pareo, to obey. Obedio, to obey. obsequor, to obey. Obtempero, to obey. Morem cedo, to obey. Morem gero, to obey. Morigeror, to obey. Servio, to serve. Famulor, to serve. Ancillor, to serve humbly, and diligently. Velificor, with diligence to endeavour or procure. Honori suo velificari. Blandior, to flatter, fawn, or deceive. Adulor, to flatter, as dogs do their Master. Assentior, to agree, consent, or accord. Palpo, to flatter. Repugno, to resist, and pugno, to resist. Certo, to contend or strive, which admitt of cum. Cum aliquo certare. Advensor, to resist. Luctor, to strive with, or struggle against. Reluctor, to wrastle, or strive against. Reclamo, to gainsay, or cry against, which govern a Dative case immediately of the thing or person, whether there be sign or no. Although sometimes we read a Preposition: ag, cum votis suis luctantur. In antiquos mores suos veluti professâ lite pugnabat. In voluptates reclamare, &c. Adulor, assentor, assentior, advensor palpo, are also read with an Accusative case sometimes.

Rule 12.

Verbs of giving and restoring, receive a reddendi, Dativum Dative case. Verba dandi, & admittunt.

* Dat * tibi divitias, he giveth riches to thee.

Obser-

Construction of the Dative case:

Observations.

1. Verbs of giving and restoring, have an Accusative case of the thing given: ag, dat divitias, and a Dative of the person following the sign to: ag, dat tibi divitias.

2. The Dative often loseth its signe, if the natural order of the words be inverted, or misplaced: ag, I promise thee this, for I promise this to thee: I give thee this, for I give this to thee, &c.

3. Verbs belonging to this Rule. Dedo, to render up. Tribuo, to give. Largior, to give liberally. Trado, to deliver. Mando, as, to commit, or to give in charge. Concedo, to grant, or give. Ministro, to proffer, offer, or give. Suppedito, to give, or minister. Commodo, to lend. Præbeo, to give, or offer. Exhibeo, to offer, present, or give. Impendo, to bestow, or employ. Reddo, to restore. Restituo, to restore. Refero, to render or restore. Remunero, to requite. Remetior, to measure again. Also Remunerare aliquem munere, to reward one with a gift. Facta dicta mea noctu remetior, In the night I remember again all that I have done or spoken.

Do literas tibi, I send a Letter to thee, that thou mightst bear it to another, tibi tanquam tabellario.

Do literas ad te, I send a letter to be carried to thee, that thou maist read it.

Observe in general that,

4. Ancient Writers were wont to put the

the Preposition *ad* almost to all Verbs governing a Dat. Do is used elegantly with in to the Accusat. of the thing: *as*, *dat animum in luctus*.

Verbs of being angry, pass into a Dat. case Dati ym transeunt, having with before it.

*Fidis * offendar * medicis * irascar
* amicis, I can be displeased with my faithfull
Physitians, I can be angry with my friends.*

Observations.

Verbs of being angry.: *Irascor, to be angry.*
Indignor, to be mad angry, to be displeased.
Succenso, to be angry for good cause. *Offendor, to be offended, or displeased.*

They have a Dat. case immediately of the thing or person.

Verbs of commanding, and shewing, & nunciandi Dati. receive a Dat. case. Vnum admittunt.

** Imperat aut * servit collecta pecunia
* cuique, money gathered together, commandeth
or serveth every one.*

Observations.

*Imperat
vero mea
pnori re-
stra digni-
tm.*

*Verbs: Impero, to command with authority.
Jubeo, to command. Præcipio, to com-
mand, præcipere aliis.*

Dominor,

*Dominor, to rule. Dominari astris. Do-
minari in suos. Mando, as, to bid or com-
mand, mandare alicui, mandare in ultimas
terras.*

*Nuncio, to shew. Nuncio tibi salutem
ab sodali solidam, I have hearty commendati-
ons to you, &c.*

*Renuncio, to refuse, or have nothing to do
with. Renuncio civilibus officiis, renuncio
amicitiæ, hospitio, muneri, understand
repudium vel nucium, as some will.*

*Dico, to tell. Declaro, to declare or shew.
Aperio, to open or discover. Expono, to set
forth, or shew. Explico, to spread open, or
declare. Monstro, to shew. Indico, to
shew. Explico, to spread open, or declare.*

*Monstro, to shew. Indico, to shew. Sig-
nifico, to note. Ostendo, to shew. Nar-
ro, to shew, tell, or report. Patefacio, to
open, declare, or discover. Provinciæ toti
quam maximum militum numerum imperat.
Imperat prætoribus. Jubeo, to decree, or
appoint, governeth an Accus. case, Legem
jussit. 2. It is sometimes construed with
an Accus. of the thing: Jubet ea quæ fa-
cienda sunt. Especially, quid, what; hoc,
this; illud, that; id, that; aliquid, something;
nihil, nothing; multa, many things, being
Adjectives put Substantively. 3. It is con-
strued with an Accus. case of the person, by
reason of an Infinitive mood understood after
it. Imo filium potius jube, otherwise jussit
militibus, jussit custodibus. Voluptatibus
imperare. Quot voluminibus præcipiunt de
restitutione, præcipio tibi hanc rem, superi-
oribus nubibus præcipisset, and præcipe lu-
gubres cantus, Hor. Ode 24.l.i. Verbs*

Construction of the Dative case.

Verbs of shewing, habe usually an Accusative case of the thing, and a Dative of the person.

Rule 15. *Verbs of promising, owing, threatening, paying, require a Dative case.* Verba promittendi, debendi, solvendi, minandi, Dativum adsciscunt.

Hæc tibi promitto, I promise these things to thee.

Observations.

1. *Verbs of promising.* Promitto, to promise. Polliceor, to promise. Spondeo, to promise, which have an Accusative case of the thing promised, and a Dative of the person.

2. *Verbs of owing and paying.* Debeo, to owe. Magnoperè tibi debeo, I am greatly bound to you. Solvo, to pay. Appendo, to pay. Numero, to pay, which have an Accusative of the thing, and a Dative of the person.

3. *Verbs of threatening:* Minor, to threaten. Minitor, to threaten. Interminor, to threaten much, have usually an Accusative of the thing, and Dative of the person. Minatur sponsæ suæ. Hinc & hinc tauros premens vitulis minatur. Sen. Trag. Thyes. ve. 729. quæ nihilominus vestris nunc minatur capitibus, quam aliorum minitur senatui. Mortem fratri est minitatus.

Rule 16. *These Verbs delight in a Dative case usual.* Hæc dativo gau- dent suadeo, persua-

Construction of the Dat. case.

ly: suadeo, to coun- deo, respondeo, vaco, sel: persuadeo, to nubo, misceo, hæreo, move or persuade: voveo, devoveo, in- respondeo, to answer: nitor, insideor. vaco, to apply, or give himself to: nubo, to be married: misceo, to mingle: hæreo, to stick fast: voveo, to vow, &c.

Observations.

Suadeo and persuadeo tibi. Suadeo, to counsel, hath an Accusative case of the thing counselled hence. Argumentum ad suadendum fidem respondeo tibi, si monitis meis parum respondeas, ad hæc ille responder, and tuæ epistolæ non rescripsi, I have not answered your Letter. Vaco, nec vacat mu- sis, nec suis vacaret. Nubere uxori. Mis- ceo: ag, Metum miscebant operi. Viliori turbæ immiscui. Prorectura viro miscet sitiente rubetam, Juv. Sat. I. ve. 70. miserog; tumultu miscetur, Virg. An. I. 2. mistus in Bacchum crux spectante te potetur. Sen. Trag. Thies. ve. 66. and hærere in parentis vestigiis, hærer lateri lethalis arundo.

Sum, with the Com. pounds except possum, sitis præter possum require a Dative case with to or for before it.

Multa *petentibus *desunt multa, Ma- ny things are wanting to men desiring many things.

Sum cum compo- Rule 17.
pounds except possum, sitis præter possum
require a Dative case
with to or for before
it.

Observation.

1. Absum, is construed with an Ablative, Absint inani funere nāniz: à quā vitā absit prudentia.

2. Adsum, sometimes hath a Preposition, Adesse ad aures, in pugnā non affuerat.

3. Desum, insum, intersum, subsum, have also sometimes an Ablative with a Preposition: Defuit in Antonio, insunt in amore, in hoc interesse in nullā re subest suspicio.

Rule 18. Est and suppetit for habeo, requireth a Dative case. Est & suppetit pro habeo, requireth a habeo Dativum exigitur.

An nescis longas * Regibus * esse * manus; Knowest thou not that Kings have long hands? pauper enim non est * cui rerum * suppetit usus.

Observations.

1. To after est is a sign of the Dat. case, if the order of the words be observed: as, I have a Book, or a Book is to me: thou hast a Book, or a Book is to thee: he hath a Book, or a Book is to him. Plurally, Wee have a Book, or a Book is to us: yee have a Book, or a Book is to you: they have a Book, or a Book is to them.

2. If you translate your speech by habeo, then this phrase holdeth not at all, which

you

Construction of the Dat. case.

you may with no lesse eloquence doe.

Sepè tacens * vocem verbaque * vultus * habet, by the phrase of est thus: sapè vox & verba sunt tacenti vultui.

Sum, with some other Verbs, requireth a double Dative case, cuni aliis quibusdam Verbis, geminum adseiscit with to and for. Rule 19. Dativum.

Pietas nemini fraudi esse debet, Godliness ought to be a guile to no man.

Observations.

1. When a and to come after sum, a notes the Nom. to the Dat. and when the Nom. is changed into the Dat. it hath two Datives: pietas sapienti lucro est, godliness is gain to a wise man, or for gain to a wise man.

2. Verbs having after them two Accusative cases, whereof the latter is put in the same case with the former, by Rule 6. p. 229. and a Dative, doe in like manner often change the latter Accusative case into the Dative, and so have after them two Datives, and an Accusative. Hunc sibi locum domicilium, or domicilio delegerunt.

3. Verbs belonging to this Rule: do, to give: duco, to esteem, judge, or think: verto, to impure: id mihi vitio vertit, hee blameth me for that: pateo, to bee opened: indo, to give. Galasimo nomen mihi indidit parvo Pater. Plaut. Stich: ac. 2. Scen. 1. cui nunc cognomen Julo.

O

Verbs

Construction of the Dat. case.

Rule 20.

Verbs of taking a- Verba adimendi,
way , of driving a- arcendi, dissidendi,
way , of differing, Dativum sibi usita-
have ordinarily a Da- tius subjiciunt.
tive case after them
following the signe from.

Inimici mei, mea mihi non meipsum ade-
merunt, My enemies have taken away mine,
not my self from me.

Observations:

Sometimes they are construed with
the Prepositions à, ab, è, ex, or de.

1. Verbs of taking away. Adinio, to take
away. Eripio, to take away by force. Demo,
to take away. Diripio, to take away by vio-
lence. Surripio, to steal or take away privi-
ly. Detraho, to pull away. Tollo, to take
away. Excurio, to take away. Excutere
oculos alicui, to dash ones eyes out of his head.
Lachrymas excutere alicui, to make one cry.
Extorquo, to take away by force. Execo, to
cut away, or cut out. Detero, to diminish.
Curto, to diminish. Abrogo, to take away,
or depose. Potestatem alicui abrogare, to
deprive one of his authority. Non exciderat
menti, Barc. Euphor. p. 157. Adimam canta-
re severis, Hor. l. i. Ep. 19. and arceo, de-
fendo, prohibeo, dissideo, differo, discre-
po, dissentio, discedo.

Rule 21.

Some Verbs com- Dativum postu-
pounded with præ, ad, lant verba quædam
con, sub, ante, post, composta cum, præ-
ob,

Construction of the Dat. case.

ob, in, inter, super, ad, con, sub, ante,
require a Dat. case. post, ob, in, inter,
super.

Quod satis est, cui contingit, nihil am-
plius optet, Let him wish no more, who
hath what is enough.

Observations.

This of all the Rules in the Grammar, is
most intricate.

Mr. Danes to untangle it, makes three
of it, and doth well.

1. That Actives and Deponents signif-
ing actively, have an Accus. and Dat. In-
iquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero,
and suam sortem supergressa. Hostibus in-
sidior.

2. That Neuters and Passives so com-
pounded, have a Dat. without an Accus.
Hoc mihi sufficit, animarum saluti invigi-
lare, si oleum vase ingeratur.

3. That præeo, præsto, præcedo, præ-
curro, have a Dat. or Accus. and many o-
thers also compounded with ante, ob, in,
doe change their Dat. into the case of these
Preposition.

Others say, Verbs so compounded
have usually a Dative, and add to them
circum and contra, and say that few Neu-
ters compounded with inter and ante, have
an Accus. case.

The best instruction is to rely upon Au-
thority; yet it is to be noted,

1. If to or for, come after any such
Verb, you may put a Dative, cum nemini

Construction of the Dat. case.

obtrudi potest itur ad me. Conducit hoc tuæ laudi. Intervenit his cogitationibus avitum malum.

2. Many Verbs so compounded, belong to former Rules, which are discerned by their English: as, Adversor, succurro, ignosco, præcipio, invideo, &c.

3. Have always a book in readiness, to note what is the use of authority: as,

Præ.

Prætenduntur præcordia cordi. Legatis imperat quos legionibus præficerat. Præsidere diei & nocti, to rule over. &c.

Ad.

Adhæreo religioni, and ad murum adhæreo, and justitiae honestatique adherescere. Adequito castris. Adfremit his quatique caput. Fœmina connipedi semper adhincit equo. Adhinnire ad orationem, to receive a speech with applause. Adnabam terra Christus homo pariter ac Deus assidet Deo. Affulsit mihi spes. Huic ædium parti affulget sol. Affulsit fortuna mihi, &c. sænè dictis aut factis arridere.

Con.

Habeo alia multa quæ nunc condonabitur. * *Hellenismus*. Levem Magistrum & misericordem principem vocant, qui sceleribus quibusdam vel connivet, vel etiam facet. Omnis oratio mœribus consonet. Congruit mulier mulieri magis. Convictor pontifici, & ignorantiae conjuncta est arrogatio.

* Neutra plurali gaudent verbo singulari.

Construction of the Accus. case. 293

Sub.

Si invitis nobis irascitur nunquam rationi succumbet. Alteri successit tertius & tertio quartus succedunt tecto. Pecunia fortunæ subiacet. Si consuetudini suffragatur veritas. Cui subit ratio.

Ante,

Antecello, antecedo, anteco, antesto, antefero illi & illum. Virtus omnibus rebus anteit.

Post.

Postponere honestum officium scorto, to set more by an harlot, then by honest duty, because it is Active, it hath an Accusative with a Dative.

Ob.

Obstrectare legi, and proximo. Populus assuescat bonis oppedere. Nostro labori obstrepere, to cry out against our labour. Tyrannidi obsecundare vitæ infidiari.

In.

Quorum eruditionem imitatur, eorum quoque moribus diligentissimâ æmulatione insistat. Non modò invidetur illi ætati, sed etiam favetur. Instare operi. Miseris insultare. Duni Priami Paridisque busto insultet. Cupiditas mihi incessit. Imperiis, divitiis, inhiare, and inhiant ad ea quæ perennia sunt ac coelestia. Insidere medullis, to stick fast to the marrow. Innatæ concreto sanguini. Alienis malis ingemiscere incambens

Construction of the Dat. case.

bens tereti olivæ. Marmori non pulveri in
scribere.

Inter.

Lupus intervenit fabulae. Interposita
cruribus suis arundine. Cui nemo inter-
dicere possit. Interdico tibi aquam. Inter-
clusuri hostem commeatu à commeatu, &
hosti commeatum.

Circum.

Vinculum libertati meæ circundatum.
Murum silvæ circundatum.

Obeo, adeo, aspicio admiror, admit not
of a Dative.

Præeo, præcedo, præcurro, præverto,
prævenio, præsto, &c excell. Præverto, præ-
vertor, with many others have an Accus.
Præcurreris mihi, præcurrerit rationem ante-
ibat illis, anteire exteros.

Rule 23. Hei, ah, alas, and Hei & vñ Dative
vñ, wo to, are put to apponuntur.
a Dative case, with the
sign to.

Hei * misero * mihi, alas to me wretched
man. Vñ vñctis, wo to men vanquished.

These have a smack Ista Græciam sa-
of Greece. piunt.

Nostro generi non decet. Vobis decet, ut
voluptati moror comes consequatur. Quia
comitantur huic vita. Alienis rebus curos.

Poets

Construction of the Accus. case. 295

Poets use the Dat. Usurpant Poetæ
for an Accus. case. Dativum pro Accu-
sativo.

It clamor cœlo, foz ad cœlum.

Construction of the Accusative
case.

Verbs Actives, Deponents, and
also Neuters, signifying
actively, govern an
Accus. case of the thing
or person, into which
the action passeth im-
mediately with the or
without a sign.

Verba Activa, Deponentia i-
tem & Neutra Acti-
vè significantia re-
gunt Accusativum
rei; aut personæ in
quam transit actio.

Crescentem sequitur cura pecuniani, care
followeth money increasing.

Observations.

1. Of after oleo, sapio, crepo, is com-
monly a sign of the Accusative case, crepat
facinora sua.

2. Exsus and perosus signifying actively,
govern an Accusative case.

3. Verbs Neuters, have an Accusative case
of their own, or near signification, which
sometimes is turned into the Ablative, diu-
videor vitâ vivere.

4. Cedo, foz tell me, or give thou, governing

O 4

an

Construction of the Accus. case.

an Accus. case: as, Cedo quenvis arbitrum.

5. Archaicē, or of old Substantives, governed the case of their Verbs. Quid tibi hanc curatio est rem.

Rule 2.

Poets put absolutely
Accus. cases of Adjectives
of either of both
numbers, in the Neuter Gender of Adverbs.

Accusativos Adjectivorum in Neutro
Genere utriusque
numeri absolute pos-
nunt Poëtæ pro Ad-
verbiijs.

Torvum fōr torvè, grimly. Stridens hor-
rendum, shrieking horribly. Immane, fōr im-
maniter, mightily, wondrously.

Rule 3.

Verbs of asking and teaching: also
coelo, and some other
Verbs, govern a double
Accusative case, one of
the person, the other of
the thing.

Verba rogandi &
docendi, celo item,
& alia quædam gemitum regunt Accusa-
tivum, unum perso-
næ rei alterum.

* Frugalitatem & * temperantiam * mul-
tos * docuit penuria. Extream need hath
taught many thriftiness and temperance.

Observations.

1. Of, after a Verb of asking, is a sign
of the Accusat. and from after celo.

2. Verbs of asking, are, Rogo, to ask.
Posco, to require. Flagito, to ask importu-
nately. Postulo, to require or demand. Ob-
secro, to beseech heartily. Oro, to intreat.

Hortor,

Construction of the Voc. case:

Hortor, to exhort. Percontor, to ask. Doceo
to teach. Edoceo, to teach perfectly. Erudio
to instruct. Rogor, I am asked. Doceor, I am
taught. Poscor, I am required. Moneor, I
am warned, which Passives also keep the
Accus. case of the thing.

Cuncta edocitus perlegatus, Salust. co-
hortatus cæteros.

3. The Accusative case of the person after
Verbs of asking, is often made by the Abla-
tive case with a or ab, veniamque ore-
mus ab ipso.

4. The Accusative case of the thing after
doceo, moneo, and celo, is often made by
the Ablative with de. Hæc Patrem celavit,
de his, hoc illum celatum voluisti.

5. Moneo and admoneo have an Accus.
of the thing of Adjectives put Substantively:
as, hoc, illud, istud, quod, id, quid, nihil,
unum, multa, which as I have before said,
are put to many other Verbs in the Accus.
case: as, si quid urimur, Hor. Ode 6. l. 1. si-
quid illa etiam perplexè annuerit, if shee,
&c. and two Accusatives, consulam hanc
rem amicos. Me aliquid juvare. Me quid-
quam adjuvas. Quod te horror, te id con-
sulo si quid me voles. Nihil imperium spe-
ctabat vergo id lachrimatur. Id stomocha-
bar. Si id credis & me ignoras. Ter. Heau-
ton nec te id consulo.

The measure of a thing
and space or distance of
place, are uttered in the
Accus. case, and some-
times in the Ablat.

Mensura rei & Rule 4.
spacium seu distantia
loci, in Accusativo
efferuntur: interdum
& in Ablativo.

O 5 { Negat

Construction of the Accus. case.

*Negat se à te * pedem discessisse, he de-
nyeth that he hath separated himself a foot from
thee.*

Observations.

1. The measure of a thing is put after these Adjectives: longus, latus, altus, crassus, *long, broad, high, thick;* by measure understand an inch, a yard, a pole, a foot, ten foot, &c.

2. Sometimes the measure is put in the Gen. case: areas latae pedum denūm, longas quinquagenūm satito. Murum in altitudinem quatuor cubitorum erigendū statuit. So mensurā, spatio, longitidine, latitudine crassitie, which are sometimes put instead of the aforementioned Adjectives, and we read ad duos pedes altum.

3. By distance of place, understand paces, furlongs, miles, &c. as, nec longis inter se passibus absunt. A rectâ conscientiâ transversum unguem non opertet discedere, wee must not depart from a good conscience a nails breadth.

4. If the space be in the Gen. case, understand via, viam, or itinere before it, abest bidui, that is, iter bidui, and we read ad millaria viginti, and circiter millia pasuum.

Rule 5.

O an Interjection of outcrying, governs an Accusativum regit, Accusative case, so sic & hem. O exclamantis

O

Construction of the Voc. case:

O hominem impurum! O lewd man. Hem Davum tibi. O Davus to thee.

Sometimes the Interjection & is understood before the Accusative case, me miserum! cur non ades? for & me, &c.

Construction of the Vocative case.

O An Interjection of calling or of naming, governeth a Vocative case, and also hem, heus, proh, ohe. O Vocantis, vel Rule 5: appellantis vocativo gaudet: ut & hem, heus, proh, ohe.

O formose puer nimium nè crede colori, O fair youth, trust not too much to external beauty.

Observation.

The Interjection & is sometimes understood before the Voc. case: as, Macte virtute esto, for & macte, &c. Quibus Hector ab oris expectate venis, for & expectate, &c.

Construction of the Ablative case.

T He instrument, the cause, & the manner is put in the Ablat. case.

J Nstrumentū, causa, Rule 1. & modus in Ablativō efferuntur. * Dete-

Construction of the Ablat. case.

* Deteriores omnes sumus * licentiā, we all are the worse by overmuch liberty.

Observations.

1. This Rule is common to all sorts of Verbs, to Substantives, and Adjectives.

2. To know when the word is the instrument, it is easie; for as it hath commonly with before it, so it is a Substantive of a thing material, signifying a body, or something that may be seen: as, a knife, a sword, a club, &c. and answereth to the question wherewith, in duo te veste.

3. The cause answereth to the question, why? with the signs by or for: as, I did it for thy sake: why? tuā causā, for thy sake.

4. The manner answereth to the question, how? with these signs of, at, with, by, through, and commonly is a Substantive of a thing immaterial, without a body, and signifying somewhat that cannot bee seen. How hath he performed this? Suā sponte, of his own accord. Eā lege, on that condition.

5. Sometimes to the cause or manner of the action, a Preposition is added: as, præ, ab, de, per, propter, ob; but to the instrument the Preposition is seldom or never express. Nec loqui præ morore potuit semper magno cum metu dicere incipio.

6. Hitherto belong gaudeo, lætor, afficio, prosequor: of after gloriōr, is a signs of the Ablative. Suā victoria gloriarentur, but then de or in seeing to be understood, which are usually express.

The

Construction of the Ablative case.

Pars affecta, genus Rule 2,
patria, subjiciuntur
nominibus Adjecti-
vis, Verbis Neutrīs,
& Passīvīs in Ablati-
vo sed frequentius,
apud Poētas in Ac-
cusativo.

Crine ruber, niger ore, brevis pede, lu-
mine laxus, Red haired, black mouthed, short
footed, sore eyed. Insignis genere, renowned
for his lineage, or as touching his stock.

Observations.

1. By the part affected, understand affe-
cted with colour: as, white, black, red, &c.
red as touching the hair; here the part affected
with rednesse, is the hair, or lamenesse, sick-
nesse: as, lame on the feet; the part affected
with lamenesse is the feet, or something be-
longing to some part.

2. Before the Accusative case per, quoad,
or secundum, may be understood. Baccha-
nalia vivunt (*i.e.*) secundum Bacchanalia;
or Bacchanalium ritu.

3. Sometimes the part affected is put in
the Gen. case: as, discrucior animi, I am
sore tormented in minde, and discrucior an-
num, and discrucior animo: also these,
animi nimius, integer, anxius, præceps, ar-
rectus, abjectior, incertus, suspensus, matur-
rus, validus, miser, amens, fidens, saucius,
trepidus, timidus, servidus, rectus sessus, æ-
ger lapsus, invictus.

The

Construction of the Ablat. case.

The price of a thing Precium rei in
is put in the Ablat. case Ablativo ponitur.
with the sign for , in,
at.

Nocet empta dolore voluptas. Pleasure
bought for grief, hurteth. Vitâ hoc illi pene
sterit. This almost cost him his life.

Observations.

Verbs belonging to this Rule: Emo, to buy. Vendo, to sell. Veneo, to bee sold. Constitit, it cost. Stetit, it cost. Conduco, to hire, Loco, to let out to hire. Est, it is worth in value, or at the price of. Quod non opus est assecarum est. Aestimo, toesse, or value. Censeo, to levy a taxe. Redimo, to redeem. Addico, to sell to him that will give most. Liceo, to be prized. Liceor, to set the price higher. Licitor, to cheapen.

2. Adjectives: ag, Venalis, that is set to sale. Carus, dear. Vilis, cheap. Vili, good cheap. Paulo, for little. Plurimo, for very much. Duplo, for double, which sometimes are put without Substantives.

3. The thing bought, is put in such case, as the Verb governs immediatly, but the price at which it is bought, is the Ablative: Ambitum quem tot angustiis emunt certè absque invidiâ habent. Valet sometimes admits of an Accusative case of the value. Valet asses duos, or assibus.

4. These Genitive cases are put without Substantives after Verbs of price. Tanti, for so much. Quantus, for how much? Tantidem, for so much at that price. Quanticunque, for how.

Construction of the Dative case.

how much soever. Pluris, for more. Minoris, for less. But if Substantives bee added, they are put in the Ablative case together with their Substantives: as, tantâ mercede docuit, and sometimes in the Genitive: as, vir minimi precii.

5. For after muto and commuto, is a sign of the Ablative case; the thing changed, is Accusative; the thing for which it is changed, is Ablative. Valet ima summis mucare: pet momentaria voluptas * in * perenni cruciatum * commutabitur.

Words signifying plenty or want, delight in an Ablative or Gen. case of the thing, wherein any thing abounds.

Quæ copiam significant aut inopiam, Ablativo gaudent, vel Genitivo rei, quæ quid abundat.

Animus * culpâ * plenus, semet timerit. A minde full of vice feareth it self. Omnis actio vacare debet temeritate, & negligentiâ. Every action ought to be void of rashness, and negligence.

Observations.

1. The common signs before the Ablative are, of, or with, satur dierum.

2. The thing filled, the thing emptied, furnished, encreased, is Accusative, or such case as the Verb governs, and that wherewith it is encreased, furnished, &c. is Ablative. Ego hoc * te * fasce * levabo, * eget * quo tu * abundas * consilio. Adjectives.

After

Construction of the Ablat.-case.

After these put an Ablat. or Gen.

Plenus, full. Dives, rich, or full. Locuples, wealthy, or full. Satur, fertile, or full. Tentus, strouting out, or full. Distentus, full. Fecundus, abundant, fruitful, or full. Vacuus, void, or empty. Inanis, empty or void. Orbus, deprived. Inops, destitute. Nudus, void, or empty. Liber, free, or void of.

After these usually put a Genitive.

Benignus, fruitful, or much given to. Vini somnique benignus, much given to wine and sleep. Fertilis, fruitful. Liberalis, free hearted, bountiful. Prosper, prosperous, or lucky. Lætus, fertile, or fruitful. Largus, bounteous. Prodigus, wasteful, or abundant. Profusus, flowing, abundant, excessive. Sterilis, barren, or empty. Pauper, one that wanteth, or lacketh. Argenti & auri pauper, that hath little money. Indigus, needy. Egenus, needy, lacking. Immunis, free. Expers, void, or without. Expers metu, without fear. Purus, void. Vitam publicæ infamiæ innocentem laudare.

After these usually put an Ablative.

Onustus, laden. Gravis, plenteous, or full. Gravidus, full of. Mactus, more increased or augmented. Macti virtute estote. Macte animi morumque tuorum. Refertus, full, replenished, or stuffed. Differtas, filled, or stuffed. Foetus, full. Cassus, void, or empty. Vidiuus, bereft, or deprived. Extorris, banished. Exul, banished, which also have sometimes, but very seldom a Gen. case.

Liber, vacuus, immunis, purus, nudus, inops,

Construction of the Ablat.-case.

inops, orbus, extorris, admit of the preposition *as* ab.

Adverbs belonging to this Rule governing a Genitive case.

Abundè, abundantly. Affatim, abundantly. Satis, sufficient. Parum, little. Quoad, as far as: as, quoad ejus fieri potest, as farre as could be. Nè intermitas quoad ejus facere poteris, scribere ad me, omit not as much as thou canst to write to me.

Opus and usus signifying need, require an Ablative case of the thing needed, with of before it, the person needing, if it be expressed, being the Dative. Sapiens nullâ re indiget & tamen multis illi rebus opus est, a wise man lacks nothing, and yet he hath need of many things, i. e. which are useful to him, and yet he can want them. Opus is elegantly used with the Participle of the Preterperfect Tense. Opus est consulto, it is necessary to take good advice. Opus est invento, they must finde it out. Opus est facto, they must perform it. Opus est exquisito, we must needs search out. Opus est cauto, they must take heed. Opus est parato, it is needful to prepare. Opus est transcurro, they must run quickly, and sometimes with a Substantive: as, hoc mihi opus est convento homino, I must needs speak with this man; and sometimes the Passive Supine: as, quod est maxime opus jacta, which is very necessary to be cast.

Verbs belonging to this Rule, which have rather an Ablat. than Genitive.

Abundo,

Construction of the Ablat. case.

Abundo, to abound. **Mano**, to spring or increase. **Affuo**, to abound. **Luxurio**, to abound excessively. **Augeo**, to furnish or fill. **Macto**, to grow or increase in, to fine. **Onero**, to lade, burden, or overcharge. **Satio**, to cloy or fill. **Cumulo**, to augment or increase. **Opulento**, to enrich, or make wealthy. **Premo**, to overcharge. **Beo**, to comfort, or enrich, to make glad or happy. **Communico**, to take part of: as, mensâ suâ communicare, aliquem, to give one meat at his table. **Levo**, to unburden, or to rid out of. **Exonero**, to unload. **Nudo**, to make void. **Spolio**, to bereave. **Orbo**, to bereave. **Viduo**, to bereave. **Exhaurio**, to empty or rob. **Privo**, to bereave. **Expedio**, to quit or discharge. **Frustror**, to disappoint. **Fraudo**, to deprive or deceive. **Paupero**, to make poor. **Emungo**, to cheat. **Emunxi argento senem**, I cheated the old man of his mony. **Vaco**, to want.

After these an Ablat. or Genitive.

Impleo, to fill. **Compleo**, to fill. **Egeo**, to lack. **Indigeo**, to lack. **Egeo, æris, careo** to want. **Saturo**, to fill or cloy. **Scateo**, to be full. **Potior**, to obtain. **Hic ipse qui rerum nunc potitur Rex**. **Potior voto**, I obtain my desire.

Rule 5.

Defungi
in hac re
cupio.

Utor, to use. **Fruor**, to enjoy. **Fungor**, to exercise an office or duty. **Vescor**, to feed. **Victito** and **vivo**, to live by eating. **Nitor**, to leave or trust to. **Nascor**

Utor. **Fungor**.
Fruor. **Vescor**. **Victito**. **Vivo**. **Nitor**.
Nascor. **Creor**. **Satus**. **Ortus**. **Editus**.
Sto. **Consto**. **Ablativi gaudent**. Also
to

Construction of the Ablat. case.

to be born. **Creor**, to be bred, or begotten. **Satus**, begotten. **Sto**, to stick, keep or stand to. **Consto**, to consist, or depend of, govern an Ablative case.

Boni * utuntur mundo ut * fruantur.
* Deo mali * utuntur * Deo ut * fruantur
* mundo. Good men use the world, that they may enjoy God. Wicked men use God, that they may enjoy the world.

Observations:

1. **Utor**, fungor, fruor, vescor, have usually an Ablative case of the thing or person, immediately after them, without any respect had to a sign: as, vescor carnis, and nitor, as niti sanguine. **Fiduciâ virtutis nobis nitendum est**. **Rapto**, and ex rapto vivere, to live by ravin or spoil. And quot artibus, quot molestiis constet hæc vita. Also quæ tota ex rebus fictis commentitii que constaret. Jam illis promissis non standum esse, quis non videt, now who seeth not that it is not meet to stand to those promises, and abutor, to abuse. **Divitiis abuti**, to waste prodigally his substance. **Defungor**, to dispatch. **Perfungor**, to doe ones office well.

2. Of after nascor, creor, satus, ortus, editus, it is a sign of the Ablative, and sometimes a Preposition therewith, ab his maijoribus orti.

Dignus

Rule 6.

Construction of the Ablat. case.

Dignus, worthy. Dignus, indignus,
 Indignus, unworthy. dignor, præditus,
 Dignor, to vouchsafe captus, contentus,
 or think worthy. Præ- fretus, auferendi ca-
 ditus, indued. Cap- sum adjectum vo-
 tus, taken in. Conten- lunt.
 tus, satisfied, or well pleased with. Fretus, trusting, or having confidence in, or being bold upon, will have an Ablative case.

* *Indignus est * dandis qui non est gratius de datis. He is unworthy of things to bee given, who is not thankeful for that which is given.*

Observations.

Of after dignus, indignus, dignor, is a sign of the Ablative case; and

With after præditus, captus, contentus, in or on after fretus. Contentus modicis, meoque latus, fretus, juventâ. When dignus is read with a Genitive case it is a Greek construction.

Rule 7.

Comparatives govern an Ablative case of the Noun, to which comparison is made, and which is expounded by than.

* *Asperius nihil est * humili cum surgit in altum. There is nothing more untractable, then a poor man, when he riseth to height or preferment. Plus anno, above a year.*

Obser-

*Comparativa regunt Ablativum non-
 minis, cui fit comparatio, & quod ex-
 ponitur, per quam.*

Construction of the Ablat. case.**Observations.**

1. *Than after the Comparative degree of Nouns or Adverbs, is a sign of the Ablative case: but if quam be express, it coupleth like cases with the Comparative after the Verb: as, Asperius nihil est quam humilis est.*

2. *Sometimes an Accusative case is used with a Preposition: scelere ante alios immanior omnes. Crucem statui jussit præter cæteras altiorem.*

3. *Malo is construed with an Ablative case after the manner of Comparatives: as, malim hordei granum omnibus gemmis, or malo fœ magis velim.*

An Ablative case, which signifieth the measure of excess, is set after Comparatives with the sign by.

Comparativis sub- jicitur Ablativus, qui mensuram excessus significat.

* *Sesquipedale est quam tu * longior, bee is taller then you by a foot and an half.*

Observation.

Verbs of exceeding, besides their Accus. of the thing exceeded, may have an Ablative of the word signifying the thing wherein that excess is, and also another Ablative of that which signifieth the measure of exceeding.

*Incredibile est * quanto * herum * ante-*

Construction of the Ablat. case.

*teo * sapientiā. It is a thing not to be believed, how much I excel my Master in wisdome.*

Rule 9.

Comparatives, and moreover Superlatives for intension sake, doe take èò, so much : quò, by how much : hoc, by so much : paulò, by little : nimiò, by a great deal : tantò, by so much : ætate, by age : natu, by birth, and aliquanto.

** Quo quisque ingenio * minus valet, * hoc se * magis attollere & dilatare conatur. By how much the less every man is able in wisedome, by so much the more he endeavouret to advance or magnifie, and to spread abroad himself.*

Observation:

The before the Comparative, is turned into Latine, by quò, èò, tantò. The better soldier, the worser man. Miles quò melior, èò vir nequior.

Rule 10.

In other respects Comparatives and Superlatives keep the case of their Positives.

*Naturā * tenacissimi sumus * eorum, quæ radibus annis percepimus, by nature we keep those things most sure, which we have learnt in our untaught years.*

An

In aliis Comparativa & Superlativa positivorum casus retinent.

Construction of the Ablat. case.

An Ablative case is taken, or put absolutely, a Participle being added, or also understood.

*Nil juvat *am isto claudere septa *grege. It helpeth nothing to shut the fold, when the flock is lost.*

Ablativus absolute sumitur, adjecto Participio, vel etiam intellecto.

Observations.

To understand this Rule,

1. The Nom. case and his Verb, must come after some of these, when, whilst, if, through or after, that, which when the Ablative is put absolute, are not express by dum, cum, quando, si, quanquam, postquam : as, amitto grege, for cum amittatur grex.

2. The Nom. case is turned into the Ablat. as, grex into grege ; and the Verb if it be Active, into a Participle of the Present Tense ; if Passive, into a Participle of the Preterperfect Tense ab amitto. But if the Verb be sum, the Participle is not express, but understood : as, te duce, thou being Captain, and nondum liberâ civitate, understand existente, and the Participle is to agree with the Ablat. case absolute.

3. When the whole sentence supplieth the place of a Substantive, the Participle is put in the Neuter Gender, and this only in Participles of the Preterperfect Tense.

** Permisso, seu dicere prius, seu audire maller, It being permitted whether he would speak first or hear.*

4. In these and such like sayings, you may

* The A-
ctive Par-
ticiple is
turned
Passive.

Rule 12.

Construction of the Ablat. case.

may use the Ablative absolute, 1. Cæsar being Victor. 2. Cæsar being crowned. 3. Cæsar triumphing. 4. God * sending his son redeemed us; Deus misso filio, &c. 5. Having when the Participle is of a Verb Passive: as, his verbis dictis, having spoken these words. Confectis bellis, having finished his wars.

Verbs, 1. Of receiving. 2. Of buying. 3. Of taking away. 4. Of putting away. 5. Of distance. 6. Of disagreeing, do choose or require an Ablat. case, with the Preposition a, ab, e, or ex.

Accepi literas à nuncio, I received the Letter from the messenger.

Observations.

1. Verbs belonging to this Rule: Accipio to hear or receive. Audio, to hear. Intelligo to learn. Cognosco, to perceive. Disco, to get the knowledge of a thing, to learn. Conjicio to conjecture.

2. Emo, to buy. Mercor, to buy. Conduco to buy, or take house or land to hire.

3. Sumo, to take. Aufero, to take away. Eripi, to snatch away.

4. Moveo, to put away. Arceo, to drive away. Pello, to drive away. Defendo, to keep from. Propulso, to drive away. Prohibeo, to keep from. Caveo, to defend. Furor, to steal.

5. Disto,

Construction of the Ablat. case.

5. Disto, to differ. Dissideo, to differ. Dissentio, to differ. Discrepo, to differ. Discordo, to differ, discern or to vary. Distinguo, to differ.

Although many of these Verbs have after them in another sense, another case with a Preposition: as, conjicere se in pedes, or in fugam, to run away, yet of or from after them is a sign of the Ablative, with a Preposition, by this Rule, and oftentimes a Dative, by Rule 20. in construction of the Dative case: as, discrepet his alius. Pers. Sat. 6. v. 18. aurem substringe loquaci, Hor. Ser. l. 2. Sat. 5. derogas fidem suam, divinitati, Hein Orat. 18.

Mereor, to deserve, with the Adverbs, bene, well: male, ill: melius, better: pejus, worse: optimè, as well as can be: pessimè, as bad as can be; ita, so, cleaveth fast to an Ablative case.

Cur * de * improbis *benè *mereretur? Why would he deserve well of ill men? Viri ita de me meriti, men that have so deserved of mee.

Divers cases of divers reasons may bee put to the same Verb.

Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsentc,
P propriâ

Mereor cum Ad- Rule 13.
verbiis benè : male:
melius : pejus : op-
timè : pessimè : ita :
Ablativo adhæret
cum Præpositione
de,

Eidem verbo di- Lilly,
versi casus, diversæ
rationis apponi pos-
sunt.

Construction of the Ablat case.

propriā manū, he delivered his garment to mee
to gage, thou being present, with his own hand.

Observations.

1. Dedit hath the Accusative vestem, by the Rule Verba Activa, li. 5. pa. 295. Rule 1.
2. Mihi isg the Dative case, by Rule 12. li. 5. pa. 282.
3. Pignori isg Dative, by Rule 19. lib. 5. pag. 289.
4. Te præsente, the Ablative absolute, li. 5. p. 311. Rule 11.
5. Propriā manū, the Ablative, by Rule 1. li. 5. p. 299.

The question and the answer thereof, Interrogativum & ejus redditivum e- shall be the same case iusdem casus & tem- and Tense. poris erunt.

Quarum rerum nulla est satietas? Di- tiarum, Of what things is there no fulness? Of riches. Quid agitur. Satur.

Observations:

1. By repetition of part of the question, the Case or Tense by which answer is to be made, is easily discerned: as, quis me sequitur? who followeth mee? nemo; that is, nemo me sequitur quid meritus? Virgam, that is, virgam meritus, &c.

2. Also when the question is asked by cuius, cuja, cujum, whose? as, cujum pecus Melibæi; that is, pecus Melibæi.

Verbs of a various construction:

3. De when we must answer by meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester: as, Icujus est hic codex, whose book is this? meus, mine; that is, hic codex est meus, this book is mine.

4. Lastly, when the question is made by a word that may govern divers cases: as, quanti empræ? parvo. Quanti ergo? Octo assibus; because for after the Verb of price is a sign of the Ablative, except ranti, quanti, &c. Rule 3. p. 302. l. 5.

Verbs that have a divers construction:

Some Verbs in respect of their divers significations, are pro diversa significacione, varie construuntur.

Verbs belonging to this Rule:

1. Ausculto, to obey, is construed with a Dative: as, ausculto tibi; but ausculto, to hear, hath an Accusative: as, ausculto te.

2. Consulo, to ask council of, hath an Accusative: as, consulo te, to give council, it hath a Dative case: as, consulo tibi, to determine or give sentence, an Accusative or Ablative, with a Preposition. Pessime istuc in te atque in illum contulisti, thou dost determine as badly as may be against thy self and him.

Verbs of a various construction:

3. Laboro, to endure pain and grief, or to be diseased. Laboro febri, I am sick of a fever. Laboro pedibus, and ex pedibus, I am lame or diseased in the feet. Laboro de salute publicâ, I am careful for the Commonwealth. Laborare dolore, to labour and travel with child, &c.

4. Impono, operi finem imponere, to end a work. Aris honorem imponere, to offer sacrifice on the Altars. Imposuit mihi, he deceived me.

5. Præsto, to excel. Homo homini quid præstat, how much one man is better than another. Præsta te eum, qui mihi à teneris unguiculis es cognitus, shew thy self to bee the same man, that I have ever known thee from thy tender youth.

6. Caveo tibi, I provide for thee, that thou take no harm. Cavere periculum, to avoid or eschew danger. Ut à Cassio caveret, that he would take heed of Cassius. Quod nibil de iis Augustus cavareret, because Augustus took no heed of them.

So that Caveo, to beware lest one take hurt is construed with a Dative case: but caveo to beware lest one cause or do hurt, is construed with an Accusative or Ablative with à or ab. Post sermonum ambages malo caverunt jussit.

7. Also metuo, timeo, formido, have the same construction: as, metuo tibi, I am careful of thee: but metuo te, I fear thee, lest thou hurt me: and metuo à te, I fear lest thou hurt me. Metuo de vitâ, I am afraid of my life. Metuo abs te de verbis tuis, I fear lest thy words will do hurt. Timeo, as timeo te,

Verbs of a various construction:

te, and timeo mihi abs te, I fear lest thou wilt hurt me: but timeo tibi, I am afraid on thy behalf, lest some hurt will come to thee. Timeo with the Preposition de, is used both ways: as, de republicâ valde timeo, I am greatly afraid of the Commonwealth, lest it take hurt. De superitis ingrate times? O unthankful man, art thou affraid of God, lest he hurt thee? Formido, to have great fear, or to be greatly affraid, hath the same construction with metuo.

8. Studeo, Englished to will or desire, hath an Accus. case: as, omnes unum studetis, yee all desire one thing: but studeo, to study or give himself to, hath a Dative immediately of the thing: as, Studuit medicinæ, he studied Physick. Catalina studuit, he favoured Catalines side.

9. Conduco, it is profitable, or maketh much for: as, conducit hoc tux laudi, this maketh much for your praise, and in the same sense it is construed with ad or in, to the Accusative. Conduco, to hire, hath an Accusative: as, conductit equum, bee hired a horse.

10. Convenit, convenient or agreeable. Convenit illa tibi, shee is meet, or fit for thee. Sævis inter se convenit ursis, cruel bears agree amongst themselves. Hæc fratri tecum non convenient, my brother and I do not agree in these: quanquam de hoc parum inter autores convenit, albeit Authours doe not agree concerning this matter. And with an Accusative: as, priusquam legatos conveniret, before that he met with the Ambassadors: and convenienter, the Adverb: as, vivere natu-

Verbs of a various construction:

ræ convenienter, to live agreeable to nature.

11. Contingo, to happen or chance, a Dative. Quis contigit, to whom it happened, and an Ablative with in, in magnis animis ingeniisque id plerunque contigit. Contingo, to touch, an Accusative, funem contingere.

12. Æmular, to envy, a Dative: as, æmular tibi: æmular, to imitate, an Accusative: as, æmuler te.

13. Deficio, to fail, a Dative, or an Accus. as, vires deficiunt mihi, & deficiunt me, and deficere animo, or deficere animum, to fail or quail in stomach, or courage. Deficio, to forsake or leave, a Dative, quum jam glandes atque arbuta sacræ deficerent Sylvæ. Deficio, to revolt or fall off, an Ablative with a Preposition, à Galba ad Senatum defecerat.

14. Differo, to differ, an Ablative with ab: as, differt ab illo, and Accusative with inter: as, differunt inter se, and differo, to put off, an Accusative. Differt vadimonium, and with a Dative, by Rule 20. lib. 5. pag. 290.

15. Prospicio, to see to, or provide for, a Dative. as, Prospicere saluti, to provide for safety. Prospicere, to foresee, an Accus. prospice futura.

Rule 2.

Some Verbs keeping the same signification, notwithstanding are allotted a divers construction.

1. Dono, to bestow or reward. Donat phaleras

Quædam verba eandem retinentia significationem, diversam tamen structuram.

Verbs of a various construction.

leras militi, he bestoweth horse-trappers on the soldier, & donat militem phaleris, he rewardeth the soldier with horse-trappers.

2. Impertio, to salute, also to employ. Primâ salute impertit Parmenonem, he salutes Parmeno heartily. Impertas aliquid temporis huic rei, thou maist employ some time on this matter.

3. Mitto tibi, I send to you, and mitto ad te.

4. Moderari { affectum } to temper the passion.
 { affectui } the sense or meaning.

5. Latet { sensui, } ing is secret or
 { sensum, } unknown.

6. Occubere { mortem, } to die.

 { morti, }

7. Medicor { morbo, } I heal a disease.

 { morbum, } argentum, to savour
 or sent
8. Olere redolere { argentum, } or sent
 argento, off silver.

9. Manere promissis, to stick to his promise. Poena te manet, punishment expects you.

10. Præstolor, to wait or abide. Præstolari spei. Præstolari tibi, and præstolari te.

11. Refero, to report or propound. Retulit ille mihi & retulit ad Senatum, he reported it to me, and propounded it to the Senate.

12. Obtrectare alterius laudibus, or laudes to detract from ones praise. Obtrectati legi, to speak against a Law.

Construction of Verbs Passives.

13. Subeo, subit me comes, to my mind, and subit mihi, and subit animum, subit mentem, subit memoria, I remember. Subire portum, and subire muro, to enter into, and goe under, and subire limina, and subire ad tecta.

14. Insterno, to cover or spread upon. Instravit equo penulam, he spread his cloak on his horse. Instravit equum penulam, he covered his horse with his cloak.

15. Aspergo, to sprinkle. Aspergo labem civi, I cast a spot upon the Citizen. Aspergo civem labe, I sprinkle the Citizen with a spot.

16. Induo, to put on. Induo fratri vestem, I cloath or put a garment on my brother, and induo fratrem veste, I cloath my brother with a garment. Quidlibet indutus, Hor. lib. I. Ep 17. comantem Androgei galeam induitur, Vir. Aen. 2.

17. Pluo pluit lapis, and pluit lapides and pluit lapidibus, it raineth stones.

Construction of Verbs Passives.

Rule 1.

AN Ablative case of the doer, is put after Verbs Passives, with the Preposition a, ab, or abs, and sometimes a Dat. of the word following of or by.

Passivis subjicitur Ablativus agentis cum Præpositione a, ab, vel abs, & interdum Dativus.

Deforme

Construction of Verbs Passives:

321

Deforme est quos dignitate præstas, * ab * his virtute * superari. It is an ill-favoured thing to be * exceeded * by * these in virtue, whom thou excellest in worthiness.

Observations.

1. Verbs Impersonals of the Passive voice fall under this construction: * ab * hostibus constanter * pugnatur.

2. Videor, I seem, hath always a Dat. case: as, mihi sic videtur.

3. Of, out of, by, from or concerning, after a Verb, is a sign of a Preposition, serving to the Ablative case, a, ab, abs, de, è, ex: as, veneo, sio, ab hoste veniri, factus ex limo, loqui de Rege quid de iis existimandum est? à Deo expertenda, unless they bee otherwise excepted in several Rules: as, of after Verbs of deprivement; as, orbo privo spolia & levo, libero, is a sign of an Ablat. case: as, spoliat nos judicio, privat approbatione omni, orbat sensibus.

4. Verbs Impersonals of the Passive voice, sometimes have the Ablative case of the doer, and also the Infinitive Mood esse understood: as, strato discumbitur ostro for discumbitur ab illis. Gaudeo ventum ad te, for ventum esse ad te. Dum stas reditum oportuit, for te redditum esse, &c.

Other cases except the Accusative, abide in Passives, which were (the cases) of Actives: as,

Eceteri casus ex- Rule 2.
cepto Accusativo, manent in Passivis qui fuerunt Activo-
rum.

P 5 * Persolvit

Construction of Participles:

* Persolvi gratiā non potest nec malo
 * patri, a man cannot worthily recompence, no
 not an ill Father. Ejus orationi vehementer ab omnibus reclamatum est, for omnes
 reclamārunt occurritur autem nobis, &
 quidem à doctis & eruditis, for docti &
 eruditi occurunt nobis.

Rule 1.

Construction of Participles.

Participles govern the cases of their Verbs, when they retain the sense of Participles.

Cœcæ sunt divitiæ ac * se * insipientes excoecant, Riches are blind, and they blinde men beholding them. Tacturus sydera. Nocirurus tibi. Lucis egens.

Rule 2.

Participles of the Passive voice, very often govern a Dative case with the sign of before it.

Honesta bonis viris non occulta petuntur, Honest things, not hidden, are desired of good men.

Semel omnibus est calcanda via lethi, The way of death is one day or other to be trod of all men.

Participia passiva frequentius Dativō gendant.

Obser-

Construction of the Infinit. Mood.

Observations.

1. The Participle of the future in dus, is oftentimes put in the Neuter Gender absolutely, without a Dative case: as, orandum est, for orandum est nobis, and with the case that the Verb governeth: as, utendum est æstate, tuo tibi judicio est utendum.

2. Must is turned into Latin either by oportet, it behoves, debo, I ought, or the Participle in dus. Abeundum est mihi, I must go hence. Studendum bonis literis dum adhuc viget ingenium. Si mori nolim fide misero carendum est. Oportet me abiire, debemus studere, &c.

Construction of the Infinitive Mood.

The Infinitive depends of Nouns, à nominibus, verbs, or Participles. Rule 1. Infinitivus pendet à nominibus, verbis aut Participiis.

* Audax omnia * perpeti gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas. Mankind adventurous to endure all things, runneth headlong through mischief forbidden.

Misere discedere quærens, Hor. Ser. 9. lib. I.

Obser-

Construction of the Infinitive Mood.

Observation.

1. Authors usually when a person or Substantive cometh between two Verbs, having the sign to, do change the speech by ut, that, or qui, which: as, *I have meat to eat which yee know not of.* Cibum habeo quo vescar quem vos nescitis. Est for Licet admitteth an Infinitive. Est quoddam prodire tenus.

2. When a thing is done to an end, and the sign to cometh before a Verb, you may change your speech by ut, that, ex eo quod ipie potest in dicendo aliquantum remittet, * ut tu tandem aliquid esse videare; and to after the Participle in dus, but absolutely; as, non vivendum est ut edas sed edendum ut vivas, thou must not live to eat, but eat to live, two Infinitives may depend the one on the other. Illum ad se venire oportere.

Rule 23

Verbs of the Infinitive Mood place before themselves an Accusative case instead of a Nominative, but have after them such case as the Verb properly governeth.

Omnem crede * diem tibi * diluxisse supremum, Believe that every day hath shined to thee the last.

Observation.

The sentence is no less translated by quod

Construction of the Infinit. Mood.

quod or ut, though not so briefly and eloquently.

325

1. By quod Englished because, noting a thing done, or after Verbs of sense: as, gaudeo quod tu advenisti salvus.

2. By ut, that, after Verbs of commanding, intreating, or desiring, and of a thing to come: as, jussit ut pecunia mergeretur, and jussit pecuniam mergi.

Decet, it becometh.

Juvat, it delighteth.

De oportet, it beho-

veteth.

Delectat, it delighteth,

govern an

Infinitive Mood, an

Accusative case oftentimes going before it.

* Me * juvat in primâ Christum * colu-

isse juvenâ, It delighteth me to have loved or

honoured Christ;

or I am glad that I have lo-

ved or honoured Christ in my best youth, or the

prime of my days.

There is sometimes a defect or want of the Verb governing the Infinitive.

1. Of decet, it is meet. Par est, it is meet: as, hæc cine fieri flagitia, that these villanies be committed.

2. Coxpit, he began, is oft understood before the Infinitive mood: as, criminibus terrere, for coxpit criminibus terrere.

3. Sometimes there is a defect of the Infinitive Mood it self: as, fidibus scire, understand canere, to know to sing to the harp.

Decet.

Juvat.

De-

oportet.

Delectat

Infinitivum

regunt

Accusativo

sæpe

præente.

Rule 30

Ellipsis est modò

Verbi regentis.

Rule 4.

4. The

Construction of the Infin. Mood.

4. *The Verb proficisci, to go, after cogito and volo: as, cogito Athenas, feci cogito proficisci Athenas. Rhodum volo, understand proficisci.*

5. *Habere is understood after volo, nolo, malo: as, vin vinum, wilt thou have any wine?*

Rule 5.

Sometimes Infinitives are put for Supines, and Gerunds or Gerundive voices, but especially amongst Poets for metre sake.

*Magnum dat * ferre talentum, for ferendum.*

Rule 6.

A Nominative case is put after Infinitives of Verbs Substantives, some Passives, and Neuters of gesture.

Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat, Cato chose rather to be, then seem to bee good.

But an Accusative or Dative case going before, they have the same cases on both sides, as,

*Cato * sc * esse quam videri * bonum malebat, Cato would rather himself be, then seem to be good.*

Ponuntur interdum Infinitivi pro Supinis & Gerundiis sive Gerundivis.

Nominativus Subjicitur Infinitivis verborum Substantivorum Passivorum quorundam, & neutrorum gestus.

Obser-

Construction of Gerunds.

Observations:

1. *The Verbs belonging to this Rule, are Rule 1. lib. 5.241.*

2. *These Verbs licet, expedit, datur, &c. cassethe the Dative before the Infinitive: as, natura * beatis * omnibus * esse * dedit. * Nobis * necesse * est fortibus * viris * esse.*

3. *In these and such like examples, the Accusative case is understood before the Infinitive Mood. Expedit bonas esse vobis, feci vos esse bonas.*

4. *In imitation of Greek construction,*

The Infinitive hath not so much an Accusative as a Nominative.

Infinitivus non tam Accusativum habet quam Nominativum.

Patiens vocari Cæsaris ulti, for patiens te vocari Cæsaris ultorem, Suffering thy self to be called Cæsars Revenger.

Construction of Gerunds.

Gerunds and former Supines govern the cases of their Verbs.

*Gerundia & pri-
Gora supina re-
gunt casus suorum
verborum.*

*Quis * talia * fando temperet à lacry-
mis,*

Construction of Gerunds.

mis, who in speaking such things can abstaine from tears?

Ibo ad templum * Christo * servitum, cur * te is * perditum.

Observations.

1. A Preposition: as, of, in, with, for, from, or by, before a word ending in ing, is a sign of a Gerund either in di, do or dum.

2. Substantives ending in ing, which are derived of Verbs: as, Doctrina, learning. Auditio, hearing, and the like, admit of the signes (a) or (the) before them, lib. I. p. 2. and other clauses ending in ing, belong to other Rules: as, he is of a cunning wit, est callido ingenio, Rule 7. li. 5. p. 251. and habe somewhat in the English coming between the Preposition, and the word ending in ing: as, the hand of one writing, manus scribentis; a word ending in ing, after any English of sum, is made by a Verb: as, what is he doing? quid agit? he is writing, scribit.

Rule 2.

Gerunds in di, like Gerundia in di
Genitives are governed tanquam Genitivi,
of some, both Sub- reguntur à quibus
stantives and Adje- dam tum Substanti-
Elives. vis tum Adjectivis.

Grande * subsidium optimè * agendi
præbet amor negotii. Love of businesse af-
fordeth great help to do most excellently.

Obser-

Construction of Cerunds.

Observations.

1. To or of, next after Substantives of things not material: as, studium tempus, ars otium, &c. and Adjectives which govern a Genitive case, Rule 9. p. 244. as, cupidus, peritus, ignarus, gnarus, &c. Adu- landi gens prudentissima, cunctandi solers, is made by the Gerund in di, except with Poets, who use the Infinitive.

2. The Verbal Substantive is sometimes used instead of the Gerundive voice: as, qui erant in muro custodiæ causâ collocati, or custodiendi causâ.

3. The Gerund in di is sometime construed with a Genitive plural: composui hunc librum instituendi puerorum gratiâ, for pueros, and sui confirmandi causâ, Vesti consolandi gratiâ, for se and vos.

Gerunds in do, like Gerundio in do, Rule 3.
Ablatives, depend upon ut Ablativi pendent
Prepositions serving à Præpositionibus à,
to the Ablative case. ab, abs, de, è, ex,
cum, in, pro.

Ignavi * à * discendo, cito deterrentur,
sluggish ones are quickly discouraged from learn-
ing.

Observation.

All Verb, Participle, or Adjective, (not go-
verning a Genitive case) having after it
a word ending in (ing) with of: as, of
teaching:

Construction of Gerunds.

teaching: with in, as, in learning: also with: as, with reading: for, as, for speaking: from, as, from walking: or by, as, by hearing. The word ending in ing, shall be made by the Gerund in do: as, memoria * excolendo * augetur. * Ex * defendendo quam ex accusando uberior gloria * comparatur. Ratio recte loquendi est * juncta * cum * loquendo. Impiger in scribendo. Negligens in discendo. Desessus sum ambulando, I am weary of walking.

Rule 4. They are also put Ponuntur & citra without a Preposition, Præpositionem tan-like Ablatives of the quam Ablativi modi manner or cause. vel cause.

Nihil est quin male * narrando possit de-pravarier, there is nothing but may be corrup-ted, by ill reporting. * Omnia * conando do-cilis solertia vicit.

Observation:

Sometimes also they have the construc-tion of a Dative case: as, mox * apta * narrando crura dat, and may be made by the Substantive in the Dative case: as, deli-genda nunc arbor est suspendio.

Rule 5. Gerunds in dum, Gerundia in dum after the manner of Accusatives, are go-verned of Prepositions serving to the Accus. ad, inter, ante, ob, propter.

Nullum

Construction of Gerunds.

Nullum ad nocendum tempus angustum est malis. No time is short, for wicked ones to hurt.

Observations.

The Gerund in dum is used,

1. When a thing is done or serveth to an end: as, Locus amplissimus ad agendum, a most ample place to treat or plead in. Accipe hos sex ases, ad chartum & cætera comparanda.

2. After Verbs of motion: as, eo ad pescandum.

3. When time is denoted, answering to the question when: as, inter coenandum, at supper time: ante domandum, (i. e.) ante-quam domentur, before they be tamed.

4. To, next after any Substantive of things material: as, gold, silver, iron, &c. posco te pecunias ad subjugandum, or ad subjugandos hostes, or after any of these Adjectives, apt, ready, slow, profitable, unprof-table, aptus, paratus, tardus, idoneus, bonus, utilis, inutilis, commodus, in-commodus, ad militandum, vehemens ad dicendum. Or after Verbs Englished to exhort, to incite, to prevail: as, hortor, incito, valet, traho, flagitor, is a sign of the Gerund in dum. Or else the speech may be changed by (that or which) non omnia ingenia ad res magnas agendas sunt idonea, or quæ res magnas agant, or ut agant.

5. Gerunds of Verbs Adives, having af-ter them an Accusative case, may elegantly be changed into Particiles in dus, a Gerund in di into a Genitive, a Gerund in do into an

Construction of Gerunds.

an Ablative or Dative, a Gerund in dum into an Accusative, and agree with the Substantive following them: as, exercendæ memorię gratiā, for exercendi memoriam. Nunc tempus adest parandæ eruditioni satis idoneum, or parando eruditionem, or ad parandum eruditionem, or ad parandam eruditionem, and hæc faciunt recuperandorum suorum causā, or recuperandi sua.

But if the Verb govern not an Accusative case, it is not changed into the Participle in dus, by this Rule; for we do not say, veni huc tui serviendi causā, but tibi serviendi causā, because servio hath properly a Dative case after it; yet in the Dative it is read, subservit pedibus mundandis, it serveth to make clean the feet; nor doe we say, ad carendam voluptatem, because careo hath an Ablative; yet in its proper case we may say, in carentia voluptate; nor do we say, ad scribendum te, to write to thee, but ad scribendum ad te, because we say scribere ad te; but scribo as it governeth an Accusative case immediately, may have the Gerund turned into a Participle in dus: as, non omnia ingenia ad res magnas scribendas sunt idonea.

Construction of Supines.

Rule 1.

TH E first Supine signifies actively, and followeth a Verb or Participle, signifying moving to a place.

PRius Supinū active significat, & sequitur verbum, aut Participium, significans motum ad locum.

Inimicus

Construction of Sup.

Inimicus cum blanditur *captatum *venit, when a back-friend speaks fair, he cometh to entrap.

Observations.

1. To after a Verb of moving, is a sign of the first Supine, or Gerund in dum, with ad or Participle of the future in rus, or you may change your speech by ut, that, as, venit captatum. Venit ad captandum. Venit capturas, venit ut capteret. Plautus saith, Nulli negare soleo qui esum me vocat. *Plaut. Stich. act. 2. Sce. 1. Supple, ire.*

2. The first Supine of Neuter Passives, (that is, Verbs Neuters, which in respect of their signification are Passive: as, vapulo, vaneo, liceo, exulo) signifieth passively: as, do venum servos; and when the first Supine is put after do, loco, voco, without a Verb of moving, the Verb is included: as, Pamphilum cantatum provocemus, i. e. venire cantatum. The first Supine joyned with iri, signifieth passively, and maketh the future Infinitive in the Passive voice: as, postquam audierat non datum iri uxorem filio, after that he had heard, that she should not bee given a wife unto his son.

Actum est, itum est, and cessatum est, are Impersonals.

The later Supine followeth Nouns Adjectives. Posterius supinum sequitur nomina Adjectiva. Rule 2.

Nil dictu foodum, visuque hæc limina tangat

Construction of Time:

gat intra quæ puer est, Let nothing filthy to be spoken and seen, touch these thresholds, with. in which there is a child or boy.

Observations.

To be, coming next after a Noun Adjective, is a sign of the latter Supine: as, scitu & creditu necessarium, factu optimum mirabile dictu, fas & nefas auditu.

In these sayings, redeo obsonatu, surgat cubitu, reddit venatu. The latter Supine is put after Verbs signifying moving from a place, unless they are to be accounted Nouns of the Fourth Declension.

Construction of Time:

Rule 1.

THE limit of time Terminus temporis quando quid done, is uttered in the factum sit, in Ablative case with the vo effertur. sign at.

Alio quidem atque alio * tempore, omnes in eundem locum tendimus, at one time or another, we all goe to the self-same place.

Luce sacrâ requiescat humus, requiescat arator, on the Lords day, &c.

Observation.

By time understand not only hours, days, moneths, years, and their parts, but other Substan-

Construction of Time.

Substantives denoting the time when: as, istu oculi primo intuitu. Luci, temporis, vesperi, &c. luce tempore, &c.

Continuance of time Duratio temporis Rule 2. is very often used in in Accusativo frequentius effertur; the Accusative case, and sometimes in the interdum & in Abla- Ablative.

Quis totam * diem jaculans non aliquando collineet, Who is it that shooting all the day, may not sometimes hit the mark.

Observations.

1. As part of time is known by answering to the question (when?) so continuance of time is known by answering to the question how long? as, when came he? Tertiâ horâ, at three a clock. How long stayed he? Tres horas, three hours.

2. By the addition sometimes of a Preposition, it is apparent that the construction of time is Ellipticall: as, In paucis diebus, within a few days. De die, by day. De nocte, by night. Promitto in diem, I promise against a day. Commodo in monsem, I lend for a moneth. Annos ad quinquaginta natus, about fifty years old. Studui per tres annos, I have studied about three years. Puer id ætatis, a boy of that age. Ad tempus, ad diem præscriptum venit, he came at the time appointed. Non plus triduum, or triduo, not more then the space of three days. Tertio Calendarum, i. e. tertio die

Construction of names of places.

die Calendarum, and ad tertium Calendarum (i.e.) ad tertium diem Calendarum, about the third of the Calends. Diem ex die, day after day. Ante sex annos, six years since. And ab hinc sex annos. Also ex illo and ex quo, understand tempore ever since.

In this Rule there is much variety among the Latins: as, anno mundi quadragesimo, supra quatuor millia. Cum esset annorum duodecim. Repente, noctis circiter meridiem. In ante diem quartum, until the fourth day. And ex ante diem. Per idem tempus, intra sex menses, hinc ad triduum. Post meridiem.

3. Luci, tempori, vesperi, are old Ablatives put for luce, tempore, vespere.

Construction of names of Countries, Towns or Cities.

Rule 1.

Names of Countries, Islands, Provinces, and common Nouns, also follow a Preposition.

Ex Asia rediens, returning out of Asia.

Rule 2.

Names of Cities or Towns, which signify in or at a place, and answer to the question

Urbium nomina quæ in loco significant, & respondent ad quæstionem (ubi) where?

Construction of names of places.

where? if they be of the singular number, and first or second Declension, they are uttered in the Genitive case.

Omnia * Romæ venalia, all things are sale at Rome.

If the names of Towns or Cities be of the plural number one-
ly, or of the third Declension, they are put in the Ablative case.

Haudquaquam difficile est Athenensem Athenis Laudare, It is no hard matter to praise an Athenian at Athens.

Moving to a place is put in the Accusative case, from a place, or by a place, in the Ablative.

Non licet cuivis adire * Corinthum, It is not lawfull for all men to go to Corinth. Est lupus infestus gregibus, discedite * Româ. The Wolf is hurtful to our flocks, depart from Rome.

Observations:

- Places are divided into greater places: as, England, Scotland, France, Ireland, Italy, &c. or common places: as, th: Market, and

Q

all

si numeri sint singulæ & primæ vel secundæ Declinationis in Genitivo efferuntur.

Si Urbium & op. Rule 3. pidorū nomina sint Tituri Car- pluralis tantum nu- shagini Anxuri, Sicyoni, are declinationis, in Abla- Ablativer.

Motus ad locum Rule 4. in Accusativo, à loco aut per locum, in Ablativo ponitur.

Construction of names of places.

all Appellatives or common Nouns that signify a place, and these fall under one and the same construction, having usually their Prepositions in, ad, e, ex, ab, per, jponed with them, signifying in, to, from, or by a place: as, ab Aegina per Asiam, in urbe in diversorio, in templo, &c. But Peto, to go, is construed always without a Preposition: as, Petere Italiam. Also some other Appellatives sometimes: as, ibam viâ sacra totâ urbe vagari. Unde redi? Foris. Ubi est præ foribus.

2. Smaller places: as, Towns and Cities contained in those greater: as, London, York, &c. Lugduni habitat? venitne Lugduno?

1. Before the Genitive case in the construction of, at, or in the place, in urbe, or in oppido, seemeth to be understood: as, in oppido Antiochiae, and sometimes Prepositions are added to the Accusative and Ablative: as, ad Trojam. Apud Thermopylas, per Eboracum, Romam versus, de Brun-dusio.

M. Hemes.

2. If to the proper name of the place you add another word: as, in, to, or from the City of York, or at, or from the University of Oxford, you must use a Preposition. Ab Academia Oxoniensi. See pag. 245.

Rule 5.

Rus, humi, domi, militia, belli follow the form or construc-tion of proper names. Rus, humi, domi militia, belli priorum sequuntur formam.

Construction of names of places.

Si urbis te tedium ceperit, concede *rus, ubi vero ruris, *domum repedes, if mea-riness of the City hath caught thee, walk into habitat, & the Country; if of the Country, returne Terre pro-cumber, follow this Rule.

Observations.

1. Rus followeth the construction of to place: as, Ego rus ibo, I will goe into the Country. 2. From a place: as, Video rure redeuntem senem, I see the old man returning out of the Country. 3. In a place answering to the question (where?) as, rure paterno, at thy fathers Country Farm, and senex rus abdidit se.

Iso ruri se continet, he keeps himself in the Country.

2. Humi, on the ground, followeth the second Rule of at a place in the Genitive: as, humi an sublimi putrescas, quid interest? whether thou rot on the earth, or above the earth, what matters it? which is also sometimes used in the Ablat. case: as, & requievit humo.

3. Domi, at home: 1. followeth the construction of at a place, Rule 2. as, domi fuimus, we have been at home: Iso abde domo. 2. It followeth the Rule of to a place Rule 4. as, abiit recta domum, he is gone straightway home. 3. It followeth the construction of from a place, Rule 4. as, Unde venis? domo, whence cameſt thou? from home. 4. Domi, at home, hath onely these Adjectives joyned with it, domi meæ, at my house: domi tuæ, at thy house: domi suæ, at his house: domi nostræ, at our house: domi vestræ,

Construction of Prepositions.

vestræ, at your house. Domii alienæ, at another mans house.

4. Militiæ, in war, followeth the construction of (at a place) as, militiæ fuimus, we have been at war: otherwise it is said, ivit in militiam.

5. Belli, at war, followeth the construction of names of places only in the Genitive case: as, belli fuimus, we have been in war.

Construction of Prepositions.

Rule 1: Prepositions are often prepositiones sape neglegit or under- stood: à, de, è, pro, in,

Quid illud prodest for in or ad quid. Quid me juvat for in or ad quid.

Ire suppetias, for ire ad suppetias. To go to help: Summuni for ad summum. Neve putes alium sapiente bonoque for alium sapiente, Hor. Ep. 16. l. i.

Rule 2: A Preposition in composition sometimes governs the case which it governed out of composition: à, ab, am, ex, in, circum, de, inter, præter, super, trans.

* Quem sape * transit casus, aliquando invenit, Misfortune at length findeth out him whom it hath often passed over.

Obſer-

Construction of Prepositions:

Observation.

Verbs appertaining to this Rule: Superfedeo, insilio, transeo, abstineo, circumspicio, intercino, prætero, adeo, ambo, amo-ven, avertio, absonto, excludo, decedo; but excedo and exilio, are also construed with an Accusative case: as, cum limen exirem; It may be saith Mr. Farnaby of extra, which is also jomed to an Accusative case.

Sometimes also Redundant quant. Rule 3. Prepositions abound doque & Prepositio- or are repeated after ones à, ab, ad, con, Verbs compounded with de, è, ex, in, them.

* Advocabo amicos * ad hanc * rem, I will call my friends to this businesse.

Observation.

This Rule and the former answer one the other; the one understanding the Preposition before the casual word coming after the Verb compounded therewith; and the other expressing it; and moreover, because some of the Prepositions in these Rules are the same with those in the construction of the Dative, Rule 21. as, ad preces annuere, ad gratiam admovere, It is good to watch unto Authority as is there said. Exiisse de potestate, ex quo eramus egressi.

Construction of Conjunctions.

Rule 1.

Conjunctiones Copularives and Disjunctives: also Excepitives: nisi, præterquam, an, and Electius, quam, ac, atque and nempe, scilicet, videlicet, namely, that is to say, for the most part couple like Cases, Moods and Tenses.

Omnia quæ * gemimus & * ex * pavescimus tributa viræ sunt, All things that we grieve at, or fear, are the tributes of life.

But sometimes by reason of a divers construction, they couple unlike Cases, Moods and Tenses.

Vixi * Romæ * & * Venetiis, I have lived at Rome and Venice.

Nisi me * luctasses amantem * & vana spe * produceres, but that thou hadst allured me thy lover, and drewest me on with vain hope.

Tibi gratias * ege * & te aliquando collaudate * possum proditiones odiisse & execrare.

Con-

Conjunctiones copulativa, & disjunctiva, item exceptivæ, nisi, præterquam, an, & electiva, quam, ac, atque, & nempe, scilicet, vide licet, similes ut plurimum casus, modos, ac tempora connectunt.

Construction of Moods.

Ut Englished,

1. That, or as that.
2. Seeing that.
3. Lest that, after metuo, timeo, vereor
4. Grant that, say that, although, re-
quitheth a Subjunctive Mood.

Rule 1.

1. Aderam * ut * viderem, I was present
that, &c.
2. Non est tibi fidendum ut * qui roties
* sefelleris.
3. * Metuebam * ut * substarerit. I feared
lest that, &c.
4. * Ut * desint vires tamen est laudanda
voluntas, although, &c. Metuo ut verum
sit, I fear lest it be not truth.

Ut Englished,

1. After that. 2. How. 3. As, governs Rule 2.
an Indicative Mood.
r. * Ut ab urbe * discessi, after that I de-
parted, &c.
2. Cernis ut ignavum corrumptunt ocia
corpus, Ut capiunt vitium ni moveantur
aque.
3. * Ut * sunt Galborum subita & re-
pentina consilia.

Ut Englished, like as.

Ut enlighed like as, adhereth to an Indica- Rule 2
tive
Q. 4

Construction of Moods.

tive, or Subjunctive Mood, and it hath that signification, if ita oꝝ sic come after it.

Uc, ut tu es, ita omnes censes esse, Like as thou art, so thou supposest all to be.

Cum.

Rule 1. Cum englighed, 1. Whereas. 2. Because, governs an Indicative Mood.

*Tibi maximas gratias ago, * cum tantum meꝝ literæ * potuerunt, because my Letter could effect so much, &c.*

Rule 2. Cum englighed, 1. Whenas. 2. Because that. 3. Seeing that, oftentimes admitteth a Subjunctive Mood.

1. * Cum placidum ventis * staret mare, when as the Sea stood, &c.

2. Quæ * cum ita * sint, which because that, &c.

3. * Cum in quo accusabar culpa * vacarem, seeing that I was faultesse, &c.

Rule 3. Cum when, hath sometimes an Indicative, sometimes a Subjunctive Mood. Cū venit, when he came: cum dabit amplexus, when he shall embrace: cum canerem, when I would sing.]

Dum and Donec.

Rule 1. Dum and Donec, englighed so long as, govern an Indicative Mood.

1. * Dum quod te dignum est * facis.
2. * Donec * eram sospes.

Rule 2. Dum, englighed till that, or until, governs

Construction of Moods.

verns an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood.

1. Tityre * dum * redeo, brevis est via, pasee capellas.

2. Qui valuit tamdiu * dum hic * prodiret.

Dum, englighed so that, governs a Sub- Rule 3.
junctive Mood.

*Ne que id quibus artibus assequeretur,
* dum sibi regnum * pararet.*

Ubi, Unde, Quare.

These Interrogatives, ubi, where? unde, Rule 1, from whence? quare, wherefore? &c. govern an Indicative Mood.

1. Ubi est frater, where is thy brother?
2. Unde advenis, whence cameſt thou?
3. Quare lachrymaris, why dost thou cry?

Ubi, when or after that, hath sometimes Rule 2, an Indicative, and sometimes a Subjunctive Mood.

Ubi te non in invenio, when, or after that, &c. hæc ubi dicta dedit.

Qui, quæ, quod, quis, quid, qualis, quantus, &c.

These when they are not Interrogatives, Rule 2, have commonly a Subjunctive Mood, seldom an Indicative.

1. Stultus es * qui huic * credas, because thou believest; nec ignorant qui ii sint, who they are.

* Qui commodissime * navigavissimus;
Q.S. foras

Construction of Moods.

forasmuch as: *qui neque in urbe *viveret, forasmuch as he, &c. vide *quanta *sit in te suavitas, how great. Siquis me querit; sicutis opprobriis dignum latraverit.

Linacor

Est qui, sunt qui, est quando, est ubi, govern both Moods. Sunt quibus in Satyra videar nimis acer.

Rule 1.

1. Priusquam.
2. Antequam.
3. Postquam.
4. Simul ut.
5. Simul ac.
6. Simul atque, govern an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood.

Quoad.

1. Quoad, how long, governs an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Quid? senem *quoad *expectatis vestrum.

2. Quoad, until, governing a Subjunctive Mood only.

Rule 2.

Ne.

Rule.

1. Ne, not: 1. To an Imperative. *Ne fugite hospitium, sibi non. 2. To a Subjunctive. *Ne istuc tam iniquo *patiare animo. 3. Sometimes an Indicative, etiam post incubuit ac *Ne nunc quidem subiisse *poenitet.

2. Ne, englisched but that, or lest that, governs a Subjunctive Mood.

No, no, nor, or not.

Rule 3.

Non referreth to all Moods, except the Imperative.

~~Alii~~ *non *dubitant quin ex vera sunt.

qua.

Construction of Moods.

qua defendant. * Non * negem si noverim, I would not deny it, if I knew it.

Amo te, & *non *neglexisse, habeo gratiam.

Instead of non, always before the Imperative Mood, and commonly before the Subjunctive, we use ne: and for non fac, say ne feceris, or noli facere, or cave facias.

An and Num.

An and Num, englisched what? being Partieples of asking, govern an Indicative Mood. An ego toties de eadem recordiam? what shall I hear so often, &c.

Num cogitat quid dicat? what doth bee regard or consider what he saith?

An and Num, englisched whether or no? being Adverbs of doubting, or put Infinitively, require a Subjunctive Mood. Haud scio an illam nunc miserè amet. Vnde num redierit.

An englisched, or coupleth like Moods and Tenses. Erravit an insanivit. Imminatur an desfratar.

1. Quasi, as if. 2. Tanquam, as though. Rule 1.
3. Perinde aesi, as if. 4. Perinde quasi, as if. 5. Ceu, as if, require a Subjunctive Mood.

* Quasi vero paulum *intersiet. Perinde quasi internecione in humano generi minentur.

Quasi, tanquam, perinde aesi, perinde quasi.

Construction of Moods:

quasi, ceu, englisched even as, require an Indicative Mood.

Tanquam Philosophorum habent disciplinæ, ex ipsis vocabula, even as the disciplines, &c. Quasi si fuisset *Damus* aliquis qui interturbasset omnia, as if there had bin, &c.

Rule.

1. Etsi, 2. Tametsi, 3. Etiamsi, 4. Quanquam, although, have an Indicative Mood in the beginning of the speech, otherwise a Subjunctive.

1. *Etsi suus cuique modus * est, tamen magis offendit nimium quam parum.

2. Omnia brevia tolerabilia esse debent, *etiamsi maxima * sint.

3. Quanquam uterque utetur. Quanquam illum cupio abducere.

Rule.

Quando, quandoquidem, and quoniam govern an Indicative Mood.

Rule.

1. Ni. 2. Nisi. 3. Si. 4. Sin. 5. Siquidem. 6. Quod. 7. Quia. 8. Quamvis, adavit of an Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. Quamvis tibi consulis. Gaudeo quod amas, I am glad that thou lovest. Quod englisched whereas, is joyned to an Indicative Mood in the beginning of a sentence; as, Quod ad me scribis, whereas thou writeſt to me. Otherwise it usually hath a Subjunctive Mood, especially if it come after 1, Non est. 2. Nihil est. 3. If it be englisched (wherefore) or why.

1. *Non * est * quod moleste * seras. 2. Nihil est quod me invites.

3. Quid est igitur quod amplius dubitamus.

Quid,

Construction of Moods.

Quin, why?

Quin englisched why? requireth an Indicative Mood. Quin tu huc advolas? why doſt thou make ſpeed hither? Quin ergo quod juvant, id ſemper faciunt? why then do they always, &c.

Quin, but that: Licet, albeit, have comonly a Subjunctive Mood.

{ 1 } Quin ita fit.
{ 2 } Licet venias.

Rule 2.

Quippe, for, and quippe, because, put mockingly, hath an Indicative Mood. Quippe Rule 1. vedorfatis, Because I am forbide, &c.

Quippe qui, as one that: utpote qui, as one that, govern an Indicative or Subjunctive Rule 2.

Aliis fœlicitatem non invidet mundanam, quippe quam minimè desiderat, he doth not grudge other men worldly happiness, as that which he desreth not. Ut pote qui peregre depugnavit, as a man that had fought abroad in war.

Utpote cum, and quippe cum, require a Rule 3. Subjunctive Mood only.

Utpote cum labocassum, as when I had been ſick.

Quippe cum habeat, forasmuch as, or because it hath, &c.

Quippe ubi inpleant, as in which place, they fit.

Quo.

Particles understood:

*Quò, to the end that. Modò, so that.
Dummodo, so that. Quo minus, that could
not, governs a Subjunctive Mood.*

*A concertante in angustias cogitare, quo
minus possit expedite pugnare, that he could
not readily fight.*

Quò facilius contineret.

Non quò sit mihi quicquam garius.

*Modò ut consisteret fructus otii tui, so
that there may appear some fruit, &c.*

Modò id eleganter faciant.

*Conjunctions for Conjunctiones
brevity sake are left compendii causâ o-
mituntur.*

*Ut is oftentimes understood after these
Verbs, volo, nolo, malo, precor, rogo, opor-
tet, neccesse est, licet.*

*Tu velim desinas. Nolim me jocari
putes. Hominem occidat oportet. Licet
facias, licet venias.*

*Ut or (quod) is understood after simo,
puto, opinor, credo, arbitror, fateor: as
Sine videam. Non puto repudiabis in ho-
nore, quem in periculo recipisti.*

*Ne is understood after caveo, and after
censeo, suadeo, nuncio, dico, facio, un-
derstand quod, ut, or ne.*

Censeovites, suadeo capias.

Tu fac habeas fortè animum.

*When ne cometh after vereor, metuo, &
timeo.*

Figures:

*timeo. Non is understood after ne. Ve-
reor ne satis diligenter actum sit, for ne non
satis, &c.*

*Comma sometimes supplieth the place Rule 5,
of a Conjunction.*

Corpus debilitant, balnea, vina, venus:

Figures.

*Prothesis puts to Prothesis apponit Rule 1.
the beginning of a capiti quod Aphare-
word, that which A- sis aufert.*

as, gnatus for natus, conia for ciconia.

*Syncope taketh out Syncope de medio Rule 2.
of the midst, that tollit, quod Epenthe-
which Epenthesis sis infert.*

Abiit, for abivit. Relliquias, for reliquias.

*Apocope, taketh Aufert Apocope
away the end, which finem, quem dat Pa. Rule 3.
Paragoge addeth: as, ragoge.
peculi for peculii:
dicier for dici.*

*Antistoichon is Antistoichon est Rule 4.
the putting of one literæ pro litera
ter for another: as, positio.
illi for illi.*

*Hellenismus is Hellenismus est Rule 5,
when a word is joined cum dictio, non ei
to that case which easui jungitur, quem
the*

Figures:

the propriety of the Latina proprietas Latine tongue requires exigit, sed quem but that which the Græca. Greek doth.

Define mollium tandem querelarum.

Rule 6.

Enallage is the change of some acci- dentium quorundam, contra usitatae constructionis leges permutatio.

Rule 7.

Archaïsmus is a rule of construction in use with the Ancients which is now out of use.

Archaïsmus est structuræ ratio veteribus in usu, quæ jam exolevit.

Quid tibi hanc rem curatio est? Evocation is when the third person is called to the first or second, Qui legis hæc. Populus superamur ab uno.

Finis Libri Quinti.



THE SIXTH BOOK.

Of Letters.

Of Letters, some are Vowels, others Consonants.

There are five Latin Vowels a, e, i, o, u, for y is a Greek Vowel put instead of u.

Diphthongs are,

æ, œ, au, eu, also ai, ei, oi, ui, yi.

All the rest are Consonants which are divided,

1. Into eight mutes, b, c, d, f, p, q, t, r.

2. Four liquids, l, m, n, r, to which s is wont to be added; h is rather a note of breathing, than a letter.

3. Double Consonants are x, z, and j, betwixt two Vowels: as in major, unless another i immediately go before it: as in these words, bijuges, quadrijuges, multijuges.

4. J and U, are Consonants, when with another Vowel they make a syllable: ag, va, ve, vi, vo, vu. Ja, je, ji, jo, ju.

5. Great

Of Letters.

5. Great Letters written by themselves, or few together, note words or numbers.
 A. D. id. Octo. ante diem, idus Octobris.
 A. V. C. ab urbe conditā.
 A. Aulus. A. V. amplitudo vestra.

C. Caius	P. C. Patres conscri-
C. M. Cafarea Ma-	pti
jestas	P. L. Poëta Laurea-
C. V. Celsitudo vestra	tus.
Cos. Consul	P. R. Populus Roma-
Coss. Consules	nus.
D. Deceius	Q. Quintus, Quæstor
D. D. dono dedit	Quirites
E. T. Excellentia tua	R. P. Res publica, Re-
G. Gaius.	gis professor
Ex. Gr. Exempli	R. R. Rustica
Gratia	S. Sanctus
H. S. Sestertius	S. S. sacro sanctus
J. C. Juris consulti	S. C. Senatus. Consul-
L. Lucius	tus.
L. L. S. duo asseſ, vel	S. P. Spurius, alſa spi-
duæ libræ & fe-	ritus sanctus.
miffis.	Sex. Sextus
L. L. Lingua Latina	S. P. D. Salutem plu-
M. Marcus	rimam dicit
Ms. Manuscriptum	S. P. Q. R. Senatus
N. Nota. N. B. Nota	Populusque Ro-
bene	manus
N. T. Novum Testa-	T. Titus
mentum	T. C. Tua Clemen-
P. Publius	tia.

Verifying Rules.

Verifying Rules:

OF Syllables are made Feet: of pedes: ex pedibus Feet bound together by justo arque legitimo a right and convenient numero constrictis, number, are made fuit Carmina. Verles.

Feet of two Syllables.

1. Spondæus, consisting of two long syllables : as, virtūs.
2. Jambus consisting of a short and a long : as, amans.
3. Trochæus or Choreus, consisting of a long and a short : as, collē.

Feet of three Syllables.

1. Dactylus, consisting of three syllables, whereof the first is long, and the other two are short : as, mictē.
2. Anapæstus, consisting of the first two short, and the last long : as, piētās.
3. Tribrachus, consisting of three short syllables : as, dōmīnē.

A long syllable is thus noted - , but a short one thus .

Verſes most used in Schools are,

Versifying Rules.

1. Versus Heroicus.

Rule.

This Verse consisteth of Daëtys and Spondeys only.

The Laws in making thereof are,

The fifth foot must be a Daëtys, the sixth a Spondee, the other four Daëtys or Spondeys at our pleasure: and this Verse is also called Hexameter.

Lōngā dīēs hōmīnī dōcūit pārērē lēōnēs.

Observations:

1. All Verses run best where the feet are linked the one with the other, that is, when the word following helpeth to make up the foot of the word before: as,

Mēns hābitāt sōliōquē sēdēt rēgālītēr ālō.

2. The feet in this kind of Verse will be unlinked most fitly, first before the second foot, and fourth: as,

*Corporis * est expers, qui * corpora cuncta creavit. And also before the sixth: as, Omnia quæ vivunt & quæ * viventia non sunt. Nonne perire brevi mortalia cuncta videtis?*

3. A Spondee and a Daëtys, or two Spondeys and a Daëtys, begin this Verse pleasantly.

Cōntēmplābār ītem multos furtōque dolóque ditatos, or a Penthemimer. Qui sibi quod satis est oprat, nil cætera curat.

Dēceptūs fālsā spēcie verique bonique.

4. Epithets are elegantly set before their Substantives, and if the Verse do consist

Versifying Rules.

consist of two Adjectives, two Substantives and a Verb only, the first Adjective agreeing with the first Substantive, the second with the second, and the Verb placed in the midst, it is called a Golden Verse: as, *Lurida terribiles mi-scent aconitæ novæ.*

Pendula flaventem pingebat bractea cri-
nem.

5. Sometimes but very seldom a Spondee is found in the sixth place.

Sic costam longo subduximus Apennino.

6. In making Verses avoid Rhimes: as,
Singula spectando ventos superare vo-
lando.

Nutrix dum rotat, canit & cunabula mo-
rat.

Ebibe fac totum, si vis cognoscere potum

2. Versus Pentameter.

The Pentameter Verse consisteth of five feet, divided into two parts; the former whereof doth comprehend two feet, Daëtys, Spondeys, or either of them, with a long syllable; the other also of two feet, but altogether Daëtys with a long syllable: as,

Tārdiūs aut prōpiūs mōrs sūā quēmquē mānēt.

Observation.

Let the Pentameter Verse end with a word of two syllables, and that either with a Verb or a Substantive, or meus, tuus, suus, and not with an idle Epithete or Adjective.

Sit

Versifying Rules.

Sit nox cum somno fit sine līc dies,
Detinuere oculos|| carmina nostra tuos.
Sometimes it ends with a word of
three syllables: as,
Hac fuerint nobis|| præmia si placui.

Rule.

3. Versus Adonius.

The Adonick Verse consists of a Dactyl,
and a Spondey: as,
Ocio aurā: Crine decorum.

Rule.

4. Versus Archilochium.

This Verse consists of two Dactyls, and
a syllable.
Ripa beata Tagi. Jugera pauca soli.

5. Versus Glyconicus.

A Glyconick Verse consists of a Spondey
and two Dactyls: as,
Sic te Diva potens Cypri.

Rule.

6. Versus Asclepiadom:

In Asclepiad Verse consists of a Spondey,
Dactyl, and a long syllable, and then of
two Dactyls.
Mæcenas atavis|| edite regibus.

Rule.

7. Versus Sapphicu.

A Sapphick Verse consists of a Trochee,
Spondey, Dactyl, and then of two Trochees,
and after each three Verses an Adonick is
added.

Integer

Versifying Rules.

Integer viræ, scelerisque purus,
Non eget Mauri, mculis nec arcu,
Nec venenatis grava sagittis
Fusce pharetra.

8. Versus Phalecium:

A Phalecean Verse consists of a Spondey, Rule,
Dactyl, and three Trocheys, and ends most
comendably with words of two syllables.

Vitam quæ faciunt beatorem.
Summum nec metuas diem nec optes:

9. Versus Jambicus.

First, a pure Jambick Verse consists only Rule,
of Jambicks: as,

Sūis ēt ipsā Rōmā viribūs rūit.

Secondly, the Jambick Verse in pure-
nelle next to this, is that which hath Spon-
deys mixed with Jambicks, the one after the
other: as,

Jūs ēt ī armis opprimit lēgēs timōr.

Nām sērā nōn ēst ād bōnōs mōrēs vīja.

Thirdly, if the two last Feet exchange
places, then the Jambick halteh, and is
called Scazon.

Dūcentiēs accēpit ēt tāmēn vīvit.

Fourthly, the iesse pare Jambicks re-
ceive in the first, third, and fift place, called
odde places, both a Jambick, Spondey, Ana-
past, Dactyl, and Tribrack, but seldom, and
not two Tribracks in the same Verse. More-
over in the second, fourth, and fift places,
which are called even places, it receiveth

Versifying Rules.

a Jambick and one Tribrick, but not in the last seat; and it is meet that this Verse have in it always two Jambicks.

Cecidere fratres? arnia non servant mo-

dum,

Nec temperari facile, nec reprimi potest
Stricti ensis ira. Bella delectat crux,

Observation:

The Jambick Verse is divided into two kinds, Dimeter or Quaternary, which consists of four feet: as,

Sūis pēribit artibūs
Scēlestā frāus ēt īcidēnt
In ipsā cōcī rētiā, &c.

2. Trimeter, or Senary, which consists of six feet: as,
Sēquitūr sūpērbōs ultiōr à tērgō Dēus.

Poetical Figures:

In measuring and setting together of a Verse, Poets use certain figures, which notwithstanding by young Versifiers ought to be shunned as rocks.

Rule.

1. Synalæpha.

Synalæpha is the cutting off of a vowel before another in divers words: as,

Sera nimis vit' est crastina, viv' hodie,
for vita est, and vive hodie.

Obser.

Versifying Rules.

Observations.

2. Syneresis.

1. Sometimes there is a cutting away or pressing together of Vowels in the same word by Synecphonesis, contracting them into one, & so sounding them, which is also called Syneresis: as, dehinc cui, huic, deest being made one syllable, & deinde, eodem, genua, anteit, aurex, alveo two syllables, arietē pituita, three syllables, alvearia graveo-lentis semianimis four syllables.

2. Heu & O, are never cut off: as, O ego quantum egi, & ah, hei, io, & cui contracted.

3. O & other long Vowels in imitation of the Greeks before another Vowel are not cut off, but become common.

Stānt ēt jūnīpēri ēt cāstānēx hirsūtē
Crēdīmūs? ān qui āmānt ipsi sibi sōnnīā
singūnt.

4. A Diphthong or long Vowel is more harsh or rough to be cut off, than a short before a long one.

3. Diæresis.

As Syneresis contracteth two syllables into one, so on the contrary Diæresis diætheseth or divideth one syllable into two: as, dissoluenda for dissolvenda. Aulai for aulz, sylizæ for sylva.

R

4. Ecth.

Versifying Rules.

Rule.

Ecthlipsis, is when in with his vowel is cut off; the next word beginning with a vowel or h: as,

Monstr'horrend' inform' ingens, cui lu-men ademptum, for monstrum horrendum.

5. *Cesura*.

Cesura is when after an absolute foot, a short syllable in the end of a word is made long, which after the first foot is called a *Triemimer*, after the second a *Penthemimer*, after the third a *Hepthemimer*, and after the fourth an *Enneemimer*.

Omnia vincit *amor & nos cedamus amo-ri: if otherwise a long syllable be made short, it is by *Systole*: as, Obstupui stetē-
runtque comæ, for stetérunt; or a short
syllable long, it is by *Diastole*: as, in quem
rēcidimus.

General Rules of the quantity
of Syllables.

Rule I.

A Vowel before two consonants, or a double Consonant in the same word or di-versis, is long by Positione longa est.

Multa cadūnt int̄er calicēm supremaque labra.

Obser-

Versifying Rules.

Observation.

1. A mute with the liquid l, or *r, in the same * m & n syllable, make a short vowel going before Græcis per their common: as, patris, retro, volucris; but if the word be long by nature, it cannot be changed short: as, arātrum simulācrum, ā-crem, mātris, ātrum.

2. If the former word ends with a short vowel, & the next word begin with two consonants, it is not a Position, but *Diastole*: as, Occūltā spōlia; to be declined.

A vowel before another in divers syllables of the same word, is everywhere short: Vocalis ante vocem in diversis syllabis ejusdem dicitur ubique brevis est.

Exceptions.

1. Except these Genitives in ius, illius, ipsius, istius, unius, illius, nullius, where i is found common. Totius, solius, utrius, neutrīus, alterutrius, are very seldom short; i in alterius is always short, i in aliis is always long.

Fastidiret olus qui me notat utrius ho-
rum, Hor. Ep. 17. v. 15.

2. The Genitive & Dative cases of the first Declension, where e between double i, is made long: as, diēi, speciēi, otherwise e before i is short: as, fidēi.

3. Except Vocative cases of proper names in ei and ai: as, Pompei, Vultei, Cai, &

Versifying Rules.

Genitives of the first Declension dissolved:
aulāī, for aulæ, pictāī, for pictæ.

4. Fi in siō, is long: as, siunt, sicut, except c and r, follow together: as in fierem, fieri.

5. In Greek words one vowel before another is sometimes long: as, aēr, Galatēa, Menelāus, Lycāon, Orion, Amphion, Ilionēa; and in choreā, and in Platēa, χορεία πλατεῖα; also Possessives in ēiūs and ōiūs, and of words ending in ōus, have e and o long: as, Rhodopēiūs, Achelōiūs, Latōiūs, Eōiūs, Arctōiūs.

Rule 3.

Every Diphthong is long: as, aurum, ætas, neuter, cœlum, yet præ a vowel following is short: as, præcūtæ, præstis, Rhodopēiæ arces, Græcorum more.

Rule 4.

A syllable contracted of two is long: as, cogo for coago, tibicen for tibiicē, it for iit, petit of petiit, and obit and abit of obiit and abiit.

Rule 5.

Derivatives are allotted the same quantity with their Primitives: as, a in āmīcus is short, of a in āmo short.

Derivativa eandem cum Primitivis quæ titatem sorriuntur: ut, āmīcus ab āmo, lēgi, lēgeram, lēgerim, lēgissim, lēgero, lēgisse.

Versifying Rules!

Exceptions.

Words made long which are derived of short ones.

dēnūs of dēcēm	rex rēgis
hūmānus of hōmo	and } of rēgo
jūcundus of jūvo	rēgula
jūgerum of jūgum	sēcius of sēcus
jūnior of jūvenis	sēdes of sēdeo
lāterna of lāteo	suspīcio, ūnis of sus-
lex lēgis of lēgo	pīcor
lītēra of lītūra	tēgula of tēgo
mācēro of mācer	vōmer of vōmo
nōnūs of nōvem	vox vōcis of vōco,
pēnūria of pēnus.	

Words made short which are derived of long ones.

ārena } of āreo	pōsui of pōno
ārista } of ārēo	quāfillus of quālus
cūrūlis of cūrro	sāgax of sāgio
dīcax of dīco	sigillum of signum
dīsertus of dīsfero	sōpor of sōpio
dux, dūcis of dūco	sōlutum of sōlvo
fārina of fārro.	tīgillum of tīgno
frāgor, } of frāngo	vārīcosus of vārix
frāgilis } of frāndo	vōlūtum of vōlvo
lūcerna of lūceo	stātio } of stātum.
māmilla of mamma	stābilis }
nāto, nāras of nātu	ſidelis } of fidio,
nōta of nōtu	ſides } whence
ōfella of ūffa	fidus, infidus, fidūcia.
pāgella of pāgina	

Words compounded follow the quantity of simple or uncompounded words.

Composita simplificium quantitatem sequuntur, ut lēgo lēgis, perlēgo à lēgo.

Except these short of long.

Innūba, $\{\$ of nū-	Cognītum, $\{\$ of nō-
Pronūba, $\}$ bo.	Agnītum, $\}$ tam.
Connubium, com-	Prāstīturus, $\{\$ of stā-
mon.	Restīturus, $\}$ turus.
Dejēro $\{\$ of jū-	Causidīcus $\{\$ of dīco.
Pejēro $\}$ ro.	Maledīcus $\}$ of hilum.
Siquidem, of si.	Nihilum, of hilum.
Hōdie, of hoc die.	Semifōpītus, of fōpi-
	tus.

And on the contrary, this long of short, imbecillus, of bāculus.

1. Words compounded with these Particles; 1. Bi : as, biceps. 2. Tri : as, triceps. 3. tri : as, trēcenti. 4. Du : as, dūcenti, have them short, except tri in triduum, which is long.

2. Words that are compounded with Verbs, the first part ending in e, have e short: as, tremēscit, of tremo facio : tepefecit, of tepeo facio, & so valēdixit, labēfactus, tremēfactus, liquefactus.

3. These are long of the simple words which are common, ubique, ubilibet, ibidem, quandōque, quandōcunque, but quandōquidem is short.

4. In idem masculine is long, i in idem Neuter, is short.

Special

Special Rules of first Syllables.

A Preposition in composition retains his quantity, unless position, or a vowel following binder: as in sup-

Prāpositio in cō- Rule 1.
positis suam retinet
quantitatem. Nisi
positio aut vocalis
sequens impedit.

A, de, se, e, are long;
also Prepositions which
end in a, are long: as,

Rule 2.
cuntur. Produci-
tūt etiam Prāposi-
tiones quæ exeunt in
a, ut contra, supra, in-
fra, &c tra of trans.

1. Dis is long, except in dīrimo, and dīser-

2. Pro also is long, except in these short:
prōcello, prōcella, prōfugus, prōtervus,
prōnēpos, prōfanus, prōfundus, prōfi-
ciscor, prōfari, prōpēro, prōfugio, prōfecto,
prōfestus. Long in these commūne, prōcum-
bo, prōcūro, profundo, propello, propulso,
propago, the Noun & Verb.

3. Greek words compounded with we-
ars short: as, Prōphēta, prōlōgus, Prō-
mētheus, but pro in propino is commūne.

The residue of Pre- Reliquæ prāposi-
positions if position give tiones, ab, ad, ante, in,
leave; are short: as, ob, inter, per, re, su-
circūmāgat mādi- per, sub, circū, si posi-
tio finat, corripiutur.
&c.

Rule 3.

Versifying Rules.

Aperio, ḥperio, ḥmitto, have the first syllable short.

Re is short, unless in reſert, compounded of the Noun re.

Rule 4.

One hath the first syllable commane, ēhu
long. **O**ne priorem ha-
bet communem, ēheu
longam.

Rule 5.

Every Preterperfect Tense and Supine of two syllables, hath the former long : as, vidi, lēgi, mōtum, vīsum.

Except ſidi of findo, būbi, dēdi, ūcidi, ūtēti, ūtūli, and these Supines, quīrum, ūrūrum, ūlīcum, ūtūm, ūrūtūm, ūtātūm, ūtātūm, and cītūm of cīo cīes.

Bi in ambitus the Participle is long, but in ambitus and ambītio Substantives, short.

Supines of many syllables, have the last save one long : as, amātūm, petītūm, diſiſum, ūlūtūm, ūndūtūm, except Supines in itūm, when the Preterperfect Tense doth not end in ivi : as, gesītūm, cubītūm, vendītūm, monītūm.

Verbs doubling the first syllable of the Preterperfect Tense, have the first syllable likewise short : as, tētēndi, cēcidi, tētegi, and the second also except position hinder : as, tūrūdi, dīdīci, but pēpēdi of pēdo, cēcēdi of cēdo are long.

Rules

Versifying Rules.

Rules that pertain to middle syllables (that is) to syllables between the first and the last.

The last syllable Penultima in po- Rule 1.
save one in words of lysyllabis acutē cre-
* many syllables in- scēntibus, produci- * For pēdis
increasing long, is long; tur, & in graviter of pes, and
and in Nouns increa- crescentibus corripi- vādis of
sing short is short : as, tur, or short ; so
virtus virtutis, fan- Ex incremento grēgis of
guis sanguinis. Genitivi. grēx.

1. A, e, and o, in the last syllable save one of Genitives plural are long : as, musārum, diērum, dominōrum.

2. A, o, and e, o, in the last syllable save one of Datives plural are long : as, natābus, diēbus, duōbus, but i and u are short : as, partībus, fructībus, partūbus, verūbus.

Ex analogia Conjugationum.

1. A of the first, e of the second, i of the fourth Conjugation are long before re and ri, and e of the third short : as, amāre, docēre, legēre, audīre.

2. Da in dāmus, circundāmus, dābis, circundābis, dāre, circundāre, of do and the Compounds thereof, when it is of the first Conjugation is short.

3. A and e before ram and bo are long : as, amābam, docēbo.

E before ram, rim, ro, is short : as, legēram, legērim, legēro ; e in the third petition plural of the Preterperfect Tense Indicative is long : as, legerunt or legēre.

R. 5.

Preter-

Verifying Rules.

4. Preterperfect Tenses in vi, & si, have the last syllable save one long: as, amāvi, quiēvi, quēsivi, divisi, audīvi.

5. U in ūrio in Desideratives, is short: as, partūrio, estūrio, fōrūscatūrio & ligūrio, are not Desideratives, and therefore u is produced.

The syllables ri in rimus, & ri in ritis, are in the Preterperfect Tense Subjunctive short, in the Future commune in verse, but in prose long. Amavérimus, amaveritis, amaverimus, amaveritis.

6. Adjectives in ino, have i in ino short; as, inquiño, contamino, destino, but Neuters long: as, festino, inclino, propino.

Lilly.

Rule 2. Adjectives ending in inus make the last producunt penulti-syllable save one long: as,

clandestinus, matutinus, vespertinus.

1. Except Adjectives signifying time: as, diutinūs, crastinūs, pristinūs, perendinūs, hornotinūs, serotinūs.

2. Adjectives of some matter: as, oleaginūs, faginūs, cedrinūs.

3. Adjectives derived of Greek Nouns, signifying metals: as, crystallinus, myrrhinus, adamantiuns, &c.

Rule 3. Adjectives in anus, arus, orus, osus, produce the last syllable save one: as,

Montanus, avarus, canorus, odiosus.

Ab-

Verifying Rules:

Adverbs in atim, Adverbia in atim, Rule 4: and itim, produce the & irim producunt last syllable save one: penultimam, as,

Ostiatim, vitatim, except statim, perpeoim, and statim short,

1. Diminutives in ilius, illus. 1. Diminutiva in Rule 5. 2. Verbs ilius & illus. 2. Ver- in ilis, and bilis; and balia in ilis & bilis.

3. Adverbs in itus, 3. Adverbia in itus have the last syllable carripiunt penulti- save one short. mans.

As, urceolus, unciola, regulus, canicula, corculum, facilis, flebilis, funditus, coolitus.

Adjectives in aceus have a long: as, cre-taceus, hordaceus; atus, ata, atum, as, pri-vatus; aculus, acula, aculum; as, vernacu-lus, novacula, habitaculum: alis, ale; as, animalis, focale, and amen, as, examen.

Authority, use, or Example.

Authority is the testimony & warrant of the most approved Poets, which of all is the su-rest Rule.

Of last Syllables.

A finita producuntur.

1. Nominatives, Accusatives and Vocatives, ending in a, have a short: as, musa, regna, tempora.

2. Vocatives of Greek Nouns in as, are long: as, Aenea of Aeneas.

3. Ablatives in a of the first Declension are long:

Versifying Rules.

long: *as, musā, bonā, illā, quā,*

4. *Eiā, itā, quiā, have a short*

5. *The rest ending in a, are long: as, amā, contrā, trigintā, quadragintā, and others in gintā, which usually have a long.*

Jacob,
Jab,
David,
long.

In B, D, T. finita brevia sunt.

Words ending in b, d, t, if a vowel follows, are short: as, ab, ad, caput.

C finalis longa est.

Words ending in c, have c long: as, ac, scac, sic and hic the Adverb. Two words ending in c are short, nec and donec: hic and hoc are common; so that it be not the Ablative case, to which some adjgn fac.

E finita brevia sunt.

Words ending in e are short: as, mare, legē, penē.

1. *Words of the first Declension ending in e are excepted: as, rē, diē, long.*

2. *Adverbs in e compounded of them: as, hodiē, quotidīe, pridiē, quare, to which addē famē long.*

3. *The second persons singular of the Imperative Mood of Active form in the second Conjugation: as, docē, movē, manē, cavē, long.*

4. *Words of one syllable in e, are long: as, mē, tē, sē, except que, nē, vē, when they are English Conjunctions, and Syllabicall Adjuctions, cē, rē, ptē: as, hiscē, cutē, tuoptē.*

5. *Adverbs in e derived of Adjectives, of*

Versifying Rules.

the first and second Declension: as, pulchrē, doctē, valdē, for valide, are long, to which adde firmē, ferē and ohē, but benē, malē and magē are short.

6. *Greek words written with n are long by nature: as, Lethē, Anchisē, Tempē.*

I finita longa sunt.

Words ending in i are long: as, dominī, amari, tristī.

1. *Except mihi, tibi, fibi, ubi, ibi, and cui of two syllables, which are common; sicubī is short, alibī is long.*

2. *Nisi and quasi are short.*

3. *Datives and Vocatives of the Greeks, whose Genitive case singular ends in os short: as, Dat. Daphnidī, Voc. Daphnīl, are short, except Datives contracted of ēi: as, Ulissī, or that they are declined after the Latin forme: as, Orestī, Pyladī, Paridī, long.*

L finita corripuntur.

Words ending in L are short, if position hinder not: as, mēl, Annibäl, pugl, exūl.

Except Säl, söl, nil, and some Hebrew words: ag, Michaël, Gabriël, Raphaël, Daniel.

N finita producuntur.

Words ending in n, are long: as, non, quin, Pæan.

1. *Except*

Verifying Rules.

1. Except in with these forstān, forfīnān, ān, tamēn, attamēn, veruntamēn, which are short.

2. Words abridged by Apocope: as, vidēn' for videfnē, nemon' for nemone, ain' for aifne, egōn' for egone, satin' for satifne, exin' for exinde, subin' for subinde, dein' for deinde, proin' for prounde, which are short.

3. Nouns in ep, whose Genitive case hath īnis short: as, carmēn carminis, crimen criminis, pectēn pectinis, are short.

4. Greek Nouns in on, written with little o, as, Iliōn, Peliōa, habe on short.

5. Greek Accusatives in i in with i or y, are short: as, Alexiān, Ityn.

6. Greek Accusatives in a of Nominatives in a are short: as, Aeginān.

Majān but af Nominatives in as are long; as, Æneān, Marsiān.

O finita Communia sunt.

Words ending in o are commune: as, porro, legendo, amo, virgo.

1. Datives and Ablatives in o are long: as, domino, servō.

2. Adverbs derived of Adjectives: as, primō, falsō, are long, & eò with the compounds adeò, ideò, &c. are seldom short.

3. Sedulō, mutuō, crebrō, are common, & serō, which notwithstanding is very often short.

4. Citō, cedō, engl. shd say it, & modō, with the compounds quomodō, dummodō, postmodō, are short.

5. Words

Verifying Rules.

5. Words of one syllable in o, are long: as, do, sto, and ergō for causā.

6. Ambo, duo, ego, homo, scio, nescio, immo, illico, are scarce read long.

7. Greek words written with o, or great o, as, Sapphō, Didō, Androgeō, Apollo, Athō, are long, except they are made of Greek words in ay, n being cast away: as, Leō, Platō, which for the most part are short.

R finita corripuntur, si posatio finit.

Words ending in r are short: as, nečär, pér, vir, uxor, turtür, cör, which notwithstanding is once read long.

1. Except fär, lär, när, vär, für, cür, and par, with the compounds compär, impär, long, and dispär, which notwithstanding is sometimes read short.

2. Greek words in np, are long: as, aér, crater, charactér, but patér and matér with the Latins have er short.

As finita producuntur.

Words ending in as, are long: as, amás, musás, bobitas.

1. Except those whose Genitive case singular make ädis, as, väs vädis. Pallás, Pallädis, which are short. Peliás hasta potest, Ov. lib. 13.

2. Accusatives plural of Greek Nouns of the third Declension: as, Phyllidás, heroás, are short, to which adde anás, anatís.

Es

Versifying Rules:

Es finita longa sunt.

Words ending in *es*, are long: *ag*, *vetes*, *diēs*, *docēs*.

1. Except Nominatives in *es* of the third Declension, which increase short in the Genitive case: *as*, *milēs*, Gen. *militis*: *segēs*, *divēs*, &c. are short, but *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, and *pēs*, with the Compounds: *ag*, *bipēs*, *tripēs*, *quadrupēs*, are long.

2. *Es* of sum, together with the Compounds, *abēs*, *adēs*, *obēs*, *prodēs*, is short, to which add *penēs*.

3. Neuters, and Nominatives plural of the Greeks: *as*, *Hippomenēs*, *Cacoethēs*, *Cyclopēs*, *Nāidēs*, are short.

Is finita brevia sunt.

Words ending in *is* are short: *as*, *panīs*, *tristīs*, *hilarīs*, if a vowel follow.

1. Except Datives and Ablatives plural, which are long: *as*, *mūris*, *dominīs*, *templīs*.

2. Nominatives in *is*, which increase long in the last syllable save one of the Genitive case are long: *as*, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*, Genitivo *Samnītis*, *Salamītis*.

3. Second persons singular of the Present Tense Indicative in the fourth Conjugation, are long: *as*, *audīs*, *venīs*, to which add *sis*, *vīs*, *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*, and *possīs*, however once read short.

4. Words of one syllable in *is*, are long: *as*, *vīs*, *lis*, but *is*, *bīs*, and *quis*, the Nominative are short.

Versifying Rules:

5. Is of Greek words in *is*, is long: *as*, *Pyreōs*, *Simois*.

6. The Adverbs *foris* and *gratis*, are long.

7. Ris in the Future Tense Subjunctive is very often short, but is it made long but by Cæsura.

Os finita producantur.

Words ending in *os* are long: *as*, *honēs*, *nepōs*, *dominōs*.

1. Except *compōs*, *impōs* and *ōs*, *ossis*, which are short.

2. Greek Nouns written with little o, are short: *as*, *Delōs*, *Chaōs*, *Palladōs*.

Vs finita corripuntur.

Words ending in *us* are short: *as*, *domīnūs*, *bonūs*, *tempūs*, *amamūs*, if a vowel follow.

1. Except words of one syllable: *as*, *crus*, thus, *mus*, are long.

2. Nominatives in *us*, increasing long in the Genitive case are long: *as*, *salūs*, *virtūs*, Genitivo *salutis*, *virtutis*.

3. Genitives singular, and Nominatives, Accusatives and Vocatives plural of the fourth Declension are long: *as*, Gen. *fructūs*, Plur. Nom. Acc. voc. *fructūs*.

4. Words in *us* that are made of Greek Nouns in *ous*, are long: *as*, *panthūs*, *Sapphūs*, except *Oedipūs* and *Polypūs* of the second Declension.

Verifying Rules.

Ys finita corripiuntur.

Words ending in ys are short, if a vowel follow, as, Capys, Tiphys.

V finita producuntur omnia.

All words in u are long.

Y finita corripiuntur.

Words ending in y are short: as, Moly, Tiphy.

Vltima cujusque versus syllaba censetur communis.

The last syllable of every verse is accounted common.

ΤΕΛΟΣ.

Μόνη σφρά Θεώ σωτήσει οὐαῖς
χαράσσει τούτην, κράτος χαράσσει,
χαράσσει εἰς πάντας τὰς αἰρόντας.

Apol. 18d. V. 25.

Some

Of Composition.

Some common Observations concerning the Composition of the Latin speech.

1. To write in a grave and lofty style, many feet consisting of long syllables are needful. Quam nūgax hæc nostra est ætas? ad ejus nouū salutem modo extinguedam, sed etiam gloriam per tales viros infringendam, but in lighter matters short syllables.

2. There ought to be such a mixture of short words with long, that many of the one or other be not continued together, as in this sentence. Homo etsi sine peccato esse possit, nemo tamen est qui sit, which runneth not so smoothly, because words of one and two syllables are condensed; otherwise thus: sine peccato etiamsi mortalis esse possit, est tamen qui sit nemo.

3. Words of many syllables are elegantly lockt up with a period: as, veritatem necio quā injuriā multavit exilio, and let not the same foot too often begin or end a sentence, lest it beget a loathing dislike.

4. A frequent concourse or joining together of the same letters, is to be eschewed: as, æquora, ruta tacent, spuma maris risit, and òquætoriætroy, and if may be, when the one word endeth with a Consonant, let the following word begin with a Vowel, and contra: as, è cuius ore melle dulcior effluat oratio, in all which, easiness of pronunciation, and ear-delectation will be an impartial Judge, rexqovias.

allowed

Of Composition:

*Allowed quantities wherewith
to begin.*

1. Molossus or three long : *as, si quis iudicēs.*
2. Creticus or amphimacer, that is, one long, a short and a long-- *as, quid prēcātus.*
3. Paean primus, or one long and three short : -vvv *as, pāucā sūpēr hāc rē.*
4. Dochimus, or five syllables, (viz.) one Jambick and Amphimacer, --v-- *as, novē criminatōes.*
5. Ditrachæus, -v -v, *as, si quis āntēa.*
6. Anapestus. v-- *as, ānlmādverti iudicēs.*

Allowed quantities wherewith to close, are

1. Creticus set before two Trocheys -v- -v -v *as, glōriām cōpārārūnt.*
2. Choreus before molossus -v --- *as, membra firmantur.*
3. Dochimus v-- -v *as, rēipūblicæ.*
4. An Iambick and two Spondeys v----- *as, rēum cōndēnnārūnt.*
5. Paean primus, -v vv, with a Spondee following : *as, ēlsē vīdēātūr.*

Some special Rules.

M. Clark.

1. Adjectives ought usually to be set before their Substantives, one or more words intervening, especially the latter of two Substantives : *as, strenuus pudicitiae propugnator.*

Of Composition.

2. A Relative is elegantly set before his Noun and Verb : *as, Quem cum isto sermōnem hebueris procul stans accepi.*

3. The Pronouns *meus, tuus, suus, &c.* are very often set after their substantives : *as, Gratiā teste privatus sum, amoris summi erga te mei.*

4. Nouns Negatives : *as, nemo nullus, and omnis are with a grace set after their Substantives : as, qui vitiis careat invenimus neminem quæ peragendi dedisti perfeci omnia.*

5. Oblique cases elegantly begin an Oration, and Verbs usually close periods. *Toto cœlo errārunt, qui, ut pueri Regulas Grammaticales memoriter repeatant, exegerunt : nunquam vero eādem cum curā sunt annixi ut perspicuè concipient.* M. Horn.

6. Participles and Gerunds, also Comparatives gracefully close the sentence : *as, Diu sum equidem reluctatus. Tua societate nihil gratius. Laborum fructus est longe maximus.*

7. After the Superlative the Comparative of the same Noun is elegantly placed, *as, Cum multi doctrinam per se libentissime desiderant, tu hoc libentius quod honores habet concitantes.*

8. The person acting is to be set next before the person suffering : *as, Magnam Cæsar Pompeio injuriam fecit.*

9. Adverbs and Prepositions together with their cases which they govern, may there bee set where they best sound, but with most elegance. Adverbs are to be placed before their Participles and Verbs : *as, severitatem diuque dilatam, clementissime mitigavit.*

Of Composition:

10. Antequam, priusquam, and postquam, perinde-quasi, are by Tmesis divided: as, Omnia prīns verbis experiri, quām armis sapientem decet; is perinde rem refert qua si si ex eo solo multentur homines.

— ἡδὲ γαρ οὐ Ζεὺς
Οὐδὲν τέλος αἰσθάνεται, εἰτὸν αὐτόχθων.

Master

Mr HORN'S

R U L E S to the same purpose.

1. **A**n Adjective of two syllables is to be set after a Substantive of many syllables: as, indies oriuntur contentiones novae.

2. An Adjective is elegantly put after Substantives of multitude: as, Sceleratos omnes Catalina unus superavit.

3. Adjectives of many syllables are beautifully placed in the beginning and end: as, miserrimi sunt omnes inglorii.

4. The Ablative case absolute is either to be set before the Verb, or at the beginning of the sentence: as, Re intellectā in verborum usu faciles esse debemus.

Omnēs ingruente miseriā, percibuntur timore.

5. Comparatives and Superlatives are elegantly set after their Substantives: as, Prætoris imiquissimi sævitia: Adulatio reprehensione deterior.

6. Comparatives are elegantly set in the beginning, and also at the end of a sentence: as, Celebris est ingenium, cuius motus sunt veloces, si ideam sunt honestiores.

7. Proper names of many syllables, grace the beginning of a Period: as, Antiochia urbs nobilis.

8. An Adjective signifying the praise or dispraise, is set before the proper name: as, Magnus ille Pompeius.

M. Horne's Rules:

9. The Verb (est) in the beginning of a sentence is put after the first word, but after a Comparative it is placed in the end.

Nostra est enim consuetudo,
Oratio sine fugo gravior est.

10. The Infinitive Mood is set before the Verb: as, In pueris oratio perfecta nec exigi, nec sperari potest.

11. Adverbs are to be set after Adjectives, or if before them something is to be interspersed: as, eximiè quidem insolentes superborum sermores.

*Altera alterius sic poscit operem
res.*

A



**A S Y N O P S I S O F
Master LILLIES
G R A M M A R.**

Verbum personale cohæret cum, &c. Lib. V.
Rule 1 pag. 226

Nominativus primæ vel secundæ perso. In verbis quorum significatio. Rule 1. in Concord Figurative p. 231

Non semper vox casualis est. Aliquando adverbium. Rule 2. in Concord Figur. 232

Verba Infiniti modi pro nomina. Resolvi potest hic modus per. Rule 2. 324

Verbum inter duos Nominativus. Observat. 7. 242

Impersonalia præcedentem. Obser. 5. 225

Nomen multitudinis sing. Rule 8. 238

Adjectivum cum Substantivo. Ad eundem modum participi. Rule 2. 228

Aliquando oratio supplet. Rule 2. 232

Relativum cum Antecedente. Rule 3. 229

Nec unica vox solum sed. Rule 2. 232

S Re-

Master Lillies Rules:

<i>Relativum inter duo antecedentia.</i>	<i>Observation 7</i>	242
<i>Nunc cum posteriore</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	
<i>Aliquando Relativum aliquando.</i>	<i>Observation 5.</i>	249
<i>Quoties nullus Nominativus.</i>	<i>Rule 1.</i>	226
<i>At si Nominativus Relati.</i>	<i>Rule 4.</i>	229
<i>Quum duo Substantiv.</i>	<i>Rule 6.</i>	250
<i>Proinde hic Genitivus sepiissime.</i>	<i>Observat. 2.</i>	
<i>ib.</i>		
<i>Est etiam ubi in Dativum.</i>	<i>Rule 1.</i>	271
<i>Excipiuntur quæ in eodem casu.</i>	<i>Rule 6</i>	229
<i>Adiectivum in Neutro Genere.</i>	<i>Rule 6</i>	250
<i>Ponitur interdum Genitivus,</i>	<i>Rule 5</i>	248
<i>Laus & vituperium rei, &c.</i>	<i>Rule 7</i>	251
<i>Opus & usus ablativum</i>		
<i>Opus autem adiectiva, in Observation</i>		305
<i>Adiectiva quæ desiderium,</i>	<i>Rule 9</i>	244
<i>Adiectiva Verbalia in ax,</i>	<i>Rule 10</i>	256
<i>Nomina Partitiva aut parti,</i>	<i>&c. Rule 8</i>	252
<i>In alio tamen sensu</i>	<i>ib.</i>	
<i>In alio tamen sensu dative.</i>	<i>Rule 1</i>	271
<i>'Usurpantur autem cum his,</i>	<i>Observation 4</i>	254
<i>Interrogativum & ejus reddi.</i>	<i>&c. Fallit</i>	
<i>'Hæc regula quoties. Aut per dictiōnem va-</i>	<i>riæ. Fallit denique cum per posse.</i>	314
<i>are to be referred to. Ellipsis</i>		231
<i>Comparativa & superlativa, &c.</i>	<i>Rule 8.</i>	252
<i>Comparativa autem ad duo.</i>	<i>Comparati-</i>	
<i>cum exponuntur per quam,</i>	<i>Rule 7.</i>	308
<i>Adscis.</i>		

Master Lillies Rules:

<i>Adsciscunt & alterum ablat.</i>	<i>Rule 8</i>	p.309
<i>Tanto, quanto, multo, longe.</i>	<i>Rule 9</i>	310
<i>Adiectiva quibus commodum:</i>	<i>Rule 2</i>	272
<i>Huc referuntur nomina</i>		277
<i>Quædam ex his quæ similitud.</i>	<i>Rule 5</i>	276
<i>Communis immunis alienus, in the Observati-</i>		277 & 303
<i>ons</i>		
<i>Natus commodus incommodus.</i>	<i>Rule 2. Observat.</i>	272
<i>Verbalia in bilis,</i>	<i>Rule 9. 280. & Rule 2.</i>	322
<i>Magnitudinis mensura.</i>	<i>Rule 4</i>	297
<i>Adiectiva quæ ad copiam.</i>	<i>Rule 4</i>	303
<i>Nomina diversitatis,</i>	<i>Rule 12</i>	312
<i>Adiectiva regunt ablativum</i>		
	<i>Rule 1.</i>	289
<i>Forma vel modus rei</i>		
<i>Dignus indignus præditus.</i>	<i>Rule 6</i>	308
<i>Mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri</i>		
<i>Meus, tuus, suis, noster, vester</i>		
<i>Nostrum, vestrum, Observation 8</i>		247
<i>Hæc possessiva meus, tuus, &c. Observ. 6</i>		250
<i>Sui & suis reciproca</i>		247
<i>Hic & ille cum ad duo</i>		248
<i>Verba Substantiva sum</i>		
<i>Denique omnia verba.</i>		
<i>Infinitivum quoque utrinque</i>		
<i>Quamvis in his postremis.</i>	<i>Rule 6, &c.</i>	326
<i>Sum Genitivum postulat</i>		
<i>Excipiuntur hi Nominativi</i>		
<i>At hic subintelligi videtur Rule 6</i>		250
<i>S. 2</i>		
<i>Verba</i>		

Master Lillies Rules:

<i>Verba estimandi Genitivo</i>	262
<i>A&stimo vel Genitivum vel locci, nunci, nibili, Rule 13</i>	
<i>Verba accusandi, damnandi</i>	264
<i>Vertitur hic Genitivus Uterq; nullus alter neuter, Rule 14</i>	
<i>Satago misereor, miseresco,</i>	259
<i>At misereor & miseresco, Rule 11</i>	
<i>Reminiscor, obliviscor, nemini, Rule 15</i>	
<i>Potior autem genitivo & abl. in Obsr.</i>	263
<i>Omnia verba acquisitivo, Rule 1</i>	271
<i>Imprimis verba significantia, Rule 2, 3, 4</i>	272, &c.
<i>Ex his quædam efferuntur</i>	
<i>Verba comparandi regunt</i>	277
<i>Interdum additur ablativus</i>	
<i>Aliquando accusativum cum, Rule 6</i>	277
<i>Hec variam habent construet, Rule 1.</i>	278
<i>Verba promittendi ac solvend. Rule 15</i>	283
<i>Verba imperandi ac nunci. Rule 14</i>	285
<i>Verba fidendi dativum, Rule 10</i>	286
<i>Verba obsequendi & repugnan. Rule 11</i>	287
<i>At ex his quædam cum aliis</i>	315 &c.
<i>Verba minandi & irascendi, Rule 15</i>	
<i>Sum cum compositis præter. Rule 17</i>	288
<i>Dativum postulant verba, Rule 21</i>	287
<i>Pauca ex his mutant dat.</i>	298
<i>Est pro habeo dativum exigat</i>	290
<i>Huic confine est suppetit, Rule 18</i>	
<i>Sum cum multis aliis genit. Rule 1</i>	286
<i>& ubi hic dativus tibi, Observ.</i>	272

Verba

Master Lillies Rules.

<i>Verba transitiva cujuscunque</i>	295
<i>Quinetiam verba quamlibet</i>	
<i>Hunc accusativum mutant, Rule 1</i>	301
<i>Sunt quæ figuratae accusativum, Rule 2</i>	
<i>Verba rogandi, vestiendi</i>	296
<i>Rogandi verbum interdum</i>	
<i>Vestiendi verba interdum, Rule 3</i>	296
<i>Quodvis verbum admittit</i>	299
<i>Ablative causæ & modi, Rule 1</i>	
<i>Quibuslibet verbis subjicit</i>	302
<i>Vilo paulo minimo, magno</i>	
<i>Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine</i>	302
<i>Sui addantur substantiva</i>	
<i>Valeo etiam interdum cum, Rule 3.</i>	302
<i>Verba abundandi, implendi</i>	303
<i>Ex his quædam nonnunquam,</i>	
<i>Fungor, fruor, utor, Rule 5</i>	306
<i>Prosequor te amore, Observation 5</i>	
<i>Mereor cum adverbiosis, Rule 13</i>	313
<i>Quædam accipiendo, distandi</i>	
<i>Vertitur hic ablativus,</i>	312
<i>Verbis quæ vim comparandi, Rule 8</i>	
<i>Quibuslibet verbis additur, Rule 11</i>	314
<i>Verbis quibusdam additur, Rule 2</i>	
<i>Quædam tamen efferunt</i>	ib.
<i>Eidem verbo diversi casus</i>	
<i>Passivis additur ablativus, Rule 1</i>	320
<i>Quorum participia frequentius, Rule 2</i>	322
<i>Ceteræ</i>	

Master Lillies Rules.

*Cæteri casus manent in pos.
Vapulo, vœno, liceo, exulo, Observation,*

*Quibusdam tum verbis tum, Rule 1
Ponuntur interdum figurate, Rule 4*

*Gerundia sive gerundivæ, Rule 1
Gerundia in di pendent, Rule 2
Poeticè Infinitivus modus, Observ. 1
Interdum non invenuste, Obser. 5*

*Gerundia in do pendent ab, Rule 3
Ponuntur & absque præp. Rule 4.*

*Gerundia in dum pendent ab, Rule 4
Cum significatur necessitas, Observ. 1
Vertuntur Gerundii voces, Obser. 5*

*Prins supinum activè signif. Rule 1
Illa vero do venum do
At hoc supinum in neutro pos.
Ponitur & absolutè cum, Obser. 2*

*Posteriorius supinum passivæ
In istis vero surgit cubitus,*

*Quæ significant partem, Rule 1
Quæ autem durationem
Dieimus etiam in paucis diebus*

*Spacium loci in accusativo, Rule 4
Nomina appellativa & nomina, Rule 1
Omne verbum admittit gen. Rule 2
Hi genitivi humi, domi*

Domi non alios secum patitur,

321
ib.323
325327
328
ib.
331330
ib.
324
331332
333334
335297
336
ib.
338

Verum.

Master Lillies Rules.

*Verum si proprium loci, Rule 3
Sic utimur ruri & rure, Rule 5*

*Verbis significantibus motum, Rule 3
Ad eundem modum usurpantur, Rule 5*

*Hæc tria impersonalia
Adjiciuntur & illi genitivi
In dativum feruntur hæc
Hæc impersonalia accusandi casum
His vero attinet, pertinet, Rule 16
and other Rules in Construc-
tion of Personals
His impersonalibus subjicitur
Nonnulla impersonalia remigrant
Cœpit, incipit, desinit, debet
Verbum impersonale passivæ, Obs. 1*

*Participia regunt casus verborum. Rule 1
Quamvis in his usitator, Rule 2
Participiorum voces cum, Obser. 2
Exosus, perosus, pertesus,
Exosus & perosus etiam Observation 2. 295
Natus, prognatus, satus, Rule 5*

*En & ecce demonstrandi
En & ecce exprobantis
Quædam adverbia loci, Rule 17
Instar æquiparationem
Hic apponitur interdum*

*Quædam dativum admittunt, Rule 8
Sunt & bi dativi adverbiales, Rule 1
Sunt quæ accusandi casum, Rule 8
Cedo flagitantis exhiberi*

Adverbia diversitatis

337
338337
338

287

272

322

ib.

247

295

306

243

270

243

278

334

278

224

Adver-

S. 4.

Master Lillies Rules.

390

Adverbia comparativi &
Plus nominativo, genitivo, accusa-
tivo & ablativo junctum reperi-
tur, Rule 7

Ubi postquam & cum
Donec & quamdiu
Pro quousque nunc Indic.
Dum de representi non
Dum pro dummodo alias
Dum pro donec subjunctivo
Quoad pro quamdiu vel
Simulac, simulatque Indic.
Quemadmodum ut utcunque
Ut pro postquam Indic.
Quasi seu tanquam perinde
Alias copulant consimiles
Nè prohibendi Imperativis
Nè pro non ceteris modis
Adverbia accedente casu. All these
are in the construction of
Conjunctions and Adverbs.

Conjunctiones Copulativa
Excepto si casualis distinctionis
Conjunctiones Copulativa

308

>342, &c.

ibid.

Aliquoties autem similes
Et si, tametsi, etiam si
Ni nisi siquidem quod
Si utrique modo jungitur
Si quis tantum Indicativo
Quando quandoquidem
Quippe cum proprium
Qui cum habet vim
Cum pro quamvis
Cum & tum item tum
Nè an num interrogandi
Ut casualis seu perfectiva
Ut concedentis seu positum
Ut & post quam pro

Præpositio subaudit:
Præpositio in compositione
Verba composita cum

In pro certa erga & ad
In cum accusativo jungitur
In cum significatur affectus
Sub pro ad per & ante
Super pro ultra accusativo
Super pro de & in ablat.
Sunt uero significatu
Tenus gaudet ablativo
Præpositiones cum casum

>343, &c.

Rule 1
&c. 340

>133, 134

Aliquo-

Inter-

394

Master Lillies Rules.

Interjectiones non raro

O exclamantis nominat.

Hec & pro nominativo

Hei & va dativo apponitur, Rule 22.

243

294

FINIS.